

MỤC LỤC

NỘI DUNG	TRANG
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: PHONETICS (NGỮ ÂM).....	2
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: VOCABULARY (TỪ VỰNG)	11
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: COMMUNICATIVE LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS (CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP CỦA NGÔN NGỮ)	32
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: GRAMMAR (NGỮ PHÁP)	43
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: READING (ĐỌC HIỂU)	150
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: WRITING (VIẾT)	160
GIỚI THIỆU MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI ANH VĂN	214
ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý.....	244
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1.....	244
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2.....	254
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3.....	255
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4.....	255
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5.....	273
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6.....	274
ĐÁP ÁN MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI.....	280

Chuyên đề 1: PHONETICS (NGỮ ÂM)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

* DẠNG BÀI KIỂM TRA KIẾN THỨC NGỮ ÂM (PHONETICS)

Thông thường, trong các bài thi tiếng Anh dành cho học sinh phổ thông cơ sở và phổ thông trung học, phần thi ngữ âm chỉ chiếm 5 -10 câu. Tuy nhiên đây lại là phần thách thức nhất đối với học sinh vì tiếng Anh như người ta vẫn nói. “viết một đằng, đọc một nẻo”. Khác với nhiều ngôn ngữ khác, người học chỉ cần hiểu rõ cách kết hợp các nguyên âm, phụ âm là có thể phát âm đúng, trong tiếng Anh kiến thức ngữ âm chỉ có thể được củng cố thông qua việc nắm vững một số kiến thức cơ bản và thực hành thường xuyên.

Trong khuôn khổ quyển sách này, chúng tôi chỉ đề cập đến 2 dạng bài tập phổ biến nhất trong các kỳ thi chọn học sinh giỏi và cố gắng chỉ ra một số qui tắc ngữ âm nhằm giúp các em dễ dàng hơn trong việc xác định câu trả lời cho loại bài tập này. Các bài tập trong sách cũng được sắp xếp theo các vấn đề lý thuyết được đề cập để thuận tiện cho các em thực hành những qui tắc đã nêu.

Tuy nhiên cũng cần phải lưu ý rằng, các qui tắc này không thể bao quát tất cả các phạm trù trong phát âm tiếng Anh bởi vì trong tiếng Anh có rất nhiều ngoại lệ. Do đó, để làm tốt phần này, ngoài việc nắm vững các qui tắc dưới đây, học sinh cũng cần phải chú trọng tích lũy kiến thức trong quá trình học bằng cách tập phát âm các từ theo đúng phiên âm của một cuốn từ điển tiếng Anh.

DẠNG I: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D. (Chọn từ có phần gạch chân được phát âm với các từ còn lại).

Cách làm:

Chú ý xác định một số cách phát âm sau

1/ Pronunciation of -ed

Khi phát âm các từ có tận cùng là ed ta phải dựa vào âm cuối của từ trước khi thêm -ed

* / id/: sau các âm /t/ /d/:

Eg. visited needed invited

* /t/: sau các âm /θ/ /k/ p/ /f/ /s/ /ʃ/ /tʃ/

Eg. looked washed laughed

* /d/: sau các phụ âm còn lại và các nguyên âm

Eg. cleaned rained studied

Note: some special adjectives, some adverbs ending in 'ed' and 'ed' is pronounced / id / (Một vài tính từ, trạng từ tận cùng bằng 'ed', nhưng 'ed' được phát âm là /id/.)

Adj: naked, crooked, ragged, wretched, rugged, beloved, wicked, sacred

Adv: deservedly, supposedly, markedly, allegedly

2/ Pronunciation of -s or -es (present simple/ plural nouns/possessive)

* /s/: sau các âm /θ/ /k/ /p/ /f/

Eg. looks steps laughs

* /iz/: sau các âm /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /dʒ/, /z/, /s/

Eg. watches judges washes

* / z/: sau các phụ âm còn lại và các nguyên âm

Eg. lives cleans needs

3/ Pronunciation of

* **TH** được phát âm là /θ/ hoặc /ð/

/θ/: *three, thank, breath, tenth,*

/ð/: *this, that, these, those, father, mother.*

* **CH** được phát âm là /tʃ/; /k/; /ʃ/

/tʃ/: phần lớn các từ có chứa nhóm 'ch' được phát âm là /tʃ/ như trong *teacher, researcher, chair, achieve, watch, catch, teach, chat etc.*

/k/: một số từ như *ache, backache, earache, headache, toothache, anchor, archeology, architect, bronchitis, chaos, character, chemical, chemistry, choir, chord, choreography, chorus, Christ, Christian, Christmas, chronic, chronological, echo, mechanic, monarchy, orchestra, orchid, psychiatrist, psychiatry, psychologist, psychology, schedule, scheme, scholar, school, stomach, technician, technique, technology*

/ʃ/: phần lớn các từ này là từ vay mượn từ tiếng Pháp như trong *brochure, cachet, champagne, chauffeur, chef, machine, mustache, parachute*

* **C** được phát âm là /k/; /s/

/k/ *car, cat, cake, cook*

/s/ *cell, circle, circus*

* **T** được phát âm là /t/; /tʃ/; /ʃ/; /ʒ/

/t/: *teacher, ten, take, computer*

/tʃ/ (T before U) *picture, actual, statue*

/tʃn/ *question*

/ʃ/: *notion, information, calculation, potential, essential*

4/ Một số phụ âm 'âm thầm' (silent letters)

H = /h/ hoặc silent:

5/ Một số cặp âm hay nhầm lẫn: long vowels and short vowels:

Eg: /i/ & /i:/ (hit # heat); /a:/ & /ʌ/ (far # cup); /e/ & /æ/ (man # men); /u/ & /u:/ (pull # pool),....

DẠNG 2. Choose the word with different stress pattern by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D. (chọn từ có phần nhấn âm khác với từ còn lại)

Cách làm: Theo một số chuyên gia ngôn ngữ và giáo viên Tiếng Anh, cần chú ý xác định một số quy luật cơ bản nhấn trọng âm như sau:

- Luật lệ thông thường cho từ có 2 âm tiết là trọng âm được đánh ở âm tiết đầu, nhưng nếu âm tiết đầu là một tiền tố hay âm nhẹ (weak form), trọng âm được đánh ở âm tiết hai.

Ví dụ:

'market; 'commerce; 'baker; 'candy; 'carrot; 'journey;

ca'nal; ci'gar; pol'ice; poss'ess; rom'ance; guit'ar

- Nếu từ 2 âm tiết vừa là danh từ, động từ, thì trọng âm được nhấn ở âm đầu tiên nếu nó là danh từ, âm thứ 2 nếu nó là động từ.

Ví dụ

'increase (n) 'import (n) 'decrease (n) 'perfect (n) 'survey (n)

in'crease (v) im'port (v) decr'ease (v) Per'fect (v) sur'vey (v)

- Luật lệ thông thường cho từ có 2 âm tiết là trọng âm được đánh âm tiết thứ hai nếu âm tiết đầu là một trong những tiền tố sau: *a, ab, abs, ad, ac, af, al, an, ar, as, at; be; co; col; com; con; cor; de; dis; e, ef, ex, em, en, ini, in; ob, op; pre, pro, re, sub, sup, sur, tran, un,...*

Ví dụ:

ab'oard al'ive abs'tract addr'ess achi'eve
ad'opt acc'ord aff'irm all'y appr'oach

• Nếu động từ có 2 âm tiết, trong đó âm đầu là một trong các tiền tố: *for, fore, out*, thì trọng âm được nhấn vào âm thứ 2, nhưng nếu động từ đó chuyển thành danh từ hay tính từ thì chúng ta nhấn trọng âm ở: *for, fore, out*.

Ví dụ:

for'give(V) 'forgivable (adj) 'forgiveness (N) fore'see(V) 'fogettable (adj)

• Nếu từ có 2 hoặc 3 âm tiết, trong đó âm đầu tiên là các tiền tố với nguyên âm dài như: /e:/; /o:/; /i:/; /ei/; /au/; /ou/ và theo sau âm này là những phụ âm, trọng âm được đánh ở âm tiết (ở tiền tố đó).

Ví dụ:

'absence 'adverb'colleague 'essay 'concrete

• Từ có 3 âm tiết thường có trọng âm nhấn ở âm đầu, nếu từ đó có các tiền tố như: *a, ab, abs, ad, ac, af, al, an, ar, as, at, be, co, col, com, con, cor, de, dis, e, ef, ex, em, en, im, in, ob, op, pre, pro, re, sub, sup, sur, trail, an,....* thì trọng âm nhấn ở âm tiết thứ hai hoặc thứ ba.

Ví dụ:

'usually 'capital 'difficult 'favourite 'government
Dec'ember Nov'ember tob'acco arr'angement underst'and

• Từ có 4 âm tiết trở lên, trọng âm thường được nhấn ở âm thứ 3, tính từ sau trở về trước.

Ví dụ:

e'conomy economical manufacture ne'cessary cons'iderable

Ngoại lệ cho những trường hợp có âm tiết bị giảm đi, không được phát âm, thì trọng âm của các từ có nhiều âm tiết này được nhấn ở âm đầu tiên.

Ví dụ

'business 'int/e/rest 'int/e/resting 'secret/a/ry 'mis/e/rable

• Nếu từ tận cùng bằng: *ic; ical; ically; ion; ia; ial; ual; al; ian; iar; ular; ience; ience; iency; iance; ium; ious; eous; uous, . . .* thì trọng âm được nhấn ở âm ngay trước các đuôi này.

Ví dụ:

Econo'mic atmos'pheric desc'ription comm'ercial intel'lectual

• Từ tận cùng bằng *ous, ate, tude, ity, ety, ical, logy, graphy, metry, nomy,...*, trọng âm thường được nhấn ở âm thứ 3, tính từ sau trở về trước.

Ví dụ:

va'riety cap'tivity ad'vanturous Con'siderate as'trology

• Từ tận cùng bằng *ade, ee; ese; eer; oo; oon; ette; esque*, trọng âm thường được nhấn ở âm cuối.

Ví dụ:

engin'eer sham'poo cigar'ette

• Từ ghép được kết hợp bởi 2 danh từ gốc thì trọng âm nhấn ở âm đầu: *'air-raid; 'bookcase; 'coal-mine; 'crossword; 'tea-pot; 'footprint;*

• Từ ghép được kết hợp bởi một tính từ và danh từ, thì trọng âm nhấn ở âm hai: *loud'speaker; bad'tempered; second'class;*

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Dạng bài 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D

Exercise 1: (-ed /-d ending)

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. answer <u>ed</u> | B. crowd <u>ed</u> | C. enjoy <u>ed</u> | D. fail <u>ed</u> |
| 2. A. depend <u>ed</u> | B. add <u>ed</u> | C. tast <u>ed</u> | D. crook <u>ed</u> |
| 3. A. pray <u>ed</u> | B. impress <u>ed</u> | C. compris <u>ed</u> | D. admir <u>ed</u> |
| 4. A. design <u>ed</u> | B. iron <u>ed</u> | C. pick <u>ed</u> | D. serv <u>ed</u> |
| 5. A. open <u>ed</u> | B. clos <u>ed</u> | C. contain <u>ed</u> | D. finish <u>ed</u> |
| 6. A. ski <u>ed</u> | B. help <u>ed</u> | C. watch <u>ed</u> | D. book <u>ed</u> |
| 7. A. offer <u>ed</u> | B. own <u>ed</u> | C. rul <u>ed</u> | D. wash <u>ed</u> |
| 8. A. exchang <u>ed</u> | B. want <u>ed</u> | C. controll <u>ed</u> | D. reduc <u>ed</u> |
| 9. A. install <u>ed</u> | B. prevent <u>ed</u> | C. persuad <u>ed</u> | D. pollut <u>ed</u> |
| 10. A. suggest <u>ed</u> | B. congratulat <u>ed</u> | C. decorat <u>ed</u> | D. wick <u>ed</u> |
| 11. A. launch <u>ed</u> | B. collaps <u>ed</u> | C. damag <u>ed</u> | D. work <u>ed</u> |
| 12. A. occur <u>ed</u> | B. destroy <u>ed</u> | C. separat <u>ed</u> | D. warn <u>ed</u> |
| 13. A. prov <u>ed</u> | B. trust <u>ed</u> | C. pull <u>ed</u> | D. claim <u>ed</u> |
| 14. A. mark <u>ed</u> ly | B. unidentifi <u>ed</u> | C. terrifi <u>ed</u> | D. behav <u>ed</u> |
| 15. A. nominat <u>ed</u> | B. celebrat <u>ed</u> | C. extend <u>ed</u> | D. replac <u>ed</u> |
| 16. A. miss <u>ed</u> | B. reduc <u>ed</u> | C. cover <u>ed</u> | D. conserv <u>ed</u> |
| 17. A. frighten <u>ed</u> | B. organiz <u>ed</u> | C. arriv <u>ed</u> | D. relax <u>ed</u> |
| 18. A. impart <u>ed</u> | B. mold <u>ed</u> | C. cook <u>ed</u> | D. mend <u>ed</u> |
| 19. A. pleas <u>ed</u> | B. instruct <u>ed</u> | C. show <u>ed</u> | D. kill <u>ed</u> |
| 20. A. relax <u>ed</u> | B. reach <u>ed</u> | C. supposed <u>ed</u> ly | D. cross <u>ed</u> |

Exercise 2: -s/-es ending

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 21. A. box <u>es</u> | B. class <u>es</u> | C. potato <u>es</u> | D. watch <u>es</u> |
| 22. A. catch <u>es</u> | B. phon <u>es</u> | C. cours <u>es</u> | D. plac <u>es</u> |
| 23. A. play <u>s</u> | B. stay <u>s</u> | C. bay <u>s</u> | D. say <u>s</u> |
| 24. A. deck <u>s</u> | B. boat <u>s</u> | C. bear <u>s</u> | D. stop <u>s</u> |
| 25. A. contest <u>s</u> | B. remark <u>s</u> | C. postcard <u>s</u> | D. gallop <u>s</u> |
| 26. A. bottl <u>es</u> | B. novel <u>s</u> | C. occasi <u>on</u> s | D. poet <u>s</u> |
| 27. A. describ <u>es</u> | B. encourag <u>es</u> | C. judg <u>es</u> | D. wash <u>es</u> |
| 28. A. compos <u>es</u> | B. decorat <u>es</u> | C. expect <u>s</u> | D. drop <u>s</u> |
| 29. A. hous <u>es</u> | B. plac <u>es</u> | C. hors <u>es</u> | D. fac <u>es</u> |
| 30. A. walk <u>s</u> | B. beg <u>in</u> s | C. help <u>s</u> | D. cut <u>s</u> |
| 31. A. cat <u>s</u> | B. tap <u>es</u> | C. liv <u>es</u> | D. cook <u>s</u> |
| 32. A. tell <u>s</u> | B. talk <u>s</u> | C. stay <u>s</u> | D. steal <u>s</u> |
| 33. A. biscuit <u>s</u> | B. magazin <u>es</u> | C. newspap <u>er</u> s | D. vegetabl <u>es</u> |
| 34. A. learn <u>s</u> | B. work <u>s</u> | C. controll <u>s</u> | D. respond <u>s</u> |
| 35. A. ris <u>es</u> | B. slic <u>es</u> | C. relax <u>es</u> | D. sleep <u>s</u> |
| 36. A. transmit <u>s</u> | B. laugh <u>s</u> | C. seem <u>s</u> | D. escap <u>es</u> |
| 37. A. volunt <u>ee</u> s | B. devic <u>es</u> | C. appear <u>s</u> | D. behavi <u>or</u> s |
| 38. A. habit <u>s</u> | B. applicati <u>on</u> s | C. vict <u>im</u> s | D. waterfall <u>s</u> |

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 39. A. cat <u>s</u> | B. fift <u>h</u> s | C. grap <u>e</u> s | D. vall <u>e</u> ys |
| 40. A. fet <u>ch</u> es | B. reduc <u>e</u> s | C. go <u>e</u> s | D. los <u>e</u> s |

Exercise 3: Pronunciation of “th”

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 41. A. bot <u>h</u> | B. tent <u>h</u> | C. my <u>th</u> | D. wit <u>h</u> |
| 42. A. too <u>th</u> | B. sunbat <u>h</u> e | C. <u>th</u> ese | D. fat <u>h</u> er |
| 43. A. <u>th</u> is | B. <u>th</u> ick | C. mat <u>h</u> s | D. <u>th</u> in |
| 44. A. wit <u>h</u> in | B. wit <u>h</u> out | C. clo <u>th</u> ing | D. strengt <u>h</u> en |
| 45. A. wealt <u>h</u> | B. healt <u>h</u> y | C. birth <u>th</u> day | D. wit <u>h</u> |
| 46. A. moth <u>er</u> | B. leat <u>h</u> er | C. breat <u>h</u> | D. breat <u>h</u> e |
| 47. A. toget <u>h</u> er | B. <u>Th</u> ursday | C. <u>th</u> eat <u>er</u> | D. <u>th</u> irsty |
| 48. A. <u>th</u> ink | B. aut <u>h</u> or | C. arit <u>h</u> metic | D. <u>th</u> erefore |
| 49. A. <u>th</u> ough | B. <u>th</u> ought | C. feat <u>h</u> er | D. bot <u>h</u> er |
| 50. A. met <u>h</u> od | B. rat <u>h</u> er | C. rhyt <u>h</u> m | D. toget <u>h</u> er |

Exercise 4: Pronunciation of ‘ch’

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 51. A. <u>ch</u> ampagne | B. <u>ch</u> air | C. <u>ach</u> ieve | D. <u>pitch</u> er |
| 52. A. <u>ch</u> aos | B. tooth <u>ch</u> e | C. wat <u>ch</u> | D. arch <u>ch</u> eology |
| 53. A. <u>ch</u> ildren | B. <u>ch</u> aracter | C. <u>ch</u> imney | D. resear <u>ch</u> er |
| 54. A. <u>ch</u> eck | B. bachel <u>or</u> | C. <u>Ch</u> ristmas | D. cat <u>ch</u> |
| 55. A. <u>te</u> chnique | B. <u>Ch</u> rist | C. head <u>ch</u> e | D. lun <u>ch</u> |
| 56. A. monar <u>ch</u> y | B. Michael | C. <u>ch</u> ef | D. <u>sch</u> ool |
| 57. A. mach <u>ine</u> | B. stomac <u>ch</u> | C. arch <u>it</u> eecture | D. <u>ch</u> orus |
| 58. A. but <u>ch</u> er | B. <u>ch</u> emical | C. <u>wh</u> ich | D. <u>ch</u> ocolate |
| 59. A. <u>mu</u> ch | B. teach <u>er</u> | C. coac <u>h</u> | D. <u>ech</u> o |
| 60. A. <u>ch</u> ea <u>p</u> | B. back <u>ch</u> e | C. psych <u>ch</u> ology | D. or <u>ch</u> estra |

Exercise 5: Pronunciation of ‘c’, ‘g’

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 61. A. <u>c</u> ruel | B. <u>c</u> ross | C. del <u>ci</u> ous | D. bec <u>a</u> use |
| 62. A. <u>c</u> entury | B. <u>c</u> ommercial | C. <u>ce</u> ase | D. <u>ce</u> iling |
| 63. A. <u>c</u> ity | B. rac <u>i</u> al | C. prec <u>i</u> ous | D. suff <u>i</u> cient |
| 64. A. <u>c</u> ite | B. <u>c</u> ruel | C. <u>c</u> ommercial | D. <u>co</u> operation |
| 65. A. mag <u>i</u> cally | B. <u>c</u> omment | C. ac <u>a</u> demic | D. <u>ci</u> garette |
| 66. A. off <u>i</u> cial | B. o <u>c</u> ean | C. <u>c</u> onvenient | D. prec <u>i</u> ous |
| 67. A. gen <u>e</u> rous | B. gl <u>ass</u> ware | C. gal <u>l</u> ery | D. sug <u>a</u> r |
| 68. A. g <u>a</u> in | B. ge <u>o</u> logy | C. g <u>e</u> t | D. go <u>o</u> se |
| 69. A. manag <u>e</u> r | B. mag <u>i</u> cally | C. reg <u>i</u> ster | D. magn <u>i</u> ficient |
| 70. A. beg <u>i</u> n | B. elig <u>i</u> ble | C. gr <u>o</u> up | D. gr <u>o</u> wing |

Exercise 6: (silent letters)

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 71. A. <u>h</u> aggy | B. ham <u>b</u> urger | C. <u>b</u> enefit | D. sub <u>t</u> le |
| 72. A. com <u>b</u> | B. deb <u>t</u> | C. viab <u>l</u> e | D. doub <u>t</u> |
| 73. A. res <u>i</u> gn | B. microorgan <u>i</u> sm | C. gr <u>a</u> de | D. cat <u>e</u> gory |
| 74. A. <u>h</u> obby | B. <u>h</u> onest | C. <u>h</u> edge | D. <u>H</u> induism |
| 75. A. <u>h</u> ousehold | B. brot <u>h</u> er <u>h</u> ood | C. ex <u>h</u> austed | D. <u>h</u> ole |
| 76. A. r <u>h</u> ythm | B. g <u>h</u> ost | C. <u>h</u> andle | D. <u>h</u> onour |
| 77. A. <u>k</u> nee | B. <u>k</u> nit | C. <u>k</u> angaroo | D. <u>k</u> nowledge |

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 78. A. <u>k</u> nife | B. tal <u>k</u> | C. <u>k</u> een | D. blan <u>k</u> et |
| 79. A. ca <u>l</u> m | B. compul <u>s</u> ory | C. care <u>l</u> ess | D. honest <u>l</u> y |
| 80. A. wh <u>a</u> t | B. wh <u>i</u> te | C. wh <u>o</u> | D. whis <u>p</u> er |
| 81. A. autum <u>n</u> | B. occasi <u>n</u> | C. colum <u>n</u> | D. sole <u>m</u> n |
| 82. A. <u>p</u> neumonia | B. recei <u>p</u> t | C. <u>p</u> sychology | D. <u>p</u> aragraph |
| 83. A. ex <u>p</u> erience | B. rasp <u>b</u> erry | C. <u>p</u> resent | D. se <u>p</u> arate |
| 84. A. is <u>l</u> and | B. campu <u>s</u> | C. scenery | D. course |
| 85. A. fast <u>e</u> n | B. hast <u>e</u> n | C. effecti <u>v</u> e | D. list <u>e</u> n |
| 86. A. Christ <u>m</u> as | B. chest <u>n</u> ut | C. ballet | D. materi <u>a</u> l |
| 87. A. ans <u>w</u> er | B. s <u>w</u> ord | C. aw <u>a</u> reness | D. <u>t</u> wo |
| 88. A. <u>w</u> rinkle | B. <u>w</u> arn | C. tow <u>a</u> rds | D. <u>w</u> onderful |
| 89. A. <u>w</u> ell-qualified | B. <u>w</u> rap | C. <u>w</u> hole | D. <u>w</u> rist |
| 90. A. gu <u>u</u> itar | B. <u>u</u> ltimately | C. biscu <u>i</u> t | D. bu <u>i</u> ld |

Exercise 7: Pronunciation of 's', 'gh', 't', 'n'

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 91. A. disp <u>a</u> iy | B. mou <u>s</u> e | C. tast <u>e</u> | D. desig <u>n</u> |
| 92. A. s <u>e</u> e | B. s <u>u</u> gar | C. salt | D. sof <u>a</u> |
| 93. A. bas <u>i</u> c | B. exist | C. sal <u>e</u> | D. soci <u>e</u> ty |
| 94. A. s <u>e</u> ldom | B. as <u>p</u> ect | C. cou <u>s</u> in | D. sl <u>i</u> m |
| 95. A. poss <u>e</u> ssion | B. dens <u>e</u> | C. campu <u>s</u> | D. assem <u>b</u> le |
| 96. A. laugh | B. th <u>o</u> ugh | C. toug <u>h</u> | D. enoug <u>h</u> |
| 97. A. ploug <u>h</u> | B. throug <u>h</u> | C. coug <u>h</u> | D. brig <u>h</u> t |
| 98. A. fut <u>u</u> re | B. stop | C. cult <u>u</u> re | D. pict <u>u</u> re |
| 99. A. nat <u>u</u> ral | B. charact <u>e</u> r | C. priorit <u>y</u> | D. pastim <u>e</u> |
| 100. A. than <u>k</u> | B. jungl <u>e</u> | C. anch <u>o</u> r | D. banan <u>a</u> |

Exercise 8. Vowel sounds

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 101. A. creat <u>u</u> re | B. creat <u>i</u> ve | C. cream <u>y</u> | D. creas <u>e</u> |
| 102. A. bo <u>a</u> t | B. ro <u>a</u> d | C. bro <u>a</u> d | D. co <u>a</u> t |
| 103. A. butt <u>e</u> r | B. sug <u>a</u> r | C. put | D. pus <u>h</u> |
| 104. A. gre <u>a</u> t | B. bre <u>a</u> d | C. bre <u>a</u> k | D. ste <u>a</u> k |
| 105. A. weig <u>h</u> t | B. heig <u>h</u> t | C. eig <u>h</u> t | D. ve <u>i</u> n |
| 106. A. to <u>o</u> | B. fo <u>o</u> d | C. so <u>o</u> n | D. go <u>o</u> d |
| 107. A. w <u>o</u> uld | B. ab <u>o</u> ut | C. r <u>o</u> und | D. <u>o</u> t |
| 108. A. fe <u>w</u> | B. se <u>w</u> | C. kn <u>e</u> w | D. n <u>e</u> w |
| 109. A. har <u>d</u> | B. fat <u>h</u> er | C. rat <u>h</u> er | D. sacrific <u>e</u> |
| 110. A. dos <u>a</u> ge | B. voyag <u>e</u> | C. massag <u>e</u> | D. carriag <u>e</u> |

Dạng bài 2. Choose the word with different stress pattern by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

Exercise 9. Word stress

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 111. A. adorable | B. ability | C. impossible | D. entertainment |
| 112. A. engineer | B. corporate | C. difficult | D. different |
| 113. A. popular | B. position | C. horrible | D. positive |
| 114. A. selfish | B. correct | C. purpose | D. surface |
| 115. A. nominate | B. susceptible | C. resistant | D. recovery |

116. A. eliminate	B. domesticate	C. unlimited	D. sabotage
117. A. sustantial	B. technological	C. exponential	D. infiltration
118. A. immunity	B. pursuit	C. perfection	D. confident
119. A. accompany	B. unfinished	C. contagion	D. separate
120. A. continent	B. essential	C. industry	D. comfortable

Exercise 10. Word stress

121. A. recycle	B. completely	C. introduce	D. alternative
122. A. religious	B. miserable	C. perform	D. include
123. A. significant	B. quantity	C. committee	D. believable
124. A. ambitious	B. constant	C. investment	D. exhaust
125. A. opportunity	B. decoration	C. temperament	D. expectation
126. A. particular	B. equipment	C. identify	D. miracle
127. A. complete	B. command	C. common	D. community
128. A. journal	B. mourning	C. calcium	D. although
129. A. memory	B. compare	C. connect	D. upgrade
130. A. simulate	B. permanent	C. fertilizer	D. variety

Exercise 11. Word stress

131. A. accelerate	B. digestive	C. disorder	D. infantry
132. A. convenient	B. previous	C. management	D. purchase
133. A. deliberate	B. dramatist	C. discovery	D. improvement
134. A. redundancy	B. comparison	C. maintenance	D. capacity
135. A. recognize	B. stimulate	C. activity	D. adult
136. A. intelligent	B. direct	C. desire	D. satisfactory
137. A. relationship	B. command	C. vocabulary	D. island
138. A. define	B. idea	C. express	D. figure
139. A. suppose	B. expect	C. unusual	D. literary
140. A. magnetic	B. radiation	C. unpleasant	D. equipment

Exercise 12. Word stress

141. A. distraction	B. considerable	C. recommend	D. description
142. A. probability	B. attitude	C. technological	D. entertainment
143. A. emergency	B. encourage	C. shortage	D. distraction
144. A. natural	B. surplus	C. dynamite	D. decision
145. A. create	B. ordinary	C. attitude	D. scholar
146. A. obtain	B. theory	C. illustrate	D. diagram
147. A. gravitation	B. manufacture	C. behavior	D. recommend
148. A. messenger	B. assistant	C. enable	D. require
149. A. agree	B. religion	C. suitable	D. occur
150. A. passenger	B. explorer	C. Italian	D. continue

Exercise 13. Word stress

151. A. traveler	B. European	C. century	D. spacecraft
152. A. unmanned	B. valuable	C. comment	D. surface
153. A. leisure	B. unnecessary	C. result	D. repeat
154. A. already	B. complain	C. arrangement	D. temperature

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 155. A. result | B. strengthen | C. forget | D. abolish |
| 156. A. suggest | B. relate | C. empty | D. effect |
| 157. A. colleague | B. available | C. different | D. sacrifice |
| 158. A. discovery | B. researcher | C. remain | D. lable |
| 159. A. identify | B. continue | C. popular | D. consumer |
| 160. A. adequate | B. reveal | C. construction | D. together |

Exercise 14. Word stress

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 161. A. experience | B. discomfort | C. support | D. friendship |
| 162. A. numerous | B. admit | C. occasion | D. attempt |
| 163. A. immediate | B. success | C. eagerness | D. phonetic |
| 164. A. conference | B. horrible | C. deny | D. language |
| 165. A. politics | B. imaginary | C. result | D. annoyed |
| 166. A. Japan | B. astronaut | C. unfortunate | D. approximate |
| 167. A. consequently | B. profile | C. initiate | D. project |
| 168. A. conference | B. announcement | C. arrival | D. reception |
| 169. A. argument | B. definite | C. museum | D. permanent |
| 170. A. ignite | B. igloo | C. hollow | D. fellow |

Exercise 15. Word stress

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| 171. A. innovate | B. inevitable | C. innocent | D. insect |
| 172. A. irritable | B. irrelevant | C. irreparable | D. irrational |
| 173. A. spectacular | B. variety | C. psychological | D. contribute |
| 174. A. estimate | B. activate | C. migrate | D. inflate |
| 175. A. admire | B. honor | C. title | D. difficult |
| 176. A. describe | B. struggle | C. political | D. society |
| 177. A. independence | B. politician | C. immortality | D. different |
| 178. A. comfort | B. nation | C. apply | D. moment |
| 179. A. ashamed | B. position | C. begin | D. enemy |
| 180. A. express | B. classical | C. occasion | D. emotion |

Exercise 16. Word stress

- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 181. A. atmosphere | B. entertain | C. industry | D. joyfulness |
| 182. A. popular | B. different | C. integral | D. expression |
| 183. A. solemn | B. express | C. succeed | D. event |
| 184. A. anthem | B. lyric | C. excite | D. celebrate |
| 185. A. settle | B. distance | C. distinct | D. preview |
| 186. A. pleasing | B. precise | C. jealous | D. active |
| 187. A. emergency | B. comparative | C. dimensional | D. misunderstand |
| 188. A. confident | B. physical | C. ethereal | D. regional |
| 189. A. practically | B. electrify | C. repetitive | D. alternative |
| 190. A. inspire | B. wealthy | C. protect | D. extinct |

Exercise 17. Word stress

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 191. A. simplicity | B. pollution | C. electricity | D. activity |
| 192. A. mathematics | B. statistics | C. academy | D. mechanics |
| 193. A. serious | B. mistake | C. circumstance | D. original |

194. A. valley	B. mountain	C. peninsula	D. scenery
195. A. gallery	B. holiday	C. informal	D. lecturer
196. A. return	B. market	C. notebook	D. office
197. A. wardrobe	B. tonight	C. begin	D. explode
198. A. opposite	B. banana	C. camera	D. difficult
199. A. expensive	B. forgotten	C. retirement	D. picturesque
200. A. substantial	B. apologize	C. numerous	D. advancement

Exercise 18. Word stress

201. A. apparent	B. arrange	C. underground	D. display
202. A. interrupt	B. potential	C. argumentative	D. simultaneous
203. A. seasonal	B. extinct	C. marine	D. fantastic
204. A. tropical	B. incredible	C. uncomfortable	D. behind
205. A. athletic	B. lucrative	C. conservative	D. distinguish
206. A. predecease	B. competition	C. indestructible	D. democracy
207. A. outstanding	B. minority	C. determined	D. evidence
208. A. material	B. disability	C. phenomenon	D. approximate
209. A. facility	B. believe	C. however	D. linguist
210. A. accent	B. unlike	C. cultural	D. climate

Exercise 19. Word stress

211. A. information	B. together	C. residential	D. cosmopolitan
212. A. average	B. attractive	C. gallery	D. numerous
213. A. audience	B. exceed	C. convince	D. assure
214. A. superior	B. repetition	C. entertainment	D. incorrect
215. A. doctor	B. address	C. birthday	D. concert
216. A. wonderful	B. together	C. restaurant	D. physicist
217. A. kilo	B. centigrade	C. temperature	D. destination
218. A. attractive	B. balcony	C. chocolate	D. decorate
219. A. musical	B. headmaster	C. engineer	D. February
220. A. extent	B. synonymous	C. admit	D. manuscript

Exercise 20. Word stress

221. A. inadequate	B. available	C. authority	D. purpose
222. A. demonstrate	B. responsible	C. simplify	D. celebrate
223. A. secondary	B. expectation	C. supervision	D. sociologist
224. A. instead	B. furious	C. campaign	D. apartment
225. A. particular	B. impressed	C. knowledge	D. immense
226. A. excellent	B. fertile	C. century	D. include
227. A. recent	B. family	C. interesting	D. immediate
228. A. forgettable	B. impotent	C. periodical	D. remove
229. A. appreciate	B. relationship	C. business	D. within
230. A. dependable	B. assortment	C. suitable	D. commercial

Exercise 21. Word stress

231. A. infrastructure	B. convenient	C. executive	D. creative
232. A. schedule	B. elastic	C. improvement	D. equipment

233. A. comfortable	B. flexible	C. prosperous	D. endeavour
234. A. enthusiasm	B. chemistry	C. explosive	D. synthetic
235. A. alternative	B. energy	C. process	D. temperature
236. A. potential	B. possess	C. survival	D. current
237. A. burglary	B. employment	C. courageous	D. dependent
238. A. comment	B. nourish	C. marine	D. landscape
239. A. obstacle	B. government	C. courage	D. dismiss
240. A. disaster	B. prisoner	C. agency	D. family

Exercise 22. Word stress

241. A. international	B. federation	C. society	D. dedication
242. A. catastrophe	B. emergency	C. conventional	D. vulnerable
243. A. suffering	B. president	C. protection	D. conference
244. A. involve	B. propose	C. improve	D. soldier
245. A. deposit	B. elastic	C. opinion	D. wastepaper
246. A. permission	B. religious	C. proficient	D. typewriter
247. A. alphabet	B. promise	C. microphone	D. contradict
248. A. persecute	B. defective	C. benefit	D. influence
249. A. excellent	B. deduction	C. decorate	D. pesticide
250. A. migrate	B. inhabit	C. character	D. diversity

Chuyên đề 2: VOCABULARY (TỪ VỰNG)

PHẦN 1: WORD-FORM ATION (CẤU TẠO TỪ)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

* Tiền tố và hậu tố (prefixes and suffixes)

Một dạng bài tập rất phổ biến đối với các bài thi học sinh giỏi tiếng Anh là loại bài tập cấu tạo từ (tạo ra một từ phái sinh từ một từ cho sẵn). Đối với dạng bài tập này, người học có thể sử dụng kiến thức của mình về ngữ pháp để chọn ra đúng từ loại cần dùng trong ngữ cảnh cụ thể (danh từ, động từ, tính từ...); đồng thời nắm vững cách cấu tạo từ qua việc sử dụng các tiền tố và hậu tố thích hợp để điền đúng từ cần điền.

Sau đây là ý nghĩa của một số tiền tố và hậu tố thường gặp trong tiếng Anh và nghĩa của chúng. Cũng cần lưu ý rằng khi nắm được ý nghĩa của các tiền tố và hậu tố của từ, người học có thể sử dụng chúng để đoán nghĩa của từ mới trong quá trình làm các bài tập đọc hiểu.

1. Tiền tố (Prefixes)

Tiền tố được đặt vào đầu một từ để thay đổi nghĩa hoặc tạo ra một nghĩa mới cho từ đã cho. Sau đây là một số tiền tố thường gặp trong tiếng Anh và nghĩa của chúng.

Tiền tố	Nghĩa	Ví dụ
Dis, non, il, im, in, un, ir.	không, phi, bất, vô	dishonest (không trung thực), illegal (không hợp pháp, phi pháp), impossible (không thể) irregular (bất quy tắc), non-sense (vô nghĩa), unlucky (không may)
un, dis	không(hoặc mang nghĩa trái lại)	unlock (mở - trái với lock là khoá), disagree (không đồng ý), disappear (biến mất - trái với appear là xuất hiện) unhappy (không vui)
Re	lại,	retell (kể lại), rewrite (viết lại), reprint (in lại)
Anti	chống lại	antiwar (chống chiến tranh), anti-nuclear bomb, anti-aircraft (phòng không), anti-clockwise (ngược chiều kim đồng hồ)
Counter	phản lại, chống lại	counter-attack (phản công), counter-argue (phản bác lại lập luận), counter-blow (đòn đánh trả)
Mis	sai, nhầm	misunderstand (hiểu nhầm), mistake (sai lầm), misuse (sử dụng sai, sử dụng lạm dụng)
Super	hơn hẳn, siêu, vượt quá	superheat (đun quá sôi), supermarket (siêu thị), superman (siêu nhân) supersensitive (nhạy cảm quá độ)
Pre	trước, tiền	pre-war (trước chiến tranh, tiền chiến), pre-historic (tiền sử)
Post	sau, hậu	post-war (sau chiến tranh, hậu chiến), post-graduation (sau khi tốt nghiệp), post-birth (sau khi sinh)
Fore	Trước	foresee (dự kiến trước, thấy trước), foretell (nói trước, đoán trước), forecast (dự báo trước)
Over	quá (nhiều)	overeat (ăn quá nhiều), oversleep (ngủ quá giờ) overweight (quá cân), overdrink (uống quá nhiều)
ex	cựu, cũ	ex-manager (cựu giám đốc), ex-president (cựu chủ tịch), ex-wife (vợ cũ)
Co	cùng, đồng	cooperate (hợp tác), co-author (đồng tác giả) co-teaching, cùng dạy) co-chairman (đồng chủ tịch)

up	nâng cao, lên trên	upgrade (nâng cấp), upstairs (lên tầng trên)
Sub	tiểu (chia thành phần nhỏ hơn), dưới	subtitle (tiêu đề, phụ đề), subdivision (sự chia nhỏ ra), sub-sensible (dưới ngưỡng cảm giác)
Trans	qua, chuyển	Transplant (cấy ghép), transatlantic (vượt Đại Tây Dương), transcontinental (xuyên lục địa)
Inter	Reaction (tương tác bên trong)	International (thuộc về quốc tế (giữa nhiều quốc gia), interrelation (mối quan hệ tương tác)
Extra	thêm, phụ, ngoại	extra-linguistic context (ngoại ngôn), extra- activities (ngoại khóa)
Poly	nhiều, đa	polysemantic (đa nghĩa), polyglot (người biết nhiều thứ tiếng)
Mono	đơn, độc	monolingual (đơn ngữ), monosymantic (đơn nghĩa), monosyllabic (đơn âm tiết)
Under	dưới	Undergraduate (chưa tốt nghiệp), undercook (chưa nấu chín), under-develop (kém phát triển)
Bi	hai, song	bilingual (hai ngôn ngữ, song ngữ), bicycle (xe đạp = hai bánh)

2. Hậu tố (Suffixes): Hậu tố được thêm vào phía sau của một từ để tạo từ mới với nghĩa mới và loại từ mới. Sau đây là một vài hậu tố phổ biến.

Hậu tố	Nghĩa	Ví dụ
err, or, ess, ant.	cấu tạo một danh từ từ động từ để chỉ người làm việc nào đó	teacher (giáo viên), actor (nam diễn viên), actress (nữ diễn viên), assistant (người phụ tá), accountant (kế toán)
Ness	cấu tạo một danh từ từ tính từ để chỉ tình trạng, trạng thái nào đó	happiness (niềm vui, hạnh phúc), sadness (nỗi buồn), loneliness (sự cô đơn)
Ism	một chủ nghĩa, một học thuyết, niềm tin	socialism (chủ nghĩa xã hội), Maxism (chủ nghĩa Mác), heroism (chủ nghĩa anh hùng)

ship, hood	thêm vào một danh từ để tạo thành một danh từ mới chỉ điều kiện, tình trạng, thời gian, hoặc những người thuộc một nhóm nào đó	friendship (tình bạn), scholarship (học bổng), authorship (nguồn tác giả), championship (chức vô địch), childhood (thời thơ ấu), neighbourhood (hàng xóm, vùng lân cận), motherhood (tình mẫu tử)
Less	không có, thiếu, vô	useless (vô ích, vô dụng), childless (không có con), homeless (vô gia cư, không có nhà cửa), fatherless (không có cha, mồ côi cha), harmless (không có hại. vô hại)
Full	có (phẩm chất nào đó)	hopeful (có hi vọng), useful (có ích, dùng được), successful (thành công)
ly, ous, y, ent, ant, ese	cấu tạo một tính từ để chỉ có đặc tính nào đó, thuộc nhóm nào đó	lovely (đáng yêu), lively (sinh động, sống động), hearty (nồng nhiệt), dangerous (nguy hiểm), poisonous (có độc), jealous (ghen tị), important (quan trọng), independent (độc lập). Vietnamese (người Việt Nam), Chinese (người Trung quốc).
Ize	cấu tạo một tính từ chỉ hoạt động	socialize (xã hội hoá), modernize (hiện đại hoá), industrialize (công nghiệp hoá), privatize (tư hữu hoá)
en	được làm từ cái gì đó	wooden (làm bằng gỗ), woolen (làm bằng len), golden (làm bằng vàng)
able, ible	có thể	understandable (có thể hiểu được), visible (có thể nhìn thấy được, hữu hình), drinkable (có thể uống được)
Ish	hơi hơi, có đặc tính này ở mức ít	childish (hơi trẻ con), foolish (ngốc nghếch), reddish (hơi đỏ), yellowish (hơi vàng), youngish (hơi trẻ, khá trẻ).
Like	giống, như, tương tự như	childlike (như trẻ con, giống trẻ con), businesslike (như thương gia)
Fold	gấp một số lần	twofold (gấp hai lần), tenfold (gấp mười lần), thousandfold (gấp hàng nghìn lần)
Ward	về hướng	southward (về hướng nam), backward (lùi lại), northward (về hướng bắc)
en, ize, fy, ate.	cấu tạo động từ từ tính từ	weaken (bị suy yếu), darken (làm tối lại), brighten (làm cho sáng lên), specialize (chuyên môn hoá), horrify (làm hoảng sợ), beatify (làm đẹp), liberate (phóng thích, cho tự do), vaccinate (tiêm vắc xin)

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Bài tập cơ bản

Dạng bài 1: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the words in brackets.

Exercise 1

1. I (HONEST).....think that this is the best thing to do.
2. This (OBSERVE).....houses the largest telescope in the country.
3. UFO means (IDENTIFY).....Flying Object.
4. They said my illness was (IMAGINE).....Don't they realize I'm in a lot of pain?
5. They're selling these toys at a very (COMPETE).....price.
6. A letter should always end with the (SIGN).....of the writer.
7. John hates waiting, he's so (PATIENT).....
8. A large number of crimes remain (SOLVE).....
9. The elderly tourists do not find the thought of climbing the hill (APPEAL).....
10. We need to (CYCLE).....more of our waste and glass.

Exercise 2

1. It's not a very pretty town, but the (SURROUND).....are beautiful.
2. Australia is famous for its (SCENE)..... beauty.
3. The dentist's (SURGEON).....is closed on Thursday.
4. "This is not a good essay." said the lecturer, "I find your arguments (CONVINCE).....
5. I had to (SHORT).....your speech as we started late.
6. In the past few years this area has become heavily (INDUSTRY).....
7. In some places the weather changes so quickly that it's very (PREDICT).....
8. The world of computers is extremely (COMPETE).....
9. The professor explained his idea with great (CLEAR).....
10. The judge told him it was (RESPONSIBLE).....to drink and drive.

Exercise 3

1. I'll help you (FAMILIAR).....yourself with the city.
2. Despite the star-stuffed cast, the film was only (PART).....successful.
3. I lost my temper because he was being so (HEAD).....and was refusing to accept that he was wrong, despite all the evidence.
4. He wrote the book alone, so he doesn't have a(n) (AUTHOR).....
5. He felt very (COURAGE).....when he saw he had failed the exam again.
6. Are all those (ADD).....they put in food really necessary?
7. The teacher warned the children that if they (BEHAVE).....again, they'd be punished.
8. Librarians spend a lot of their time (CLASS).....books.
9. I don't care if you had had too much to drink. Your behavior last night was quite (DEFEND)
10. Don't worry! Our new product will keep your bathroom clean and (ORDOUR)

Exercise 4

1. It was a complete (FAIL).....due to poor planning.
2. It was very (FRIEND).....of you to slam the door in his face.
3. The man cycled (CARE).....and had an accident.
4. Could you (STRAIGHT).....the picture over the sofa?
5. It's hard to buy meat on the island but fish is (PLENTY).....

6. I've only been to Paris (ONE).....before, and that was many years ago.
7. My car is much too (RELY).....to take on a long journey.
8. In (CONCLUDE)....., I'd like to thank the people who have helped me while I have been working here.
9. She was sentenced to forty years (PRISON).....for manslaughter.
10. There was a (DIE).....silence when he mentioned his ex-wife's name.

Exercise 5

1. These quantities are (SUFFICIENT).....for the number of orders received.
2. I am not saying he is (HONEST)....., but he is not very good with money.
3. The (PERFORM).....she gave last night was marvellous.
4. She has one of the biggest (COLLECT).....in Britain.
5. They managed to find three miners who were still (LIVE).....three days after the underground explosion.
6. Cats are supposed to have nine (LIVE).....
7. "Look after your mother," were his (DIE).....words.
8. He claimed that his (BRING UP).....had caused him to become a criminal.
9. It was a difficult (PREGNANT).....and she almost lost the baby.
10. The government has promised to deal with the problem of (EMPLOY).....among young people.

Exercise 6

1. This screw needs (TIGHT).....
2. Scientists consider it (BELIEVE).....that gods create volcanic eruptions.
3. We brought back several carved (WOOD).....statues from our holiday in Africa.
4. The accommodation was (SPACE).....and comfortable.
5. There's no easy (SOLVE).....to this problem.
6. His hands were wet and (SLIP).....
7. We were lucky enough to get tickets for the first (PERFORM).....of the hit musical.
8. What she did was so (SHOCK).....that I can hardly describe it.
9. My aunt is a (PLEASE).....woman so everyone wants come to her when they are in troubles.
10. The palace is closed for (RESTORE).....work.

Exercise 7

1. People often find (HAPPY).....in simple things.
2. This is a very (VALUE).....grandfather clock.
3. Katie's (ILL).....has kept her away from school for a week.
4. Nowadays most teenagers have the (FREE).....to do whatever they please.
5. A good (FRIEND).....will last a lifetime.
6. An (INSPECT).....of the building was made and it was declared safe.
7. The children looked unhappy and (MISERY).....
8. Please send your (APPLY).....to 22 Market St.
9. You'd be (PATIENT).....too if you had been waiting for two hours!
10. This outfit is (SUIT).....for the dance, don't you think?

Exercise 8

1. The (EMPLOY).....at Maxwell's are all trained in customer service.
2. The children's (EXCITE).....was obvious at the birthday party.
3. My brother and I had a(n) (AGREE).....and now we don't talk to each other.
4. I've worked hard all my (LIVE).....
5. The film is a bit depressing as it deals with the (REAL).....of homeless people.
6. This knife is (USE).....It doesn't cut at all.
7. We were (HELP) None of us knew any first aid.
8. He works with great (ENTHUSE).....
9. (NATURE)....., we are concerned about our son's progress at school.
10. I can't find the (SOLVE).....to the last maths problem.

Exercise 9

1. A lot of encourage children's (IMAGINE).....
2. The factory has provided cheaper (PRODUCE).....lately.
3. According to some scientists the earth is losing its outer atmosphere because of (POLLUTE)
4. (FOREST).....has caused many so called man made disasters.
5. (CRY).....often walk through the streets shouting or singing about something they sell.
6. Gas and oil (CONSUME).....always increase in cold water.
7. The police are interested in the sudden(APPEAR).....of the valuable painting.
8. He claimed that his (BRING UP).....had caused him to be a criminal.
9. Travelling in big cities is becoming more (TROUBLE).....everyday.
10. Less public transport is now available because of the(SHORT).....of staff.

Exercise 10

1. Therefore the roads become (JAM).....with private cars as people drive to work.
2. Because of the volume of traffic local councils are forced to give (PERMIT).....for more roads to be constructed.
3. (FORTUNE).....many house have to be demolished to make ways for the road.
4. The injury to their key player could be a (DECIDE).....factor in the game.
5. But travelling by public transport is very (ATTRACT).....as there are long delays.
6. The (FREQUENT).....of the trains and the buses causes frustration and annoyance.
7. The situation is so (CHAOS).....in some cities now that it is difficult to see any solution.
8. His behaviour always (EMBARRASS).....me at parties.
9. The new film is (EXCEPTION).....good.
10. She felt a sense of (LOSE).....when her friend went to live abroad.

Exercise 11

1. Please give the handicapped some (CONSIDER).....when building stairs.
2. Mr. Lim has been having (FINANCE).....problems for a long time.
3. We need to give our local stars a lot of (PUBLIC).....
4. Money is (SECOND).....Family comes first.
5. She displayed her (WILLING).....to help him by giving him a cheque.
6. More local (NOVEL).....are getting recognition for their work.
7. Can I have an (EXTEND).....on the dateline of my project?
8. It was (COINCIDE).....that both our birthdays fell in the same day.
9. A (NURSE).....for children has just opened near my workplace.

10. Angie is quite (TOLERATE).....of the screaming of her children.

Exercise 12

1. New York is the home of the United Nations and the centre of (GLOBE).....finance.
2. There are always interesting (EXHIBIT).....at the big art museums in New York.
3. The cinema changed (COMPLETE).....at the end of the 1920s.
4. I was absolutely (EXHAUST).....after such a long journey.
5. Rivaldo (SCORE).....an amazing goal from a free kick in the last minute.
6. Are you (INTEREST).....in any sports?
7. The movie was (DISAPPOINT).....
8. Please write your name, age, and (OCCUPY).....on the form
9. I find it (INTEREST).....talk to Peter's father
10. The river is (DANGER).....for swimmers.

Exercise 13

1. The boy felt quite (SATISFY).....with his examination results.
2. A (FISH).....is someone who catches fish, either a job or as a sport.
3. Our (FLY).....will arrive at Tan Son Nhat Airport at 6:30.
4. Hamid is a (FRIEND).....person.
5. The (HOT).....destroyed all the crops.
6. Our teacher has a profound (KNOW).....of Moroccan history.
7. Walt Disney is the (CREATE).....of Mickey Mouse.
8. We need to join efforts and work together to find a (SOLVE).....to the problem of pollution.
9. Literature is a source of great (WISE).....
10. At the age of just 14 Lauren Murray was (ADDICT).....to heroin.

Exercise 14

1. Edith Piaf was (FAME).....not only for her magnificent voice but also for her black dress.
2. In this poem, Robert expresses his patriotic (PROUD).....
3. The children were very (NOISE).....when their mother was out.
4. (CHILD).....is the period of time in which we learn to become a personality.
5. Try not to become a man of (SUCCEED).....but a man of value. A. Einstein
6. Don't worry about (FAIL).....as long as you are ready to try again.
7. A basic premise of American jurisprudence is that a person is presumed (INNOCENCE)
until proven guilty in a court of law.
8. "The situation of human rights in the Arab world has (INCREASE).....deteriorated in
2008," the CIHRS said.
9. (IGNORE).....of the law excuses no man.
10. The school expects students to dress in proper attire and maintain a (RESPECT)..... level
of deportment throughout the day.

Exercise 15

1. There has been an outbreak of racial (VIOLATE).....in the south of Spain recently.
2. The soldiers were responsible for the (DIE).....of many civilians in the South of the
country.
3. The company's director lacks (LEAD).....skills.
4. Sugar is (HARM).....for your teeth because it sticks to them causing plaque and decay.

5. The first key to beating drug (ADDICT).....lies in understanding it and identifying its causes.
6. Mounir Alhamdaoui holds joint (CITIZEN).....in Morocco and Holland.
7. My daughter Hajar received many (GIVE).....for her birthday.
8. It is (LAW).....to drive a car if you don't have a driver's licence.
9. Taha Hussein lost his (SEE).....at an early age.
10. His behaviour is often (CHILD).....and this makes me angry.

Exercise 16. Complete the following statement by adding the right suffix from the list given: -hood, -ship, -th, -ful, -dom,-en, -OUS, -less

1. Most people reach (ADULT).....at 18.
2. All love that has not (FRIEND).....for its base is like a mansion built upon sand.
3. The longer I live, the more (BEAUTY).....life becomes.
4. Its cold. Why don't you put a sweater on for extra (WARM).....?
5. Obama is (HOPE).....about the future of American economy.
6. The fire gutted all the (WOOD).....buildings in our neighborhood.
7. A teenage girl died under (MYSTERY).....circumstances and the investigation process is now under way.
8. Thousands of people are still (HOME).....two weeks after floods in Sidi Slimane, Morocco.
9. Arrogance is like a (KING).....without a crown.
10. Only the unknown (FRIGHT).....men. But once a man has faced the unknown that terror becomes the known.

Exercise 17

1. Our team were (LUCKY).....to lose as they had a lot of chances but they missed them.
2. We must not be (POLITE).....to our teachers. They are our mentors and our greatest resource.
3. The government and the trade unions had a (AGREEMENT).....over the wage hikes.
4. Our association launched a campaign to raise awareness of (DIVERSITY).....and its importance in all our lives.
5. The teacher asked me to (WRITE).....my essay as it was full of spelling mistakes.
6. Hundreds of people joined the (WAR) protest in Copley Square in Boston.
7. If you think corruption can be solved by punishment alone, you completely (UNDERSTAND) problem.
8. Let's not (JUDGE).....the situation until we hear more details.
9. (-DEVELOPED)countries lose their human capital to the developed countries.
10. I grew up in a (LINGUAL)family who spoke both Berber and Arabic at home.

Exercise 18

1. (STABLE).....could present countries from developing and progressing.
2. Raja fans (NUMBER).....those of IZK last Sunday at Mohammed V Stadium in Casablanca.
3. In case of war, it is usually children, the sick, the elderly, and the (ABLE).....who get stuck in the crossfire.
4. During wars civilians may be (ABLE) to obtain food, water, shelter, and medical care.
5. Deforestation causes the extinction of species which depend on the forest for (SURVIVE).....
6. Poverty is (DOUBT).....a determinant factor in the use of child labor.

7. (GROW).....deficiency is prevalent among working children.
8. Bilal's mother often blames him for his (CARE).....
9. Many people in developing countries are (POOR).....remunerated for all the hard work they do.
10. The Moroccan and Spanish authorities (OPERATE).....to fight terrorism.

Exercise 19

1. Be sure to contact him if you need advice. He's a very (HELP).....person.
2. It was a really (ENJOY).....party. Thanks for inviting me.
3. He has just taken out a (MONTH).....subscription to the magazine.
4. She smiled (HAPPY).....when they offered her the new job.
5. (HOPE).....we'll have enough money saved to get married next year.
6. In order for the medicine to work (EFFECT).....you must take the correct amount.
7. Although our teacher is very strict in class, she is (FRIEND).....than you would, expect.
8. What a beautiful vase! That's the (LOVE).....present I've ever had.
9. He told her that he (SYMPATHY).....with her problem but couldn't do anything to help.
10. My belt feels a bit tight after that huge lunch. I think I'll have to (LOOSE)it a little.

Exercise 20

1. She was severely (WEAK)..... by the long illness she had.
2. There are many different ways to (CLASS).....areas of English Grammar.
3. If you're really sorry for what you said you won't mind (APOLOGY).....
4. There's no need to (CRITIC).....my work. I'm trying as hard as I can.
5. The pain in his back (LESS).....as soon as he took the medication.
6. Everybody was (HORROR).....by the news of the earthquake.
7. When he became a teenager he wanted to be more (DEPEND).....from his parents.
8. It was really (HONEST).....of you to take that money without asking.
9. If you hadn't been so (CARE).....with that book you'd still have it now.
10. My broken leg means I'll be (ABLE).....to go on holiday with you.

Bài tập nâng cao

Dạng bài 2: Complete the passage using the correct form of the words in the capital letters.

Exercise 1

To neighbors, Mr Stewart is a dull man who speaks very (1- POLITE).....and whose only form of (2- ENTERTAIN).....is his job. And to a certain extent it's true, since Mr Stewart finds his job very (3- INTEREST).....He is an antique dealer and goes to work (4- HAPPY).....every day. He handles some very (5- EXPENSE).....pieces sometimes, which can make his job (6- DANGER)....., as there have recently been quite a few (7- ROB).....at antique shops. So not (8- SURPRISE)....., Mr Stewart decided that his own business needed some extra (9- PROTECT).....After having an alarm system put in, Mr Stewart doesn't feel (10-COMplete).....secure but he does feel more protected.

Exercise 2

You may know that Asian, Middle Eastern and Mediterranean cultures have (1- TRADITION) used garlic in their dishes. What you may not know is that garlic was also thought of as a (2- VALUE)medicine by many ancient civilisations. Today, (3-PROFESSION).....in the field of nutrition have come up with new (4- INFORM).....which is indeed quite surprising. Apparently,

not only is garlic good for you but it also helps overcome various (5- ILL).....The main (6- ADVANTAGE).....to eating garlic is of course bad (7-BREATH)Cooking it reduces the strong smell and eating parsley, which is a (8- NATURE).....deodoriser, also helps minimise the smell. So, it's time we took the benefits of garlic (9- SERIOUS)..... Why not add it to some of your (10-FAVOUR).....dishes!

Exercise 3

Being a (1- JOURNAL)....., I often have to go on strange assignments. So when my editor told me to do a story on one of the (2- FAME).....health spas in Switzerland, I was only too happy to go and take it easy for a week or two. However, when I got there and saw the programme, I began to panic. I had to go on a diet and participate in a (3- VARY).....of exercise classes. My (4- ANGRY).....turned to rage when they insisted I go to bed very early so as to get up at 6:00 a. m. and eat breakfast in a (5- BUILD)which looked like a greenhouse. I must admit that they ran an excellent (6- ORGANIZE).....Anyway, you can imagine how happy I was to see my familiar (7- NEIGHBOUR).....when I finally arrived home. A few months later, I received an (8- INVITE).....from the same clinic for a week's worth of free treatment. My family thought it rather (9- AMUSE)when they saw the (10- FRIGHT).....look on my face.

Exercise 4

My father was a police (1- INSPECT)....., my mother a (2- TEACH)..... Their (3- DECIDE).....to move to a small town when I was a child changed my life. It was a very (4- PEACE).....place and of course living there meant that I had much more (5- FREE).....to go wherever I pleased. The people were (6- FRIEND).....but I missed my close friends, my school and the (7- NOISE).....city I had lived in. As I grew up, I realized that there wasn't much for a young person to do there, except rush into (8- MARRY)..... When I left, my parents were sad, but they realized that staying there would only make me (9- MISERY)..... The big city I live in now is not very far away, so I can visit my parents (10- FREQUENT).....and have the best of both worlds.

Exercise 5

The economic crisis facing many countries today, has created serious (1- EMPLOY)..... problems. (2- ENERGY)young people, willing to work, are confronted by many (3- DIFFICULT).....when trying to find a job. Filling in countless (4- APPLY).....forms and hearing that they are (5-SUIT).....for the job because they don't have the right (6- QUALIFY).....can be disheartening. Finding a job seems just (7- POSSIBLE)..... However, their (8- DISAPPOINT).....shouldn't affect them nor make them give up. There is no straightforward (9- SOLVE).....other than (10- PATIENT).....and persistence.

Exercise 6

The (1- EXCITE)..... game between the Dragons and the Tigers is over. The Tigers' failure to win of course means that they won't play in the finals. The Dragons played a (2-WONDER)game and earned everyone's (3-ADMIRE).....Their (4- COMBINE).....of tactics and strength definitely helped them win. Due to the continuous (5- DEVELOP)of new strategies by their coach, this will be the (6- FIVE).....year in a row that the Dragons will play in the final. Their (7- POPULAR).....has increased over the years and there is no doubt that Hillbell Stadium will be (8- CROWD).....with (9- ENTHUSE).....fans on the day of the final. If they play like today, they are sure to be (10- SUCCESS).....

Exercise 7

In our (1- LIVE).....we are constantly bombarded by (2- ADVERTISE).....whose role is to make products (3- ATTRACT).....enough so that people will want to buy them (4- IMMEDIATE).....There has been a lot of (5- DISCUSS).....on the powerful effects of advertising. Are ads really (6- USE).....? Are they (7- TRUE).....? Do they give us a (8- REAL).....idea of the product? People are rarely in (9- AGREE).....on any of these questions, but the fact is that ads are (10- HELP).....in letting people know the wide variety of goods available.

Exercise 8

There has been a significant (1- REDUCE).....in police popularity in the last few years. That's why this week a public relation campaign is being launched to make people more (2- SENSE).....to the role of the police officer. The adds will stress that police do more than just give (3- MOTOR).....speeding tickets. They often act as unofficial social workers, visit schools and talk to students, familiarising them with traffic signs and warning them of (4- VARY).....dangers. Being a police officer is (5- RISK)....., considering that every day they deal with (6- CRIME).....such as thieves and even (7- MURDER).....In (8- CONCLUDE)....., the campaign wants to make the public realise that even though in some cases the police's approach may seem extreme, they cannot ignore the (9- POSSIBLE).....of injury or even (10- DIE).....while on duty.

Exercise 9

My decision to become an (1- ACT).....was not an easy one. After all, one's ability to act well isn't enough. It isn't a stable profession. However, I find acting most (2- ENJOY).....and am willing to live without job (3- SECURE)..... I don't work on TV serials or anything like that. I only take part in theatre (4- PERFORM).....It's most rewarding as you get the audience's immediate (5- REACT).....For example, when doing a (6- HUMOUR).....play, we all wait to hear the audience's (7- LAUGH).....If we don't, we know that the production has been (8- SUCCESS).....and we have failed. Even though I've had many years of experience. I'm always (9- TERROR).....and (10- NERVE).....before going on stage. But once I start performing, I quickly lose myself in the play. Playing a character completely different from your own is always a challenge.

Exercise 10

During cold winter afternoon, I(1- NORMAL).....meet my friends at the local fast food restaurant. It's an (2- IDEA).....meeting place as there is lots of (3- WARM).....(4- TASTE).....food (which my mum calls (5- POISON).....) is also available. So, it's a (6- COMFORT)place to chat. Young people like me, need a place to go and talk. We usually talk about our interests and hobbies, mine being (7-PHOTO).....Our behavior is typical of many teenagers, I suppose. However, my parents think I go out too often. Luckily though, after many (8- ARGUE).....they have begun to accept my (9- EXPLAIN).....that young people need to find ways to relieve their (10- BORE)....., especially if they live in a small town like I do.

Exercise 11

After 1948, the Hollywood studios, where films for the cinema were produced, faced a new kind of competition. The (1- ARRIVE).....of television. At first, Hollywood didn't work. After all, John Baird's (2- INVENT).....could only produce small black and white pictures. However, they were

mistaken. To the (3- ASTONISH) of the Hollywood studios, by the early 1950's (4- WEEK).....

attendance at cinemas had dropped by fifty percent. Television today has become part of everyday life. These boxes give (5- END).....hours of (6-PLEASE).....to millions of people. It is also an (7- ECONOMY).....form of entertainment. However, TV can also be (8- HARM).....and not only for the eyes. For instance, programmes contain scenes of (9- VIOLENT).....can influence children's (10- BEHAVE)negatively. Who would have thought that television would influence our lives so much?

Exercise 12

Sky diving isn't something new, but (1- COURAGE)cameraman jumping out of planes with all the necessary (2- EQUIP).....to film a sky-diver, is. The cameramen are not of course totally (3- EXPERIENCE)....., as they go through a (4- TRAIN).....programme. After a lot of (5- THINK).....and careful planning this amazing idea was put into practice so that judges could observe the sky-divers' (6- SKILL).....manoeuvres from the ground. Then they judge them accordingly in (7- COMPETE).....at a (8- HIGH).....of over 10,000 feet! The pictures are shown on huge screens on the ground for the judges. Crowds gather and look on with (9- CURIOUS)..... and (10- AMAZE).....at seeing such a dangerous sport in action.

Exercise 13

Las Vegas has a new (1- ATTRACT).....; the tallest American building west of the Mississippi. Its owners have high (2- EXPECT).....of its success. The design is (3- ORIGIN) and certainly (4- DIFFER).....to anything ever seen before. Taller than the Eiffel Tower, the building has something for everyone. The (5- DESCRIBE)of what the building offers is quite amazing. The building has a casino, for which the state is famous for. Also, there is a (6- FASHION).....decorated revolving restaurant, so that clients are able to see the (7- IMPRESS) views through the glass windows. Three chapels are available for anyone who would like to get married and have a (8- RELIGION).....ceremony, 800 feet in the air. In (9- ADD)....., two of the highest rides are available for ride lovers. The roller-coaster, 865 tracks in (10- LONG)....., and the Space Shot ride, which goes up to the top of the tower at approximately 90 km per hour, are not for the faint hearted.

Exercise 14

The (1- DISCOVER).....that a member of your family is sleepwalking may be (2- ALARM)....., but it is not an uncommon phenomenon. Both adults and children sleepwalk, however it is more common in children. Sleepwalking is not a psychological (3- ORDER)....., as some may think. Nor is there any (4-CONNECT).....between dreams and sleepwalking. The explanation which experts give for sleepwalking is that it is mainly due to being (5-TIRE).....and under a lot of stress. (6-ANXIOUS)....., (7- PRESS).....at work or at school or even the loss of a favourite (8- POSSESS).....could trigger it off. Sleepwalkers move easily around the house despite the (9- DARK), sometimes opening drawers as if searching for something. It is difficult to wake up a sleepwalker and it is considered (10- WISE).....because it can cause great distress. The following morning the sleepwalker doesn't usually remember anything.

Exercise 15

The lion is known as the king of the jungle. Perhaps this is because of its size, (1- STRONG)..... and (2- ABLE).....to run up to 35mph. Yet, for twenty hours a day the lion just lies under the sun

doing nothing. However, when it gets (3- HUNGER)....., its manner changes and it becomes (4- THREAT).....Its only (5-INTEND).....is to satisfy its enormous appetite. In its natural (6- SURROUND).....the lion will eat anything, from rats to animals as large as giraffes. But zebra meat provides the lion with the greatest (7- SATISFY) Lions live in groups called prides. The lioness is (8- TRUE).....amazing. She is quicker than the male. She is so (9-CARE).....that she will hunt and look after her young for two years before they become (10- DEPEND).....

Exercise 16

People are becoming more security conscious these days. Crimes like burglary and (1- THIEF)..... are definitely on the increase. One of the most (2- PAIN).....experiences a home (3- OWN)..... can have is to arrive home and find that his or her (4- VALUE).....have disappeared, because a window had (5- ACCIDENT).....been left open. What can we do to protect ourselves?

The most important piece of (6- ADVISE).....is to make sure that your (7-INSURE)..... coverage is up to date. Another (8- SENSE).....thing to do is to go along to your local police station, where they will be more than willing to make (9- SUGGEST).....on (10- RELY)..... ways of safeguarding your property.

Exercise 17

It is thought that some people are just born (1 - LUCK)..... They seem to have everything, from the perfect family to the best (2- EMPLOY).....at the most successful company in town. Their good fortune causes (3- JEALOUS).....in less fortunate people, who do all sorts of things to bring luck into their lives. Some people carry good luck charms, such as blue stones and horseshoes, on a (4- DAY).....basis, to make sure that they will stay (5- HEALTH) safe and free from (6-INJURE)..... Also, some otherwise (7- LOGIC).....people go through superstitious actions like touching wood in order to bring themselves good luck. But is there really any (8- RELATE).....between all these things and success in life? Many people consider good luck charms (9- FOOL).....and (10- REASON)..... They believe that success in life comes through working hard.

Exercise 18

Lots of people read their horoscope for an insight into their character and for the (1- PREDICT)..... which are made. Graphologists claim that they too are able to understand a person's character - by examining their handwriting! How big the letters, how straight the lines, the presence of loops and even your (2- SIGN).....can reveal something about your (3- PERSON)..... For example, if your handwriting slants to the right, you have a (4- CHEER).....nature. Writing with upward arches indicates that you are (5- CREATE)..... A high t-bar means that the writer is (6- IMAGINE)and (7- AMBITION).....But there is much more. (8- APPARENT)..... there are about two-hundred and fifty signs which graphologists take into (9- CONSIDER)..... when analysing a person's writing. How accurate or how (10- BELIEVE).....this is, is up to the individual to decide.

Exercise 19

What will homes be like by the year 2050? What (1- IMPROVE).....will there be in the general standard of living? Forget about entering the house with a key. (2- ADMIT).....will only be possible with a (3- PERSON).....card. It will be no (4-IMPOR TANT).....if you leave lights or heaters on when you go out. They will be (5- AUTOMATIC).....switched off. The

(6- SAFE)..... of your house will not be a problem. (7- PROTECT).....againsts fire and intruders will be guaranteed. Doing the shopping, going to the bank, talking and seeing people on the other side of the world without leaving home will all be possible due to the (8- EXIST).....of 21st century technology. Each home will have a (9- CENTRE).....computer controlling all sorts of (10- PRACTICE).....devices that will make life easier and more comfortable.

Exercise 20

At times, it seems that people have no sense of (1- RESPONSE).....towards their environment. They have the (2- TEND).....to (3- CARE).....drop their rubbish wherever they happen to be, even when there is no (4- SHORT).....of rubbish bins. However, this must change. Littering doesn't only make a place look ugly, it also puts public health at risk and can (5- DANGER)wildlife. The authorities need to become more (6- INFORM).....about how pollution affects our everyday lives, providing the community with a better (7- EDUCATE) concerning the preservation of the environment. There is no quick or simple solution. One thing is certain, though. (8- FAIL).....to act now with the long term means a great (9- LOSE)..... The (10- CHOOSE).....is ours.

PHẦN 2: CONFUSING WORDS (CÁC TỪ HAY GÂY SỰ NHẦM LÃN)

1. RENT, HIRE, LET

RENT: trả tiền thường xuyên cho người chủ để sử dụng cái gì đó trong một thời gian dài. (danh từ: số tiền trả để sử dụng một ngôi nhà)

HIRE: (1) trả tiền cho người chủ của một cái gì đó để dùng nó trong một khoảng thời gian ngắn (2) thuê ai đó làm một công việc đặc biệt cho bạn

LET: (1) cho phép ai đó thuê tài sản (nhà cửa..) của bạn để đổi lấy tiền hàng tuần hoặc hàng tháng (2) cho phép ai làm gì

Exercise 1: Choose rent, hire, let to fill in each gap.

1. My parents never.....their country house.
2. When she moved to the city, she.....a bungalow to live.
3. The school.....a teacher to help the slow learners.
4. They.....a dozen men to dig a ditch.
5. Interhome has over 20,000 houses to.....across Europe.
6. Nick's been.....for five years now, and he can't afford to buy.
7. Why don't we.....a boat for the afternoon?
8. I'll have to.....a suit for the wedding.
9. I can.....you have a copy of the report.
10. I've.....my spare room to a Japanese student.

2. JOB, OCCUPATION, PROFESSION, WORK, BUSINESS, DUTY, TASK

JOB: công việc một người làm để được trả lương

OCCUPATION: nghề nghiệp, việc làm, trang trọng hơn JOB và có thể không mang lại thu nhập đều đặn

PROFESSION: nghề đòi hỏi giáo dục cao và có đào tạo chuyên ngành

WORK: (1) nhiệm vụ cụ thể mà ai đó phải làm trong công việc của họ; (2) nơi một người làm công việc của họ

BUSINESS: (1) công việc có liên quan đến sản xuất, mua bán hàng hoá, thương mại; (2) tổ chức (công ty, hãng, cửa hàng) thực hiện một công việc như vậy

DUTY: nhiệm vụ ai đó làm vì trách nhiệm, bổn phận

TASK: thường là một nhiệm vụ ngắn hạn và đòi hỏi phải cố gắng, và có thể là một phần trong một dự án lớn hơn

Exercise 2: Fill in each gap with only one word from the list (job, occupation, profession, work, business, duty, task)

1. Don't interrupt me now. I've got a lot of.....to do.
2. When he applied for the loan, they asked him what his.....was.
3. Julie found a good.....close to where she lives.
4. One of my.....as a nurse is to be on time because lives depend on it.
5. Our teacher gave us a few.....to do during the summer holiday.
6. I know I want to have a.....but I'm not sure in which field. I might study law.
7. My aunt runs her own.....
8. Please state your name, address and.....
9. He was given the.....of stacking the chairs in the auditorium.

10. I need a part-time.....

3. RESULT, EFFECT, CONSEQUENCE, SOLUTION

RESULT: kết quả của một hoạt động hoặc một tình huống.

EFFECT (of sth on sth else): sự thay đổi mà một cái gì đó gây ra cho một cái khác

CONSEQUENCE: kết quả, hậu quả của một cái gì đó (thường là không tốt)

SOLUTION: câu trả lời cho một bài toán, câu đố, giải pháp cho một vấn đề

Exercise 3: Fill in each gap with only one word from the list (result, effect, consequence, solution)

1. Finding the.....to this maths problem is very difficult.
2. Pollution has a very harmful.....on our health.
3. If you don't take our advice, you'll have to face the.....
4. Did you get your exam.....?
5. The election.....were announced at midnight.
6. High unemployment is a direct.....of the recession.
7. Inflation is having a disastrous.....on the economy.
8. He broke the law, and now he must face the.....of his actions.
9. Do you understand the harmful.....of smoking?
10. The safety procedures had been ignored, with potentially tragic

4. TRAVEL, TRIP, TOUR, VOYAGE, CRUISE, FLIGHT, JOURNEY, ROUTE

TRAVEL: chuyến đi từ một nơi này sang nơi khác khá dài, nhất là ra nước ngoài để vui chơi hoặc vì lợi ích; hành động du hành, du lịch

TRIP: hành trình ngắn đến một nơi và trở về lại điểm xuất phát

TOUR: chuyến đi du lịch (ngắn hoặc dài) thăm nhiều nơi

VOYAGE: chuyến đi dài trên biển hoặc trong không gian

CRUISE: chuyến du ngoạn trên một con thuyền

FLIGHT: chuyến đi bằng máy bay

JOURNEY: chuyến đi từ một địa điểm này đến một địa điểm khác

ROUTE: tuyến đường, lộ trình, đường đi

Exercise 4: Fill in each gap with only one word from the list (travel, trip, tour, voyage, cruise, flight, journey, route)

1. Our business.....to Brussels was productive and very pleasant.
2. What's the quickest.....from your house to the city centre?
3. As soon as they arrived, they went on a.....of the city.
4. At the airport they told us that the.....to Rome had been cancelled.
5. Instead of going to an island, we decided to go on a luxury.....around the Mediterranean.
6. People say that the safest and quickest way to.....is by aeroplane.
7. The.....from Athens to Salokina by car takes around five hours.
8. The old captain had spent his life making.....to the Far East.
9. I couldn't carry everything at once, so I had to make several.....
10. I have a 25-minute.....to work.

5. DEBT, LOAN, ALLOWANCE, DONATION, FINE, CHARGE, TIP, CHANGE, CURRENCY, PROFIT, INCOME

DEBT: khoản tiền mà bạn nợ ngân hàng hoặc một người nào đó

LOAN: số tiền bạn vay (thường là vay ngân hàng)

ALLOWANCE: tiền bạn được trợ cấp thường xuyên, đều đặn

DONATION: tiền đóng góp cho một tổ chức từ thiện

FINE: tiền phạt phải trả vì đã làm gì sai hoặc phạm luật

CHANGE: (1) tiền lẻ, tiền xu (2) tiền thối lại khi bạn mua cái gì

TIP: tiền thưởng cho một người (lái xe, phục vụ khách sạn, nhà hàng..) để cảm ơn họ đã phục vụ mình

CHARGE: số tiền phải trả cho một dịch vụ hoặc để mua cái gì đó

CURRENCY: loại tiền sử dụng ở một quốc gia, tiền tệ

PROFIT: tiền lãi, tiền lời

INCOME: thu nhập, số tiền ai đó kiếm được

Exercise 5: Fill in each gap with only one word from the list (debt, loan, allowance, donation, fine, charge, tip, change, currency, profit, income)

1. The magistrate imposed a £ 100.....on the man for throwing litter on the street.
2. The.....Sandra earns allows her to live very comfortably.
3. I like to make.....to worthwhile causes.
4. Do you make a large.....out of the jewellery you sell?
5. If I don't get good service in a restaurant, I never leave a.....
6. Come back sir! You forgot your.....
7. My parents give me a weekly.....and I can spend it however I like.
8. The Jones took out a.....to buy a new car.
9. There's no extra.....for delivery.
10. What.....is used in Australia?
11. The national.....is always increasing and as a result the cost of living rises.

6. CREW, STAFF, TEAM, EMPLOYEE, COLLEAGUE, CLIENT, CUSTOMER

CREW: những người cùng làm việc trên một con thuyền hoặc tàu, thủy thủ đoàn, phi hành đoàn

STAFF: những người làm việc cho một công ty hoặc tổ chức: nhân viên của một công ty

TEAM: nhóm người làm việc cùng nhau hoặc cùng chơi một môn thể thao nào đó

EMPLOYEE: người được trả lương để làm việc cho một cá nhân hoặc tổ chức

COLLEAGUE: người cùng làm việc; đồng nghiệp

CLIENT: người nhận sự giúp đỡ hoặc lời khuyên của một người làm nghề chuyên môn (như luật sư, kế toán, kiến trúc sư..); khách hàng

CUSTOMER: người mua một hàng hoá hoặc dịch vụ, đặc biệt là ở một cửa hàng

Exercise 6: Fill in each gap with only one word from the list (CREW, STAFF, TEAM, EMPLOYEE, COLLEAGUE, CLIENT)

1. The hospital.....are on strike today.
2. I work for a law firm which has a lot of business people as.....
3. My.....played well but we lost the game.
4. How many.....does he need to sail his yacht?
5. There weren't many people on the plane; just the ten of us and the.....
6. Whenever I need help at work, I can always rely on my.....
7. Employers often complain that they can't find reliable.....
8. There are nine players on a baseball.....
9. These planes carry over 300 passengers and

10. He is the best.....of our company.

7. GUEST, HOST, VISITOR

GUEST: (1) người đến thăm ai hoặc có mặt tại một sự kiện vì được mời (2) khách trọ tại khách sạn

HOST: chủ nhà, người tiếp đón khách mời

VISITOR: người đến thăm một nơi nào đó hoặc một người khác

CUSTOMER: người khách mua hàng của một cửa hàng

Exercise 7: Choose one suitable word above to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. All.....entering the factory must wear this card.
2. He is one of the best.....of our shop.
3. We had.....staying with us for ten days.
4. Our.....provided us with a delicious meal.
5. The.....complained about the bad service to the manager.
6. I always buy my groceries from this shop. I am a regular.....here, so I expect good service.
7. I'd like you to be my.....for dinner tonight.
8. They were expecting.....and had cleaned the house.
9. Our.....brought in some more wine and food.
10. The hotel takes very good care of its.....

8. HABIT, ROUTINE, USUAL, NORMAL, COMMON

HABIT: điều ai đó làm thường xuyên, thói quen

ROUTINE: một chuỗi những hoạt động ai đó làm thường xuyên vào những thời điểm nhất định

USUAL: xảy ra hoặc được làm, được dùng. . . trong nhiều hoặc đa số trường hợp, thông thường, thường xuyên

NORMAL: bình thường, thông thường, tức là không có gì khác biệt hoặc không bình thường

COMMON: phổ biến, thường thấy ở nhiều nơi

Exercise 8: Choose one suitable word above to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. When I'm nervous, I'm in the.....of biting my nails.
2. Parts of our daily.....include a jog before breakfast.
3. Hann is a very.....German name.
4. Despite his ability, he leads a.....life.
5. Waiter, I'll have my.....drink.
6. Bad dreams are fairly.....among children.
7. He seems a perfectly.....little boy.
8. Train services are back to.....again after the strike.
9. Mark longed to escape from the old familiar.....
10. I'll meet you at the.....time.

9. SEE, LOOK, WATCH

SEE: 1. nhìn thấy một cái gì một cách không chủ định, ví dụ "*I opened the curtains and saw some birds outside*" - Tôi kéo rèm cửa sổ và (trông) thấy mấy con chim ở bên ngoài. Như vậy có nghĩa là chúng ta không chủ định nhìn/xem/ngắm những con chim đó, mà chỉ là do mở cửa thì trông thấy chúng. 2. hiểu, ví dụ: *I see what you mean*.

LOOK: nhìn cái gì một cách có chủ định ví dụ: "*This morning I looked at the newspaper*" - Sáng nay tôi xem báo, và có nghĩa là tôi chủ định đọc báo, xem báo

WATCH: theo dõi, xem, tức là chủ động nhìn cái gì một cách chăm chú và quan sát xem có cái gì đang xảy ra, ví dụ "*I watched the bus go through the traffic lights*" - Tôi nhìn theo/theo dõi chiếc xe buýt vượt đèn đỏ, hay "*I watch the movie*" - Tôi xem phim. Và ở đây diễn ra ý chúng ta chủ định muốn nhìn, xem, theo dõi, và nhìn một cách chăm chú. Thông thường là có sự chuyển động trong đó.

Exercise 9: Choose one suitable word above to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. You can't.....far in this fog.
2. Denny and Phil.....good tonight.
3. Did you.....*Coronation Street* yesterday evening?
- 4.....out for pickpockets.
5. Can you.....the blue car on the left?
- 6.....you tomorrow, if nothing comes in between.
7. It.....like rain, doesn't it?
8. Oh yes, I.....what you mean.
9. Hey, what's wrong? You really.....unhappy.
10. I'm afraid, Linda has to.....doctor.

10. MAKE. DO

DO: chỉ các hoạt động hàng ngày nhưng những hoạt động này thường là không tạo nên vật gì cụ thể, không sáng tạo nên cái mới.

- Một số cách nói phổ biến dùng "do":

E. g: do one's best / do good / do harm / do a favour / do business

MAKE: diễn tả các hoạt động tạo nên cái gì đó cụ thể mà bạn có thể chạm vào được.

E. g: make food / make a cup of tea / coffee or make a mess

- Một số cách nói phổ biến dùng "make":

E. g: make plans / make an exception / make arrangements / make a telephone call make a decision / make a mistake / make noise / make money / make an excuse make an effort.

Exercise 10: Fill in the gap with MAKE or DO.

1. I'm going to.....a cake for Tom's birthday.
2. They are going to.....the shopping
3. Tonight you have to.....the beds
4. She always.....fun of her friends.
5. The teacher asked us to.....this exercise.
6. They're.....a documentary about the Civil War.
7. Who.....those marks on the wall?
8. The decision.....her very unpopular with the staff.
9. Mary spends ages.....her hair in the morning.
10. Jane.....aerobics three times a week.

11. LIFE, LIVE, LIVES

LIVE /lɪv/ (v) sống *Call you live on £1000 a month in London?*

LIFE (n) cuộc sống, ví dụ: He wanted to live his own life without the interference from the others.

LIVE /laɪv/ (adj) trực tiếp a live programme một chương trình truyền trực tiếp (adv) trực tiếp *We will be broadcasting the program live from Austin.*

LIVES /lɪvz/ (v) sống (ngôi thứ 3 số ít thì hiện tại đơn) *He lives in New York.*

LIVES /laɪvz/ (n) số nhiều của life *Many people lost their lives in the war.*

Exercise 11: Choose one suitable word above to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. Angela.....in Argentina.
2. You must go to the.....concert of Robbie Williams.
3. Peter still.....with his parents.
4. There is no.....on the sun.
5. Do you still.....in this small house?
6. This is a.....recording.
- 7.....is short.
8. The body showed no signs of.....
9. He's lived here all his.....
10. Three.....were lost in the fire.

12. BRING, TAKE, FETCH

BRING: mang cái gì tới vị trí mà người nói/ nghe đang ở đó (nơi đến), ví dụ "*Bring your homework to me*" (Hãy mang bài tập về nhà của các em đến chỗ tôi)

TAKE: mang cái gì đi khỏi vị trí người nói / người nghe, ví dụ: *They're not here. Hit must have taken them to the club. He's taken my umbrella too.* (Chúng không có ở đây. Chắc chắn anh ta đưa chúng đến câu lạc bộ rồi. Anh ta cũng mang ô của tôi đi nữa).

FETCH: đi tìm và mang về, ví dụ: Don't worry. You need some wooden rods, don't you? I'll fetch them.

Exercise 12: Fill in each blank with only one word from: BRING, TAKE, FETCH.

1.this book to the library, please.
2. Could you.....me some water, please?
3. He often.....his sister to her aunt.
4. When you come to my party, don't forget to.....something to drink.
5. Is Peter.....Steve to my party?
6. He is.....out the rubbish now.
7. Can you.....the CD to your uncle, please?
8. My husband often.....flowers when he comes home.
9. Would you.....this to the shop for me?
10. Can you.....the car to the garage on Wednesday?
11. They live in an isolated village so they have to.....water to drink from the mountain.
12. We need some waste cans. Can you.....some for us now?

13. COME, GO

COME: một chuyển động đến nơi mà người nói hoặc người nghe ở đó, ví dụ: "*Could you come here for a minute, please. Diane?*" (Cậu đến đây một lát đi Diane).

~ "*I'm coming*". (Mình đến đây).

GO: để chỉ một chuyển động rời xa vị trí, địa điểm mà người nói hoặc người nghe đang ở đó: *Are you going to the pub tonight?* (Tối nay anh có tới quán rượu không?)

COME WITH or GO WITH?

Khi chúng ta muốn nói đến việc tham gia một chuyển động cùng với người nói và người nghe thì người ta thường sử dụng *come with* (đi cùng) chứ không dùng *go with*, kể cả khi đó là chuyển động rời khỏi vị trí mà họ đang ở đó:

I'm going to the hospital this afternoon to get the test results. Could you come with me? (Chiều nay tôi định đến bệnh viện để lấy kết quả xét nghiệm. Bạn có đi cùng tôi không?)

Exercise 13: Choose COME or GO to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. Let's.....and see Auntie Mary before the holiday is over.
2. They've.....to live in Australia and I don't think they'll ever.....back.
3. We've.....to ask you if we can borrow your car for a week.
4. I've got some people.....for a meal tonight. Can you and Henry.....too?
5. Let's.....and see Auntie Mary before the holiday is over.
6. When did you.....here?
7. She did not want to.....to school today.
8. Stay at home, I will.....to see you tomorrow.
9. We will.....to England next month.
10. We're.....to Egypt for a week at Christmas. Would you like to.....with us?

14. BORROW, LEND

BORROW: mượn cái gì của ai, ví dụ *"I'd like to borrow your umbrella "* (Tôi muốn mượn cái ô của anh)

LEND: cho ai mượn cái gì thuộc sở hữu của mình, ví dụ *"I can lend you my umbrella. "* (Tôi có thể cho anh mượn chiếc ô của tôi)

Exercise 14: Choose BORROW or LEND to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. Could you.....me some money, please?
2. Some pupils can.....books from their school.
3. Will you.....me your umbrella till tomorrow?
4. Should I.....him my football?
5. You may.....my bike, but be careful.
6. Could I.....your cup?
7. You can.....your book to Steve.
8. Why do students.....so much money from their parents?
9. Peter won't.....his car to anyone.
10. Will your mother.....you some money?

15. BIG, GREAT, TALL, HIGH

BIG: lớn về kích cỡ, mức độ, ví dụ *a big stone* một hòn đá to

GREAT: lớn hơn trung bình rất nhiều, ví dụ *a great success* một thành công vĩ đại

HIGH: khoảng cách từ đáy lên đỉnh; ví dụ *a high mountain range* một dãy núi cao.

LARGE: lớn về kích cỡ và số lượng, ví dụ: *a large country* một đất nước rộng lớn, *a large number of people* rất nhiều người

TALL: cao hơn chiều cao trung bình, ví dụ: *a tall man* một người đàn ông cao lớn

Lưu ý: Chúng ta dùng *high* hoặc *tall* khi nói về các tòa nhà, và dùng *tall* khi nói về người.

Exercise 15: Choose BIG, GREAT, TALL or HIGH to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. There is a nice house with a.....garden.
2. Albert Einstein was a.....physicist.
3. She is a very.....child for her age.
4. A.....rate of inflation makes exports uncompetitive.

5. My mother is six feet.....
6. He is making a.....mistake.
7. Can you see the.....trees behind the lake?
8. The city has a.....level of pollution.
9. This pullover isn't.....enough.
10. My grandfather lived to a.....age.

16. RISE, RAISE, ARISE

RISE (rose, risen, rising) trở nên cao hơn (nội động từ, không có tân ngữ đi kèm), ví dụ: The sun rises in the east. Mặt trời mọc ở phía đông.

RAISE (raised, raised, raising) làm cho. . . cao lên, nuôi nấng dạy dỗ (trẻ con), nuôi (con vật), ví dụ: All those in favour please raise your hands, (tất cả những ai ủng hộ hãy giơ tay lên)

ARISE (arose, arisen, arising) xảy ra, nảy sinh, xuất hiện; ví dụ: Some problems have arisen recently. Gần đây một số vấn đề mới nảy sinh.

Exercise 16: Choose RISE, RAISE or ARISE to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. The governments are.....VAT (value added tax) to 20% next year.
2. An unexpected problem has.....and so we have had to cancel the meeting.
3. Suddenly the mist that had hidden the canyon.....and we had a most spectacular view.
4. Prices have.....again due to the recent increase in inflation.
5. Are there any matters.....from the minutes (written record) of the last meeting?
6. My parents are farmers and.....chickens and pigs.
7. I was born and.....on a farm, so I know all about animals.
8. She.....from her chair and went over to the window.
9. I would love to work in Africa should the opportunity
10. University entry requirements have.....sharply over the last decade.

17. SAY, TELL, SPEAK, TALK

SAY (sth to sb) (1) nói cái gì với ai thành lời; thường dùng để tường thuật lại lời nói (không có tân ngữ chỉ người đi cùng, ví dụ: He said that he lived in London.) (2) say hello, say goodbye

TELL: (1) dùng với một bổ ngữ trực tiếp chỉ người (*He told me that he lived in London*) để tường thuật lại lời nói; (2) tell sb + động từ nguyên thể được dùng cho các mệnh lệnh (*She told him to hurry up*);

SPEAK: (1) nói chuyện *I'd like to speak to Mrs. Jones, please?* (trọng trọng hơn TALK) (2) nói một ngôn ngữ nào đó *speak English, Vietnamese*

TALK: (1) nói chuyện *Can I talk to Susan. please?*

TALK gợi nên ý là hai người đang nói chuyện với nhau: *We talked for hours about the meaning of life*, còn SPEAK thường hay dùng về một người nói chuyện với một nhóm người *He spoke to the class about the dangers of smoking.*

Exercise 17: Choose SAY, TELL, SPEAK or TALK to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. He.....French well but has trouble reading it.
2. We.....Helen everything that had happened.
3. Susan decided to.....to her father about it.
4. What exactly did he.....to you yesterday?
5. Can you.....me the way to the station, please?

6. He didn't.....a word.
7. She.....her name was Sue.
8. Let me.....you something about my hobbies.
9. Forget everything I just.....
10. Why didn't you.....him that before?

18. WAIT, LOOK FORWARD TO, EXPECT

WAIT: (for sb/sth) hành động chờ đợi ai hoặc điều gì I'm waiting for him to arrive (Tôi đang chờ anh ta đến)

LOOK FORWARD TO: dự tính điều gì đó sẽ xảy ra và nóng lòng mong chờ điều đó

EXPECT: tin tưởng rằng điều gì đó sẽ xảy ra, mong chờ, trông đợi I'm expecting him to arrive soon. (Tôi chắc rằng anh ấy sẽ đến)

Exercise 18: Choose WAIT, LOOK FORWARD TO, EXPECT to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. What time do you.....the guests to arrive?
2. I'm.....visiting Japan.
3. Can you.....for me, John?
4. Have you been.....long?
5. You can't.....to learn a language in a week.
6. We are.....for the rain to stop.
7. We're so much.....seeing you again.
8. You'll have to.....till the end of the month before I can pay you.
9. I'm sorry to have kept you.....
10. I.....that I will be back on Sunday.

19. MATCH, SUIT, FIT

MATCH: hợp, tương xứng, nhất là về màu sắc: The curtains and the carpets match perfectly Rèm và thảm hết sức hợp nhau.

SUIT: phù hợp về thị hiếu, sở thích, kiểu tóc, quần áo với ai: Does this skirt suit me? Cái váy này có hợp với tôi không?

FIT: vừa vặn, đúng kích cỡ, ăn khớp Her coat fits her exactly. Chiếc áo khoác rất vừa vặn với cô ấy.

Exercise 19: Choose MATCH, SUIT or FIT to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. These brown gloves.....with this dress very well.
2. You look nice in green. Green.....you.
3. These shoes are too small. They don't.....me.
4. The key doesn't.....the lock.
5. It doesn't.....you to have your hair cut short.
6. Can you.....this wallpaper?
7. That color doesn't.....your age.
8. Very spicy food doesn't.....my stomach.
9. I can never get clothes to.....me.
10. A pink shirt does not.....a brown pair of trousers.

20. ALONE, LONELY, SINGLE, ONLY

ALONE: một mình *Mr. Jones came to the party alone as his wife was away on business.* Ông Jones đến dự tiệc một mình vì vợ ông đang đi công tác.

LONELY: buồn bã cô độc *I get really lonely at Christinas because all my family live abroad.* Vào dịp lễ Giáng sinh tôi thực sự thấy buồn vì cả nhà tôi sống ở nước ngoài.

SINGLE: độc thân, chưa lập gia đình *All my friends are married except Kate, who is still single.* Tất cả bạn bè tôi đều đã lập gia đình, trừ Kate, cho đến nay vẫn còn độc thân.

ONLY: duy nhất, chỉ có *Our only hope is to win tomorrow's match.* Hi vọng duy nhất của chúng tôi là thắng trong trận đấu ngày mai.

Exercise 20: Choose ALONE, LONELY, SINGLE, ONLY to fill in each blank to complete the following sentences.

1. The.....thing I do not understand in mathematics is geometry.
2. After Bob's parents' death he feels.....
3. Do not worry! He can do this work.....!
4. Tom does not know anyone in the town. He feels.....
5. The accused did not say a.....word during the lawsuit.
6. The teacher was.....in the classroom before the pupils came.
7. Do not go out at night.....
8. Some players feel sometimes.....in their new team.
9. Their.....child died in yesterday's accident.
10. It is not wise to live in a house.....

Chuyên đề 3: COMMUNICATIVE LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

(CHỨC NĂNG GIAO TIẾP CỦA NGÔN NGỮ)

MỘT SỐ MẪU CÂU TRONG GIAO TIẾP CẦN CHÚ Ý

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

*** Introduction and response to introduction**

Introduction

- I'd like you to meet my friend, Lan.
- May I introduce myself?
- Can you introduce yourself?
- My name is Lan. It's nice to meet you!
- How do you do! I'm Lan.
- Come and meet Miss Lan.

*** Saying and response to a goodbye**

Saying goodbye

- Goodbye! See you soon (again).
- Bye bye! Let's get together soon. / Give me a call soon. / Give me a call/ a ring sometime!
- Look at the time! I've really got to go.
- I've enjoyed seeing/meeting you. I hope to see again. Bye bye!

*** Making and respond to suggestions**

Suggestions

- Why don't you / we go to the movies tonight?
- You / we could visit New York while you're / we're there.
- Let's go to the cinema, tonight.
- What about asking your brother for help?
- How about going to Hawaii for your vacation?
- I suggest you / we go out for lunch.

*** Invitation and response to invitation**

Invitations

- I would like/love to invite you to my birthday party.
- Would you like / care to come to my birthday party?
- I was wondering if you'd like to join us for a picnic.
- Can / Will you come to my birthday party?
- What / How about coming to my birthday party?
- Why don't/ not you come.....

*** Asking and response to favors**

Asking for favors

- Can/ Could you help me, please?

Responses to introduction

- It's nice/ pleased to meet you! I'm Nam.
- Nice to meet you! I'm Nam.
- I'm happy to meet you!
- How do you do!
- It's a pleasure to meet you.
- The pleasure is all mine, Miss Lan.

Responses to a goodbye

- Goodbye! See you around. / See you later. / Keep in touch! / Let's have lunch/dinner/coffee soon.
- I hope we meet again.
- Stop by and see me sometime!
- Farewell!
- Take care.
- Have a good/nice day (week)

Responses to suggestions

Acceptances:

- Sure!/ Great! Super! That is a good idea!
- Yes/ Ok. I'd love to/ (That) sounds great? fun.

Declines:

- Thank you very much but I'm afraid....
- I wish I could but....

Responses to invitations

Acceptances:

- Thank you very much for your invitation
- I'd love to/ I'd be delighted to....
- Sure!/ Great! That would be fun/ wonderful.

Declines:

- Thank you very much but I'm afraid I'm busy then.
- I wish I could but I'm busy. May be another time. Thanks/ thanks anyways. / What about next Saturday,....

Responses to favors

Acceptances:

- Sure. / Certainly. / Of course. / No problem.
- What can I do for you?
- How can I help you?

- Could you do me a favor?
- I need a favor.
- Can/ Could you do st for me?

*** Giving offers and response to offers**

Offering assistance/ Offers

- May I help you?
- Do you need any help?
- Let me help you.

Offers

- Would you like me to close the door?
- What can I get for you? I Can I get you. . . ?
- Shall I...
- Will / Won't you have a cup of tea. I'll make for you?

*** Making and response to promises**

Promises

- I'll study hard. I promise.
- I promise I will/ won't...
- I promise to study hard.

Declines:

- I'm sorry. I'm really busy.

Response to assistance

Acceptances:

- Yes/ No. Thank you.
- Yes. That's very kind of you.
- No. Thank you. I'm fine.

Response to offers

- Yes, please.
- That would be nice.
- No, thank you.

Response to promises

- I hope so.
- Good.
- I'm glad I Don't forget.

*** Expressing thanks and response to thanks**

Thanks

- Thank you very much for...
- Thank you very much for your help/ helping me!

- Oh. It was the least I could do.
- Think nothing of it.
- It was nothing.
- My pleasure.
- Don't mention it.
- Not at all.
- Don't mention it

Responses to thanks

- It was my pleasure (Formal)
- You're welcome. (Formal)
- You're very welcome. (Formal)
- You're more than welcome. (Any time. /No big deal. (Informal)
- My pleasure

*** Making requests and response to requests**

Requests

- Do/ Would you mind *closing* the door?
- Do you mind if I *close* the door?
- Would you mind if I *closed* the door?
- No, I don't mind.
- No, of course not.
- Not at all.
- Please do.
- Please go ahead.

Responses to requests

- I'm sorry, I can't.
- I'm sorry, that is not possible.
- I'd prefer you didn't.
- I'd rather you didn't.

*** Making compliments and response to compliments**

Making compliments

- Congratulation!
- Congratulation on your first prize!

Responses to compliments

- You are too kind.
- It's very nice of you to say so.

- I love your new hairstyle.
- Your new hairstyle is very wonderful.
- * **Making and response to an apology**

Making an apology

- I'm awfully/ terribly/ very sorry about breaking your ruler.
- I'm awfully/ terribly/ very sorry that...
- I beg your pardon for...
- Pardon me for
- I hope you'll forgive me for...

- Thank you for your compliment.
- Thank you. I'm glad you like/ enjoy it.
- You must be kidding/ You have got to be kidding. I thought I was terrible (*refusing*)

Responses to an apology

- That's (quite) all right!
- Think nothing of it.
- Don't worry about it.
- That's ok.
- Forget It.
- No big thing/ No harm done/ No problem.
- It's alright.
- It's fine.
- It's OK this time, but let's not let it happen again.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best response (A, B, C or D) to each of the following.

1 Nam: Thank you for your gift, Jenny.

Long:

- A. I'm sorry.
- B. Very glad.
- C. No, of course.
- D. I'm happy you like it

2. Nga: Would you like something to drink?

Mai:

- A. Yes, I do.
- B. No, thanks.
- C. I will.
- D. No, I would.

3. Nga: Thanks for the wonderful party.

Lan:

- A. No, it's not good.
- B. Yes, it's really great
- C. Oh, that's right.
- D. I'm glad you enjoyed it.

4. Mr. John: Could you bring me a cup of coffee?

Waiter:

- A. Certainly, sir
- B. Yes, I can
- C. I don't want to
- D. No, I can't

5. Mai: You look very nice in your new dress, Lan.

Lan:

- A. Thanks. It's very nice of you to say so.
- B. You can say that again
- C. I'd rather not.
- D. It's up to you.

6. Ha: Give my regards to your parents.

Hoa:

- A. Good idea, thanks.
- B. It's my pleasure.
- C. You're welcome.
- D. Thanks, I will.

7. Your close friend needs to get to the railway station as quickly as possible. You have a car. What do you say to him:

- A. Yes, I have. B. Uhm, how are you getting on?
C. No, let's not. D. No, I don't.
35. Long: I think we should use less paper so that we can save trees in the forests.
Mai:
A. Why not? B. Yes, I'd love to.
C. I totally agree with you. D. It's nice of you to say so.
36. Nam: But for your help, I couldn't have finished my essay on time. I highly appreciate it.
Judy:
A. With all my heart B. Never remind me
C. It's my pleasure D. Wish you
37. Hoa: Oh dear, I'm too hungry now. - Mai:
A. I'll bring you something to eat. B. Really?
C. Yes. Here It is. D. I see.
38. Lan:.....detective stories?
Hoa: In my opinion, they are very good for teenagers. They can sharpen our mind.
A. What do you think about B. Are you fond of
C. How about D. What do people feel about
39. Jenny:.....?
Tom: "He's tall and thin with blue eyes."
A. How is Jack getting B. What is Jack like
C. What does Jack look like D. How does Jack appear
40. Lan: "Today's my 16th birthday." ~ Long:
A. Many happy returns! B. I don't understand.
C. Take care! D. Have a good time!
41. Hao: Would you like beer or wine? ~ Ha:
A. Yes, I'd love to. B. I couldn't agree more.
C. No, I've no choice. D. I'd prefer beer, please.
42. Nam: Is it all right if I use your bike? - Nga:
A. Sure, go ahead. B. I don't care. C. I accept it. D. Oh, forget it.
43. Passer-by: Is there a post office near here?
Linh:
A. Yes, there is
B. Turn left and take the first street on the left. It's on the right.
C. No, really?
D. No, there isn't.
44. Hoa: Bye, bye! ~ Nga:
A. See you later. B. Meet you again.
C. Thank you. D. See you lately.
45. Nga: How do you do? - Hoa:
A. Yeah, OK. B. How do you do?
C. Not too bad. D. I'm well. Thank you.
46. Hoa: Can you do the cooking today? - Lan:
A. No, thank you. B. Oh, all right. C. Yes, please. D. I know that.

47. Nam: In my opinion, computer is the most wonderful invention.
Lan:
A. Yes. Congratulations! B. Pardon?
C. You shouldn't have said that. D. There's no doubt about it.
48. Pupil: May I go out for just a while? - Teacher:
A. Why so? B. That's great! C. Go ahead! D. Yes, you may.
49. Jack: Katie, I'd like you to meet a friend of mine. Her name is Anne.
Katie:
A. Why not? B. Yes, I'd love
C. I meet her, don't I. D. I'm happy to meet you, Anne.
50. An old laddy: I need your favor. ~ A young man:
A. Pardon? B. What can I do for you? C. What for? D. Really?
51. Mai: Let's get together soon. ~ Hoa:
A. Ok. B. Great. C. Keep in touch D. Why not?
52. Son: I'll study. I promise. ~ Mom:
A. Forget it. B. Don't forget it.
C. I hope so. D. A and B are correct.
53. Lan: Your hair style is wonderful. - Mai:
A. You're kidding. I thought it's terrible. B. Why so?
C. Really? D. Oh, no. Don't say so.
54. Hoa: I beg your pardon for breaking that flower vase. ~ Ha:
A. Never mind. B. No problem
C. All right. D. A, B and C are correct
55. Lan: I've passed my driving test. - Nam:
A. Do you? B. That's a good idea.
C. Congratulations! D. It's nice of you to say so.
56. Shop-keeper: Which hat do you like better? - Mai:
A. Which one do you like? B. Yes, I'd like it best.
C. No. I haven't tried any. D. The one I tried on first.
57. Hoa: I can't speak English well enough to apply for that job. - Mai:
A. Me either B. Me too C. Me also D. Me neither
58. Long: Our team has just won the last football match. - Hung:
A. Yes, it's our pleasure. B. Good idea. Thanks for the news.
C. Well-done! that's very surprising. D. Yes, I guess.
59. Hoa: I've enjoyed meeting you. - Nga:
A. Take care! B. I'd love. C. I'm happy. D. My pleasure
60. Nga: Would you mind if I closed the door. It's too cold outside.
Lan:
A. No, I don't like.
B. I'd rather you didn't. It's stuffy.
C. No, never mind.
D. Why not do it?

Chuyên đề 4: GRAMMAR (NGỮ PHÁP)

PHẦN 1: CÁC THÌ TRONG TIẾNG ANH - ENGLISH TENSES

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

1. The Simple Present (Thì hiện tại đơn giản)

• Cấu trúc: S + V (s/es) + (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng:

- Diễn tả một chân lý hay một sự thật hiển nhiên.

Eg. The Earth goes around the Sun.

- Diễn tả những thói quen, tập quán hay đặc tính tồn tại một thời gian dài ở hiện tại.

Eg. she usually reads newspapers before her bedtime.

- Diễn tả những sự việc xảy ra và đúng trong một thời gian dài ở hiện tại.

Eg. She works in a hospital.

• **Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì hiện tại đơn giản:** thì hiện tại thường được dùng với một số các phó từ chỉ thời gian như: *today, present day, nowadays every + thời gian...; everyday = daily; every week- weekly; every month = monthly; every year = yearly,...* ; *now and then; from time to time;,...* và với các phó từ chỉ tần suất (*always, usually, often, frequently, occasionally, sometimes, seldom, rarely, never*) hay một số cụm từ chỉ tần suất như (*once a day/twice a day/three times a day, ...*)

• **Ghi chú cách thêm 's, es' vào ngôi thứ 3 (ba) số ít (He, she, it)**

- Những động từ (Verbs) tận cùng bằng những chữ (s, x, z, ch, sh, o) thì phải thêm "es". (Eg: misses, mixes, washes, does, goes, ...)

- Những động từ (Verbs) tận cùng bằng "y" thì phải xét hai (2) trường hợp sau đây. Nếu trước y là nguyên âm (vowel) thì để nguyên 'y', chỉ thêm 's' (plays, pays). Nếu trước y là phụ âm (consonant) thì chuyển y thành i và thêm es (y → ies: carry → carries; bury → buries)

• **Cách phát âm: Với các ngôi thứ ba (3) số ít, đuôi "S" được đọc như sau:**

Cách đọc	Các động từ có âm kết thúc với đuôi
/iz/	ch, x, sh, s
/s/	f, p, k, t
/z/	Không thuộc hai loại trên

2. The Present Progressive (Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn)

• Cấu trúc: S + Be (am/ is/ are) + V-ing + (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng:

- Diễn tả một hành động, một sự việc đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói.

Eg. My mother is cooking now.)

- Diễn tả một sự thay đổi, và thường đi với các động từ 'get/ become/ turn' và theo sau các động từ này là cấp so sánh hơn.

Eg. Our examination is getting more and more difficult.

- Diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra xung quanh thời điểm nói

Eg. I am reading a novel but I haven't finished it yet.

- Diễn tả một kế hoạch tương lai được lên kế hoạch từ trước và sắp xảy ra.

Eg. She is going to Hanoi tomorrow.

Chú ý:

- Nếu sử dụng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn cho hành động tương lai thì người nói muốn nhấn mạnh rằng kế hoạch cho hành động đó đã có sự chuẩn bị, sắp xếp kỹ lưỡng.
 - Với các động từ chuyển động như: **come, go, arrive, return, leave**, . . . người Anh có khuynh hướng dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn cho hành động tương lai thay cho thì tương lai gần 'be going to'.
 - **Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn:** thì hiện tại tiếp diễn thường được dùng với một số các phó từ chỉ thời gian như: **now, right now, at this moment, at present** và thường được dùng sau các câu mệnh lệnh. (**Look!** She is crying. / **Keep silent!** She is sleeping.)
 - Cách thêm đuôi '-ing' vào sau động từ
 - Nếu động từ có 'e' câm ở cuối, ta bỏ 'e' đi rồi mới thêm ING:
give - giving / drink - drinking
 - Nếu động từ ở cuối có phụ âm, và trước phụ âm mà có một nguyên âm, ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm rồi mới thêm ING:
cut - cutting run - running
 - Nếu động từ có ie ở cuối, ta đổi ie thành Y rồi mới thêm ING
tie - tying die - dying lie - lying
 - Khi động từ một vần tận cùng một phụ âm (từ *h, w, x, y*), đi trước là một nguyên âm, ta gấp đôi phụ âm trước khi thêm 'ing'
stop - stopping get - getting
- Nhưng fix-fixing play- playing (vì động từ tận cùng bằng 'x, y'
greet- greeting (trước 't' là 2 nguyên âm)
working- working (tận cùng bằng 2 phụ âm)
- Quy luật này thường được áp dụng cho động từ 2 vần miễn là trọng âm nằm trên vần cuối cùng.
suffer - suffering (trọng âm rơi vào âm đầu)
- **Chú ý:** Các động từ trạng thái (stative verb) như: **know/ believe/ hear/ see/ smell/ wish/ understand/ hate/love/like/want/sound/have/need/appear/seem/taste/own** không được chia ở thể tiếp diễn (bất cứ thời nào) khi chúng là những động từ tĩnh diễn đạt trạng thái cảm giác của hoạt động tinh thần hoặc tính chất của sự vật, sự việc. Nhưng khi chúng quay sang hướng động từ hành động thì chúng lại được phép dùng ở thể tiếp diễn. Eg: He has a lot of books. # He is having dinner now. (Động từ hành động: ăn tối)/ I think they will come in time. # I'm thinking of my test tomorrow. (Động từ hành động: Đang nghĩ về)
 - **Chú ý:** Trạng từ năng diễn always đi với hiện tại tiếp diễn diễn tả sự phàn nàn về thói quen xấu/ về hành động gây ra sự bức dọc của ai đó
Eg: Teacher to her students: You are always making noise in the class.

3. The Present perfect (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành)

- Cấu trúc: S + have/has + p2 + (O)
- Cách sử dụng:
- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra ở một thời điểm không xác định trong quá khứ nhưng có kết quả lưu lại ở hiện tại.
Eg: I have watched this film three times. / She has been to many countries.
- Diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp diễn ở tương lai.
Eg. she has lived in Vinh city for 20 years.
- Diễn tả một sự việc sẽ hoàn thành ở tương lai và được dùng trong các mệnh đề sau các liên từ như: **if/ when/ before/ after/ until/ till/ as soon as...**
Eg. We'll go out after we have finished our work tomorrow evening.

• **Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì hiện tại hoàn thành:** Thì hiện tại hoàn thành thường được dùng với các phó từ chỉ thời gian như: **FOR** + khoảng thời gian (for three days, for ten minutes, for twenty years); **SINCE** + thời điểm bắt đầu (since 1982, since January, since we were ten/ *already* (vừa mới) và *yet* (vẫn chưa)/ *now that* .. (giờ đây khi mà...) / *till now, untill now, so far/ up to now* (cho đến giờ)/ *recently, lately* (gần đây); Dùng với *before* đứng ở cuối câu (I have seen him before)/- Dùng với *just* (vừa mới); *ever* (đã từng), *never* (chưa bao giờ), *in the past + time (in the past five year- trong 5 năm qua)*/- Dùng sau cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn nhất: *This is the first/ second/ third time I have (ever)done...*Eg: This is the first time I have been to England./I have never seen such a beautiful girl.

4. The present perfect continuous (Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

• Cấu trúc: S + has/ have + been + V-ing+ (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng:

- Diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp diễn ở tương lai.

Eg. I have been living in Hanoi since I was born.

- Diễn tả một hành động kéo dài trong quá khứ và mới vừa chấm dứt ở hiện tại, còn lưu lại dấu vết của hành động còn mới nguyên.

Eg. His hands are dirty with some paint. He has been painting the wall.

• **Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn:** xem về trước nó có chứa đựng dấu vết của hành động còn mới nguyên, hay dấu hiệu rằng hành động còn tiếp tục tiếp diễn ở tương lai.

5. The past Simple (Thì quá khứ thường)

• Cấu trúc: S + V (ed) + (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng:

- Diễn tả một xảy ra và hoàn thành ở một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Eg. He bought this car 2 years ago.

- Diễn tả một chuỗi các hành động quá khứ xảy ra liên tiếp nhau.

Eg. She went to the shop, bought a new shirt and gave him.

• **Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì quá khứ đơn:** Thì này thường được dùng với các phó từ chỉ thời gian như: *yesterday, at that moment, last week/ last month/ time+ ago (5 years ago)/ at that time/at that moment.*

• **Cách hình thành động từ quá khứ:**

- Những động từ lập thành thời quá khứ và quá khứ phân từ bằng cách thêm ed vào sau động từ gốc (gọi là Động từ có Quy tắc)

Ví dụ: I work - worked/ I washed -washed / I visit - visited

- Chú ý: Nếu động từ tận cùng bằng "y" và có một phụ âm đi trước "y" thì phải đổi "y" thành "i" rồi mới thêm "ed" (y - ied)

Ví dụ: I study - studied

- Nhưng khi trước y là nguyên âm thì: y+ed

Ví dụ: I play - played

- Nếu động từ tận cùng bằng 'e', thì chỉ thêm 'd'

Ví dụ: I live- lived

- Nếu một động từ (Verb) có một hay nhiều âm tiết/vần mà khi đọc nhấn mạnh vào cuối, và tận cùng bằng một phụ âm (trừ 'h, w, x, y' và đi trước phụ âm đó có một nguyên âm, thì hãy gấp đôi phụ âm rồi mới thêm ED

Ví dụ: Fit - Fitted Stop - stopped Drop - Dropped

Nhưng: Visit - Visited (Vi visit khi đọc nhấn mạnh vào vần thứ nhất)

Prefer - Preferred (*Vì prefer khi đọc, nhấn mạnh vào vắn thứ hai*)

Ngoài ra ngữ pháp tiếng Anh còn quy định một loại động từ "bất qui tắc", người học phải học thuộc lòng ba (3) thể động từ: Gốc, Quá khứ (PI) và Quá khứ phân từ (PII). *Có thể tra ở Bảng động từ bất qui tắc*

• **Cách đọc đuôi động từ quá khứ có /ed/**

- Nếu động từ tận cùng bằng âm kết thúc với đuôi /t; d/ thì /ed/ được phát âm là /id/

Ví dụ: wanted needed invited

- Nếu động từ tận cùng bằng những âm kết thúc với đuôi /s/; /sh/; /ch/; /k/; /f/; /p/ thì /ed/ được phát âm là /t/.

- Còn lại các động từ không thuộc hai loại trên thì /ed/ được phát âm là /t/

Ghi chú: Có một số tính từ ngoại lệ có đuôi 'ed' đọc theo cách riêng (xem kỹ ở phần Phonetics (Ngữ Âm))

6. The past continuous (Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn)

• Cấu trúc: S + was/were + V-ing + (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng:

- Diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Eg. Mai was watching TV at seven o'clock last night.

- Diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra trong quá khứ thì bị một hành động khác "chen ngang" (khi đang. . . thì bỗng. . .):

Eg. He was watching TV when I came home.

- Diễn tả hai hành động cùng đồng thời xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg. Lan was watching television while Nam was reading a book.

• **Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn:**

- Câu có dấu hiệu về thời gian khi hành động quá khứ đang xảy ra như: **at that moment, at that time; at 7 o'clock yesterday.**

- Câu có 2 vế, mỗi vế chứa một hành động quá khứ, chúng ta chia theo công thức:

Clause 1 (QKTD-The past continuous) + when + Clause 2 (QKĐG- The past simple)

Clause 1 (QKTD-The past continuous) + while + Clause 2 (QKTD-The past continuous)

7. The Past Perfect (Thì quá khứ hoàn thành):

• Cấu trúc: S + had + p2 + (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng: Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và hoàn thành trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.

Eg. when I came home last night, my parents had gone to bed.

• Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì quá khứ hoàn thành: Thời quá khứ hoàn thành được dùng với 3 phó từ chỉ thời gian là: *after, before và when.*

8. The Simple Future (Thì tương lai thường)

• Cấu trúc: S + will (Shall) + V (bare infinitive) + O + A

• Cách sử dụng: Diễn tả một hành động sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai (*I will buy a new car.*)

• Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì tương lai đơn giản: Thường dùng thì này với một số phó từ chỉ thời gian như **tomorrow, next + time, in the future, in future, from now on, in 2 months/ in three years.**

9. The Near future (Thì tương lai gần)

• Cấu trúc: S + be + going to-V + (O) + A

• Cách sử dụng: Diễn tả một hành động sẽ chắc chắn xảy ra trong tương lai gần.

Eg. I am going to buy a new car, so I am saving now.

- Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì tương lai gần: thường dùng thì này với các phó từ dưới dạng: ***In a moment (một lát nữa), at 2 o'clock this afternoon.***

Note: Chúng ta cần phân biệt 2 thì **The Simple Future** và **The Near future**

Near Future (to be going to do st)	Simple Future (will do st)
- Hành động chắc chắn xảy ra trong tương lai	- Hành động không chắc chắn xảy ra trong tương lai
- Diễn tả sự suy luận, tiên đoán dựa trên chứng cứ hiện tại: Look at those black clouds, it is going to rain. / He is very lazy, and he is going to fail in his exams.	- Diễn tả sự suy đoán cá nhân: <i>I think/expect/promise/ hope/ believe + that - a clause (will do st)</i>
- Diễn tả hành động được lên kế hoạch trước thời điểm nói: I have saved money for many years because I am going to buy a car.	- Diễn tả hành động được quyết định ngay thời điểm nói: Nam: It is so hot here. / Mai: I'll turn on the fans.

MỘT SỐ THÌ TIẾNG ANH NGOÀI CHƯƠNG TRÌNH PTCS

10. Future Progressive (Thì tương lai tiếp diễn):

- Cấu trúc: S + will be + V-ing + (O) + A
- Cách sử dụng:
 - Dùng để diễn đạt một hành động sẽ xảy ra vào một thời điểm nhất định trong tương lai.
Eg. At 8:00 am tomorrow morning we will be having Mark's wedding party.
Have a nice trip to America! We will be thinking of you.
 - Dùng kết hợp với present progressive khác để diễn đạt hai hành động đang song song xảy ra. Một ở hiện tại, còn một ở tương lai.
*Eg: Now we are enjoying our party here, but **by this time tomorrow** we will be working hard for a new project at the office.*
 - Được dùng để đề cập đến các sự kiện tương lai đã được xác định hoặc quyết định (không mang ý nghĩa tiếp diễn).
Eg: I will be giving another lecture on environment pollution at the same time next week.
 - Được dùng để diễn tả những sự kiện được mong đợi là sẽ xảy ra theo một tiến trình thường lệ (nhưng không diễn đạt ý định của cá nhân người nói).
Eg. I will be seeing you one of these days.
 - Được dùng để dự đoán cho tương lai.
Eg. Don't phone now, they will be sleeping.
 - Được dùng để diễn đạt lời đề nghị nhã nhặn muốn biết về kế hoạch của người khác.
Eg. Will you be having dinner with us this evening? (ông có dự định ăn tối với chúng tôi tối nay chứ ạ)

- **Dấu hiệu nhận biết Thì tương lai tiếp diễn:** câu có hành động tiếp diễn với thời điểm thời gian cụ thể ở tương lai: ***at 7:00 am tomorrow/by this time next week.***

11. Future Perfect (thì tương lai hoàn thành)

- Cấu trúc: S + will have + V (pp2) + (O) + A
- Cách sử dụng và Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì tương lai hoàn thành:
 - Dùng để chỉ một hành động sẽ phải được hoàn tất ở vào một thời điểm nhất định trong tương lai. Nó thường được dùng với trạng từ chỉ thời gian dưới dạng: ***by the end of..., by the time + sentence (will have done)***

Eg. We will have finished our project by the end of next week.

By the time my parents retire, I won't have graduated yet.

12. Future Perfect Continuous (Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

- Cấu trúc: S + will have been + V-ing + (O) + A
- Cách sử dụng và Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn:
 - Dùng để chỉ một hành động sẽ xảy ra và kéo dài cho đến một thời điểm nào đó trong tương lai và còn tiếp tục diễn ra nữa. Nó thường được dùng với trạng từ chỉ thời gian dưới dạng: **by the end of...**, **by the time + sentence (will have been doing)**.

Eg. By 2020, we will have been living in Vinh city for 20 years.

* Sự phù hợp về thì giữa hai vế của một câu

Trong một câu tiếng Anh có 2 vế (hai mệnh đề) thì thời của động từ ở hai thành phần đó phải phù hợp với nhau. Thời của động từ ở mệnh đề chính sẽ quyết định thời của động từ ở mệnh đề phụ.

MỆNH ĐỀ CHÍNH	MỆNH ĐỀ PHỤ
<i>Simple present</i>	<i>Present progressive</i>
Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra cùng lúc với hành động của mệnh đề chính I <u>see</u> that Mai <u>is writing</u> a letter. Do you <u>know</u> who <u>is watching</u> the film?	
<i>Simple Future</i>	<i>Simple present (or Present Perfect)</i>
Động từ trong các mệnh đề sau các liên từ chỉ thời gian như (<i>when, until, till, as soon as before, after, by the time. . .</i>) thường được chia ở HTĐG (Simple Tense) hay HTHT (Present Perfect) cho dù hành động sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai. I <u>will lend</u> you this book when I <u>have finished</u> It. She <u>will continue</u> writing to him until he <u>accepts</u> her love.	
<i>Simple present</i>	<i>Will/ Can/ May + Verb (hoặc Near future)</i>
Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra sau hành động của mệnh đề chính trong một tương lai không được xác định hoặc tương lai gần. My brother <u>says</u> that he <u>will buy</u> a new house. I <u>know</u> that she <u>is going</u> to win that prize. She <u>says</u> that she <u>can play</u> the piano very well.	
<i>Simple present</i>	<i>Simple past</i>
Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra trước hành động của mệnh đề chính trong một quá khứ được xác định cụ thể về mặt thời gian. I <u>hope</u> he <u>arrived</u> safely. Jenny <u>thinks</u> Tommy <u>was</u> here last night.	
<i>Simple present</i>	<i>Present perfect (progressive)</i>
Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra trước hành động của mệnh đề chính trong một quá khứ không được xác định cụ thể về mặt thời gian. John <u>tells</u> us that he <u>has been</u> to Hanoi before. We <u>know</u> that you <u>have won</u> a prize.	
<i>Simple past</i>	<i>Past progressive/ Simple past</i>
Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra cùng lúc với hành động của mệnh đề chính trong quá khứ. I <u>lent</u> my sister \$ 2000 when she <u>visited</u> us last Sunday. Jack <u>visited</u> us while he <u>was staying</u> in Ho Chi Minh city.	
<i>Simple past</i>	<i>Would/ Could/ Might + Verb</i>

Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra sau hành động của mệnh đề chính trong một tương lai trong quá khứ. He <u>said</u> that he <u>would look</u> for a job. Mary <u>said</u> that she <u>could play</u> the piano.	
<i>Simple past</i>	<i>Past perfect</i>
Hành động của mệnh đề phụ xảy ra trước hành động của mệnh đề chính, lùi sâu về trong quá khứ. — I <u>hoped</u> he <u>had arrived</u> safely. They <u>thought</u> he <u>had been</u> here last night.	
<i>Chú ý:</i> Sự phù hợp thì còn đi với các câu điều kiện và các câu giả định với các từ như / <i>wish, if only, as if, suggest, . . .</i>) và các câu trực tiếp, gián tiếp (chúng ta sẽ xem kỹ hơn ở phần câu điều kiện, câu gián tiếp, câu giả định cách.	

Lưu ý: Những nguyên tắc trên đây chỉ được áp dụng khi các mệnh đề trong câu có liên hệ với nhau về mặt thời gian nhưng nếu các mệnh đề trong câu có thời gian riêng biệt thì động từ phải tuân theo thời gian của chính mệnh đề đó.

Eg: He promised to write to me, till now I haven't received any letter from him.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Put the verbs in the following sentences in the correct verb forms.

1. At last you're here! I (wait).....here for more than half an hour!
2. My father (work).....in Canada for the last year, so by the time he (return).....the month after next I (not see).....him for fourteen months.
3. When you (see).....him again you (be).....surprised to see that his health (improve).....since he (go).....to Switzerland.
4. Why (you not tell).....me you (can).....lend me the money? I (not need).....to borrow it from the bank.
5. It's time we (leave).....now.
6. The manager (talk).....to an important customer at the moment but he (be).....free to see you presently. Would you like to take a seat for a few minutes?
7. When I last (see).....him, he (live).....in London. He (tell).....me that he (think).....of moving to Australia, and he may well have done so by now.
8. Not until we (arrive)at his house (we discover).....that he (be).....on holiday, and that we (waste).....our time in calling on him.
9. I'm tired of working in an office. I (think).....of changing my job.
10. I just (smell).....your roses. Do you think they (smell).....wonderful'?
11. How long (you learn).....English?
12. When the children (arrive)home it was clear that they (play).....in mud. Their clothes were covered with it.
13. I will never forget it. It was the first time I ever (go).....to a fancy dress party.
14. Michael (wait).....in the queue to buy a ticket for the train when he (hear).....an announcement saying that there was going to be a delay.
15. By 1995 Susan (lecture).....at the academy for ten years.
16. In my youth I (travel).....the world and I often (sleep).....under the stars.
17. Roger (meet).....his wife in the early 70s. She (act).....in the theater then.
18. The thieves (break into).....houses for 2 years before they (be finally caught).....
19. I (complete).....my university degree by 2014
20. By the time you (arrive).....here next month, I (study).....in London.

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the following sentences.

1. "Hurry up! We're waiting for you. What's taking you so long?" "I.....for an important phone call. Go ahead and leave without me."
A. wait B. will wait C. am waiting D. have waited
2. Robert is going to be famous some day. He.....in three movies already.
~ I'm sure he'll be a star.
A. has been appearing B. had appeared C. has appeared D. appeared
3. Where's Polly? ~ She
A. is in her room studying B. in her room is studying
C. studies in her room D. has in her room studied
4. Hello? Alice? This is Jeff. How are you? - Jeff? What a coincidence! I.....about you when the phone rang.
A. was just thinking B. just thought

A. has never won

B. is never winning

C. had never been winning

D. had never won

20. To be able to qualify as an interpreter, many years of intensive language study are required for non-native speakers. By the end of this year, Chen.....English for three years, but he will still need more training and experience before he masters the language.

A. will be studying

B. has studied

C. will have been studying

D. has been studying

Exercise 3: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets in the following paragraph into the correct tenses.

I(1- be).....Swiss. I (2- come).....to London six months ago to learn English. I (3- not meet).....many English people yet, only my teachers. I (4- start).....learning English at school in Switzerland when I was 11, so I (4- learn).....it for nearly 10 years. At first in London, I (5- not understand).....anything, but now my English (6- improve).....I (7-just/ take).....an exam. If I (8-pass).....,I (9- move).....into the next class. I'm excited today because my parents (10- come).....tomorrow to stay with me for a few days and I(11- not see).....them for a long time. They (13- never/ be).....to England and they (14- not speak).....English.

Exercise 4: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets in the following letter into the correct tenses.

Dear Ann,

I (1- receive).....your letter about two weeks ago and (2- try).....to find time to write you back ever since. I (3- be)very busy lately. In the past two weeks, I (4- have)four tests, and I have another test next week. In addition, a friend (5- stay).....with me since last Thursday. She wanted to see the city, so we (6- spend).....a lot of time visiting some of the interesting places here. We (7- be).....to the zoo, the art museum, and the botanical gardens. Yesterday we (8- go).....to the park and (9- watch).....a balloon race. Between showing her the city and studying for my exams, I (10- have).....barely enough time to breathe. Right now it (11- be).....3 a.m. and I (12- sit).....at my desk. I (13- sit).....here five hours doing my studying. My friend's plane (14- leave).....at 6:05, so I (15- decide).....not to go to bed. That's why I (16- write).....to you at such an early hour in the day. I (17. get)a little sleepy, but I would rather stay up. I (18- take).....a nap after I (19- get).....back from taking her to the airport.

How (20- you, get).....along? Please write soon.

Exercise 5: Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as given, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. He began playing football ten years ago.

→He has

2. He has been investigating the case for a week.

→He started.....

3. When is Peter and Sarah's wedding?

→When are

4. I have never read such a romantic story.

→This is.....

5. We started cooking for the party four hours ago.
→We have.....
6. He forgot about the gun until he got home.
→Not until.....
7. I haven't been to an Indian restaurant for ages.
→It's ages.....
8. The last time Nancy came here was in 1986.
→Nancy hasn't.....
9. This is my first visit to Japan.
→This is the first time.....
10. How long have Helen and Robert been married?
→When
11. It's along time since our last conversation.
→We
12. Thanks, but I had something to eat earlier.
→Thanks, but I've.....
13. This is the most interesting book I've ever read.
→I've never.....
14. This is my first game of water-polo.
→I
15. When she heard the results, Mary began to feel more confident.
→Since hearing the results.....

Exercise 6: Using the word given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence:

1. John never stops criticizing my friends.
always John.....my friends.
2. We've arranged to meet at 8. 00 p. m. tomorrow.
are We.....at 8.00 p.m. tomorrow.
3. Helen rarely goes to the theater.
not Helen.....the theater very often.
4. I am considering visiting my cousin in Canada next summer.
thinking I.....my cousin in Canada next summer.
5. What time is you plane scheduled to arrive at Heathrow?
land What time.....at Heathrow?
6. I have arranged to have dinner with Jerry tonight.
am I.....with Jerry tonight.
7. The older he gets, the more eccentric he becomes.
is As time goes by,.....eccentric.
8. They don't like spicy food, so they avoid eating it.
never They.....as they don't like it.
9. Jane has found a job at a supermarket for the summer.
is Jane.....at a supermarket this summer.
10. How much is that green jacket, Sir?

cost How much....., Sir?

Exercise 7. Rewrite the sentences, using the word in brackets, so that the meaning stays the same:

1. I put on ten kilos and then I decided to go on a diet.
(*by the time*).....
2. First, they washed the car and then they waxed it.
(*after*).....
3. Lisa made a sandwich and then sat on the sofa to watch TV.
(*before*).....
4. We packed our suitcases and then left for the airport.
(*as soon as*).....
5. The lecture started. Then I entered the lecture hall.
(*when*)
6. I hadn't tasted Chinese food before.
(*first*).....
7. That was the only science-fiction book he had read.
(*never*).....
8. Norman took that package. Then he realized it was the wrong one.
(*after*)
9. Mark was parking his car when he noticed the wing-mirror was broken.
(*While*).....
10. Judy was walking down the street when she saw an accident.
(*As*)
11. I'm sorry I can't talk to you now. I'm going to work in a minute.
(*about to*).....
12. The Council is going to close the old swimming pool.
(*intends*).....
13. They are going to have a big wedding in the summer.
(*planning to*).....
14. The economy will collapse in the very near future, it will happen at any time now.
(*on the point of*).....
15. My grandfather is going to die soon.
(*about to*).....
16. You will arrive at the hotel at 7. 30 in the evening.
(*due to*).....

PHẦN 2: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ (SUBJECT AND VERB CONCORD)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Trong một câu tiếng Anh, chủ ngữ và động từ phải phù hợp với nhau về ngôi và số (số ít hay số nhiều)

The boy speaks English very well.

số ít số ít

The boys speak English very well.

số nhiều số nhiều

Sau đây là các trường hợp về sự phù hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ mà chúng ta cần lưu ý:

1. Khi chủ ngữ đứng tách khỏi động từ

Trong câu tiếng Anh, có nhiều trường hợp rất khó xác định được đâu là chủ ngữ của câu do chủ ngữ và động từ không đi liền với nhau.

The students in the class are reading books. / The danger of water pollution is killing marine life.

Thông thường trong các trường hợp đó, một ngữ giới từ (một giới từ mở đầu và các danh từ theo sau - *in the class (hay) of water population* thường nằm giữa chủ ngữ và động từ. Các ngữ giới từ này không ảnh hưởng đến việc chia động từ.

The study of cultures is very interesting. / Several theories on the moon life have been believed.

Chú ý rằng trong các ví dụ trên các danh từ nằm trong ngữ giới từ đều trái ngược với chủ ngữ về số ít / số nhiều nhưng động từ luôn được chia theo chủ ngữ chính.

2. Các cụm từ sau cùng với các danh từ đi theo sau nó tạo nên hiện tượng đồng chủ ngữ.

* Đó là các danh từ đi sau một chủ ngữ nối với các từ như:

Together with (cùng với);	along with (đi cùng với)	accompanied by (được đồng hành cùng với)
as well as (cũng như);	No less than (not less than): không ít hơn là	Like (như)
In addition to (thêm vào);	Besides (bên cạnh)	As well as (cũng như)

Các cụm từ sau các từ trên đứng giữa chủ ngữ và động từ, phân tách khỏi 2 thành phần đó bởi dấu phẩy. Chúng cũng không có ảnh hưởng gì đến việc chia động từ, động từ được chia với chủ ngữ chính, đứng đầu.

Jenny, along with her mother and some friends, is going to a party tonight.

Mr. Hung, accompanied by her wife and children, is arriving tonight.

* Nếu 2 danh từ riêng biệt làm chủ ngữ nối với nhau bằng ‘**and**’ thì động từ phải chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số nhiều (tương đương với they)

Mary and her manager are going to a party tonight.

You and I are close friends.

* Nếu 2 danh từ làm chủ ngữ nối với nhau bằng ‘**and**’ và hai danh từ đó đều muốn chỉ tới một người hay một việc thì động từ phải chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít (tương đương với It/ she/ he)

The singer and the actor (Mr. Quang Dung) is interviewed on TV tonight.

(Người ca sĩ kiêm diễn viên)

Bread and milk is my favourite breakfast. (Bánh mì và sữa chỉ một món ăn)

* Nhưng nếu 2 đồng chủ ngữ nối với nhau bằng **or** thì động từ phải chia theo danh từ đứng sau **or**. Nếu danh từ đó là số ít thì động từ phải chia số ít và ngược lại.

Mary **or** her manager **is going** to answer the press interview.

3. Các từ luôn đi với danh từ hoặc đại từ phiếm chỉ làm chủ ngữ thì động từ chia ở số ít.

Đó là các danh từ ở bảng sau (còn gọi là các đại từ phiếm chỉ):

any + singular noun	no + singular noun	some + singular noun
		Some time (một thời gian nào đó)
		Some student (một sinh viên nào đó)
Anybody	Nobody	somebody
anyone	no one	someone
anything	nothing	something
every + singular noun	everybody	everyone
each + singular noun	either *	Neither *
each of plural noun		everything

* **Either và neither** là số ít nếu chúng không đi với **or** hoặc **nor**. **Either** (có nghĩa 1 trong 2) chỉ dùng cho 2 người hoặc 2 vật. Nếu 3 người (vật) trở lên phải dùng **any**. **Neither** (không một ai trong hai) chỉ dùng cho 2 người, 2 vật. Nếu 3 người (vật) trở lên dùng **not any**.

- Everybody who wants to get scholarship has to pass this examination.
- Someone has called you.
- Anybody who commits the crime has to be put into prison.
- Neither of his close friends is kind to him.
- If either of you goes out now, we will not be able to finish the work.
- No sollution is good for this problem.
- Nobody studies harder than Minh does.

4. Danh từ đi với **None** và **No** làm chủ ngữ trong câu.

- None và No đều dùng được với cả danh từ số ít và số nhiều.
- Nếu sau None of the là một danh từ không đếm được thì động từ phải ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít. Nếu sau nó là một danh từ số nhiều thì động từ phải chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số nhiều.

None of the + non-count noun + singular verb

None of the + plural count noun + plural verb

- None of the lost cars have been found.
- None of money has been invested in the local primary schools yet.
- Nếu sau nó là một danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc không đếm được thì động từ phải ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít. Nếu sau nó là một danh từ số nhiều thì động từ phải ở ngôi thứ 3 số nhiều

No + {singular noun / non-count noun} + singular verb

No + plural noun + plural verb

- No actor is suitable for this role. / No bread is left in the cupboard.
- No actors are suitable for this role. .

5. Cách sử dụng cấu trúc **either... or** (hoặc... hoặc) và **neither... nor** (không... mà cũng không)

- Khi sử dụng cấu trúc này, chúng ta lưu ý rằng động từ phải chia theo danh từ đi sau **or** hoặc **nor**. Nếu danh từ đó là số ít thì động từ chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít và ngược lại. Nếu **or** hoặc **nor** xuất hiện một mình (không có **either** hoặc **neither**) thì cũng áp dụng quy tắc tương tự (như đã đề cập ở phần trên)

neither	+ noun	+ nor	+ plural noun + plural verb
either		+ or	

neither either	+ noun	+ nor + or	+ singular noun + singular verb
-------------------	--------	---------------	---------------------------------

- Neither Minh nor his friends have to go to school today.
- Either Minh or his friends have to go to school today.
- Neither his friends nor Minh has never seen any UFOs.
- Either his friends or Minh has never seen any UFOs.

6. V-ing làm chủ ngữ

- Khi V-ing dùng làm chủ ngữ thì động từ cũng phải chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít.
- Knowing English enables him to get promotion in his work.
- Not studying hard has made him fail in his examination.

7. Động từ nguyên thể (To- infinitive) làm chủ ngữ.

- Động từ nguyên thể (To- infinitive) cũng có thể dùng làm chủ ngữ và động từ sau nó sẽ chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít. Nhưng người ta thường dùng chủ ngữ giả **it** để mở đầu câu.

To learn English well is necessary for him. = It is necessary for him to learn English well.

To solve environment pollution isn't easy for us = It isn't easy for us to solve environment pollution.

8. Câu chỉ nhấn mạnh với mệnh đề quan hệ

- Câu chỉ nhấn mạnh với mệnh đề quan hệ có động từ được chia số ít hay số nhiều tùy thuộc vào danh từ nó thay thế.

It is I who am a teacher here. / It is he who is a student here.

It is you who don't believe me. / It is the dog who often barks at night.

9. Câu hỏi với 'Who' và 'What' thường dùng với động từ số ít.

Who wants milk now? - we all do, please.

What has happend?

10. Các danh từ tập thể

- Đó là các danh từ ở bảng sau dùng để chỉ 1 nhóm người hoặc 1 tổ chức nhưng trên thực tế chúng là những danh từ số ít, do vậy các đại từ và động từ theo sau chúng cũng ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít.

Congress (Đại hội/ Quốc hội)	Organization (Tổ chức)	Government (Chính phủ)
family (Gia đình)	team (Đội)	jury (Hội thẩm đoàn)
group (nhóm)	army (quân đội)	majority (đa số)
committee (Ủy ban)	club (câu lạc bộ)	minority (tiểu số)
class (lớp)	crowd (đám đông)	public (công cộng/ dân chúng)

- The committee has met, and it has agreed on the sollutions.
- The family is important for everyone.
- The crowd was excited about the football match.
- Our team is going to win this match.

Note. Tuy nhiên nếu các thành viên trong nhóm đang hoạt động riêng rẽ, động từ sẽ chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số nhiều:

- Our family are having dinner. (Gồm các thành viên gia đình)
- The team are searching for the murder. (Gồm các cảnh sát viên hoạt động riêng rẽ)

11. Danh từ majority được dùng tùy theo thành phần sau nó để chia động từ

The majority + singular verb

The majority of the + plural noun + plural verb

- The majority believes in that rumour.
- The majority of the students study under the pressure.

12. The police/the sheep/the fish + plural verb.

- The sheep are lying gently on the meadow.
- The police are trying to find out the murder.

13. A couple + singular verb/ The couple + plural verb

- A couple is walking hand in hand in the park.
- The couple are smiling happily.

14. Các cụm từ ở nhóm sau chỉ một nhóm động vật hoặc gia súc. Cho dù sau giới từ *of* là danh từ số nhiều thì động từ vẫn chia theo ngôi chủ ngữ chính - ngôi thứ 3 số ít: ***flock of birds*** (một đàn chim)/ ***flock of sheep*** (một đàn cừu), ***school of fish*** (một đàn cá), ***herd of cattle*** (một bầy gia súc), ***pride of lions*** (một đàn sư tử), ***pack of dogs*** (một bầy chó); ***a bunch of flowers*** (một bó hoa),....

- The flock of birds is singing in the trees.
- The herd of cattle is breaking away.
- A bunch of roses is very nice.

15. Danh từ tập thể chỉ thời gian, tiền bạc, số đo,... làm chủ ngữ.

- Tất cả các danh từ tập thể chỉ thời gian, tiền bạc, số đo... khi được đề cập đến như một thể thống nhất thì đều được xem là một danh từ số ít. Do đó các động từ và đại từ theo sau chúng phải ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít.

- Twenty-five dollars is too much for the meal.
- Fifty minutes isn't enough time to finish this test
- Two miles is too much to run in one day

16. Cách sử dụng a number of, the number of:

- **A number of** = “Một số những...”, đi với danh từ số nhiều, động từ chia ở số nhiều.

A number of + plural noun + plural verb

- A number of doctors are going on holiday (Một số bác sĩ đang đi nghỉ.)
- A number of workers have already been interviewed.

- **The number of** = “Số lượng những...”, đi với danh từ số nhiều, động từ vẫn ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít.

The number of + plural noun + singular verb...

- The number of months in a week is twelve. (Số lượng ngày trong tuần là 7)
- The number of students is unemployed now.

17. Số thập phân làm chủ ngữ

*** Decimal number of plural Noun + plural verb**

Eg. About two third of students are unemployed now.

*** Decimal number of uncountable Noun + singular verb**

Eg. Three fourth of water is salty water.

18. Phần trăm và tỉ lệ phần trăm làm chủ ngữ

*** Percentage of Noun + singular verb**

Eg. What is the percentage of water on the Earth?

*** Percent of plural noun + plural verb.**

Eg. 20 % of English people are very poor.

*** Percent of uncountable noun + singular verb.**

Eg. 75% of water on the Earth is salty water.

19. Many a + singular Noun + Many a + singular Noun + Singular Verb (Biết bao nhiêu...)

Eg: Many a strong man has left the village because of such a hard life.

Biết bao chàng trai đã rời làng vì cuộc sống khó khăn như thế.

Many a teacher and many a student has taken part in the campaign

Biết bao nhiêu giáo viên và sinh viên đã tham dự vào chiến dịch

20. Các cụm từ đi với các đại từ chỉ đại lượng làm chủ ngữ

A lot of Much of Much too much of A large amount of A great deal of Plenty of Little of Most of Almost all of None of Half of The majority of	+ uncountable noun	+ singular verb
Eg. Half of bread has been eaten. A large amount of money is going to be invested in our education.		
Many so many A lot of / lots of Plenty of Almost all of All of Most of Few of Half of The majority of	+ Plural noun	+ Plural verb
Eg. Half of the students have disagreed with this policy A lot of students are looking for a job after graduating now.		

21. Các danh từ luôn ở số nhiều làm chủ ngữ

Bảng sau là những danh từ bao giờ cũng ở hình thái số nhiều vì chúng bao gồm 2 thực thể nên các đại từ và động từ đi cùng với chúng cũng phải ở số nhiều.

Scissors **jeans** **eyeglasses**
shorts **tongs** **pliers**
pants **trousers** **tweezers**

Nếu muốn chúng thành ngôi số ít phải dùng **a pair of...**

The trousers are in the washing basket.

A pair of trousers is in the washing basket.

These scissors are sharp. (Cái kéo này sắc. Chú ý chỉ có 1 cái kéo nhưng cũng dùng với these)

22. Cách dùng there is, there are

- Được dùng để chỉ sự tồn tại của người hoặc vật tại một nơi nào đó. Chủ ngữ thật của câu là danh từ đi sau động từ. Nếu nó là danh từ số ít thì động từ *to be* chia ở ngôi thứ 3 số ít và ngược lại. Mọi biến đổi về thời và thể đều ở *to be* còn *there* giữ nguyên.

There is	+ singular subject (or non-count)
There was	
There has been	
- <u>There has been an increase</u> in population.	
- <u>There is a flood</u> coming.	
There are	+ plural subject
There were	
There have been	

- There was an car crash last night.
- There have been a large number of unemployed people today.
- There were too many people at the wedding.

Lưu ý: - Các cấu trúc: *there is certain/ sure/ likely/ bound to be* = chắc chắn là sẽ có

Eg. - There is sure to be a trouble when she leaves her home.

(Chắc chắn là sẽ có rắc rối khi cô ấy rời khỏi nhà)

- Do you think there is likely to be storm.

(Anh cho rằng chắc chắn sẽ có bão chứ)

Trong dạng tiếng Anh quy chuẩn hoặc văn chương một số các động từ khác ngoài *to be* cũng được sử dụng với *there*:

Động từ trạng thái: *stand/lie/remain/exist/live*

Động từ chỉ sự đến: *enter/ go/ come/follow/ develop*

Eg. There exists nothing between them. / There follows a sudden bang.

There you are. / There he comes.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Give the right form of the verb in brackets to complete the following sentences.

1. Either the physicians in this hospital or the chief.....(be) going to have to make a decision.
2. (Be).....my boss or my sisters in the union going to win this grievance?
3. Some of the votes.....(seem) to have been miscounted.
4. The tornadoes that tear through this area every spring.....(be) more than just a nuisance.
5. Everyone selected to serve on this jury(have) to be willing to give up a lot of time.
6. Kara, together with her teammates,(present) a formidable opponent on the basketball court.
7. He seems to forget that there.....(be) things to be done before he can graduate.
8. There (have).....to be some people left in that town after yesterday's flood.
9. Some of the grain.....(appear) to be contaminated.
10. Three-quarters of the students.....(be) against the tuition hike.
11. Three-quarters of the student body.....(be) against the tuition hike.
12. A high percentage of the population.....(vote) for the new school.

13. A high percentage of the people.....(vote) for the new school now.
14. Politics (be).....sometimes a dirty business.
15. Not only the students but also their instructor.....(have) been called to the principal's office.
16. Each and every student and instructor in this building.....(hope) for a new facility by next year.
17. The students and instructors each.....(hope) for a new facility by next year.
18. The chairman, along with his two assistants,.....(plan) to attend the annual convention.
19. The fishing boat that has been tied up for three days.....(be) finally on its way this morning.
20. When there.....(be) thunderstorms approaching, we are always reminded of the threat of tornadoes.

Exercise 2: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete each sentences below.

1. Jenny with two dogs.....walking in the park now.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
2. Mai as well as her friends.....having a picnic now.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
3. My close friend and colleague, Mark,.....married.
A. have just got B. has just got C. just has got D. just have got
4. The singer and actor.....going to have a live show in our city next month.
A. was B. were C. is D. are
5. The singer and the actor.....donated a large amount of money to the local orphanage.
A. has B. have C. is D. are
6. My family.....always the most important for me.
A. is B. are C. is D. are
7. Two hundred thousands.....not enough for us to have a good meal in the restaurant now.
A. was B. were C. is D. are
8. Three years.....like a long time for her to live apart from her beloved parents
A. is seeming B. are seeing C. seems D. seemed
9. The team.....playing very well and they make their fans shout and yell.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
10. Cattle.....allowed to graze on this meadow.
A. wasn't B. weren't C. isn't D. aren't
11. None of his money.....earned by his working.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
12. None of students.....failed in this examination.
A. has B. have C. was D. were
13. Every student.....willing to take part in the environment month.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
14. The number of students.....looking for a job now.
A. are B. was C. were D. is
15. A number of students.....worried about their employment after graduating
A. feel B. feels C. felt D. is leeling
16. Physics.....my favorite subject.
A. are B. is C. was D. have been

17. The boy, along with his two classmates.....climbing on the roof now.
 A. has B. have C. is D. are
18. Neither the mother nor the children.....aware of the danger.
 A. were B. was C. is D. has been
19. None.....sorry for what they.....for me.
 A. is feeling/ did B. was feeling/ had done
 C. feel/ have done D. has felt/ has been going
20. If anyone....., tell him I'll be back later.
 A. was calling B. called C. call D. calls
21. Each of the boys.....to write his curriculum vitae now.
 A. have B. has C. had D. are having
22. Under the tree.....full of food.
 A. a basket was B. was a basket C. are a basket D. were a basket
23. Two-thirds of the lottery money.....donated for the poor.
 A. is B. are C. was D. were
24. About 60% of students in this class.....from the countryside.
 A. was B. were C. are D. is
25. A flock of sheep.....grazing grass now.
 A. are B. is C. was D. were
26. The number of books in this library.....written in English.
 A. are B. is C. was D. were
27. Either you or I.....here to clean the class before the teacher comes in.
 A. am B. is C. are D. were
28. Neither her trousers nor her shirt.....with this hat.
 A. is going B. are going C. goes D. go
29. The homeless.....our help to settle their own life.
 A. is needing B. are needing C. need D. needs
30. Several of the students.....absent yesterday.
 A. has been B. had been C. were D. was
31. The President, accompanied with his sons and wife,.....an official visit to Africa, next week.
 A. pay B. pays
 C. paid D. is going to pay
32. The majority.....in the rumor and.....him in isolation
 A. believes/ has left B. believe/ leave
 C. believe/ have left D. believes/ have left
33. His patience.....him a lot in his work.
 A. help B. helping C. help D. helps
34. Anybody who.....this question will be given an award.
 A. answer B. answers C. is answering D. are answering
35. The Blairs.....in London since 1950.
 A. are living B. have lived
 C. have been living D. has been living
36. Long, as well as I,.....a student in Vietnam National University.

- A. are B. were C. am D. has been
37. Not only Jack but also his parents.....also in debt.
A. is B. have C. was D. were
38. The majority of the TOEFL tests.....difficult for us to pass.
A. are B. is C. be D. being
39. News on sports.....on TV every night at 8:30
A. were B. was C. is D. are
40. A half of men in this city.....died from a lung cancer which is resulted from smoking.
A. have B. has C. is D. are
41. There.....available for us to choose in my hometown.
A. isn't a lot of job B. aren't many jobs
C. isn't a lot of jobs D. aren't a lot of job
42. The Chinese.....strong and old traditions and customs.
A. has many B. have much C. have many D. has much
43. The percentage of Vietnamese people who moved to other countries to earn living.....very high.
A. is B. are C. have D. has
44. Natural disasters, in addition to pollution,.....this area poor and dirty.
A. has made B. have made C. make D. making
45. Half an hour.....not enough for me to make an important decision.
A. are B. is C. being D. were
46. Miss Lan, accompanied by her friends on the piano,.....highly evaluated by the judges.
A. was B. were C. have been D. has been
47. My new pair of pants.....fit me.
A. isn't B. doesn't C. aren't D. don't
48. I'm happy that everything.....better now.
A. are B. been C. is D. have
49. Statistics.....a difficult course for many students to understand.
A. is B. are C. were D. being
50. I think every man and woman.....the right to have the freedom of speech.
A. have B. has C. are D. is

PHẦN 3. CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG VÀ BỊ ĐỘNG TRONG TIẾNG ANH (ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE IN ENGLISH)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Trong tiếng Anh, người ta rất hay dùng câu bị động. Khác với ở câu chủ động chủ ngữ thực hiện hành động, trong câu bị động chủ ngữ nhận tác động của hành động. Câu bị động được dùng khi muốn nhấn mạnh đến đối tượng chịu tác động của hành động hơn là bản thân hành động đó. Chính vì thế, câu bị động trong tiếng Anh thường được dùng trong các văn phong trang trọng, thể hiện tính khách quan của hành động.

Cấu trúc câu bị động: S + be + past participle + (by)

Các cấu trúc câu bị động ở các thì cơ bản

1. Thì HTDG: S + Am/ is/ are + Ved V-3 Eg: Cars are produced in Japan.	5. Thì QKTD: S + was werev+being + Ved/ V-3 Eg: Mai was being interviewed at 3. p.m yesterday.
2. Thì HTTD: S + Am/is / are + being - Ved/3 Eg: A new building is being built here.	6. Thì QKHT: S + had + been + VedV-3 Eg: All food had been eaten before we came there.
3. Thì HTHT: S + Have/has been + Ved 3 Eg: This report has just been finished.	7. Thì TLĐG: S + will + be + Ved/V-3 Eg: They hope that the new bridge will be built soon.
4. Thì QKĐG: S + was were+ Ved/ V-3 Eg: My house was built 5 years ago.	8. Thì TLĐĐ: S + Am/is / are + going to be + Ved 3 Eg: A festival is going to be held in our city, next week.

Cách chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động

- Xác định tân ngữ của câu chủ động, đưa nó lên làm chủ ngữ của câu bị động.
- Xác định động từ chính của câu chủ động, chuyển nó thành dạng phân từ quá khứ, động từ 'to be' ở câu bị động được chia theo thì của động từ chính của câu chủ động.
- Xác định chủ ngữ của câu bị động chuyển nó thành tác nhân gây ra hành động sau giới từ 'by'.
- Nếu chủ ngữ đó là những đại từ bất định (nobody, anybody, everyone,...) hoặc they, people thì không nhất thiết phải có 'by ...
- Nếu động từ có 2 tân ngữ, muốn nhấn mạnh tân ngữ nào, ta đưa tân ngữ đó lên làm chủ ngữ.

Eg: I gave him a book → I gave a book to him.

→ He was given a book (by me).

*** Một số câu phải chuyển theo cách riêng, theo cấu trúc riêng**

*** *To have someone do something* → *to have something done* (Nhờ ai làm gì)**

EX. Yesterday, I had them repaint my house. → Yesterday, I had my house repainted.

Note: Eg: Peter had his car stolen / My brother had his leg broken while playing football (Diễn tả sự không may bị gì)

*** *To make sbd do st* → *to be made to do st***

Eg: They made David work hard → David was made to work hard.

*** *Sbd needs to do st* = *To need to be done* = *to need doing*.**

Eg: The house is a mess. I need to tidy it → It needs to be tidied = it needs tidying.

*** *To let sbd do st* → *to be allowed to do st*.**

Eg: My father lets me to go out at night. → I am allowed to go out at night *

*** *Like/ love/ remember/ hate/ dislike (doing st/ 1 clause/ sbd doing st)* → *Like/ love/ remember/ hate/ dislike being done*.**

Eg: - I remember that someone gave me that book on my birthday = I remember being given that book on my birthday.

*** *Bị động với Modal verb: S + can/ may/should/might/must + be +Ved/V-3***

Eg: Your homework must be done at home.

*** *Bị động với cấu trúc: S + have/has to do st + have/ has to be + done (Ved/V-3)***

Eg: Uniform has to be worn at this school.

*** *Bị động với cấu trúc: S + used to do st* → *S + used to be + done (Ved/V-3)***

Eg: He used to be taken to school when he was a little boy.

*** *Bị động với các cấu trúc động từ đi với động từ nguyên thể: S + V + to be + V-ed/ V-3***

Eg: He wants to be given the first prize)

* **Bị động với các cấu trúc động từ đi với danh động từ:** S+V + being + Ved/ V-3

Eg: I dislike being told what to do.

* **Bị động với các động từ:** say; report; think; believe, understand; know; expect

S + say (report/ think/ believe/ understand/ know/ expect) + that + 1 clause

→ It + be + said (reported/ thought/ believed/ understood/ known/ expected) + that + 1 clause

→ S + be + said (reported/ thought/ believed/ understood/ known/ expected) + to- inf/ to be V-ing/ to have + V-ed/3/ to have been + V-ing/ to have been V+ed

Xem các ví dụ ở bảng sau:

Active voice		
Subject (people; someone; they; everyone: nobody)	say (said) report (reported) think (thought) believe (believed) understand (understood) know (knew) expect (expected)	(that) + 1 clause John lives in NewYork. John will live in Australia in two years. John is traveling in Africa. John has been to Germany. John went to Japan last year. John has been writing a good book. John is going to build a new villa in London.
Passive voice (cách chuyển 1)		
It is/ was	said (that) reported thought believed understood known expected	(that) + 1 clause John lives in NewYork. / John will live in Australia in two years. John is traveling in Africa. John has been to Germany. John went to Japan last year. John has been writing a good book for 1 year. John is going to build a new villa in London.
Passive voice (cách chuyển 2)		
John is/ was	said (that) reported thought believed understood known expected	to live in NewYork to live in Australia in two years. to be traveling in Africa. to have been to Germany. to have gone to Japan last year. to have been writing a good book for 1 year. to be going to build a new villa in London.

Active Voice: People said that John was traveling to Africa.

Passive voice: → It was said that John was traveling to Africa.

→ John was said to have been traveling to Africa.

Active Voice: They expect that the government will build a new highway here.

Passive voice: → It is expected that the government will build a new highway here.

→ A new highway is expected to be built here by the government.

→ The government is expected to build a new highway here.

Một số cấu trúc câu bị động

- **to be made of:** Được làm bằng (Đề cập đến chất liệu làm nên vật):

This ring is made of gold and diamond

- **to be made from:** Được làm ra từ (đề cập đến việc nguyên vật liệu bị biến đổi khỏi trạng thái ban đầu để làm nên vật): Wine is made from rice.

- **to be made out of:** Được làm bằng (đề cập đến quá trình làm ra vật)

These biscuits were made out of flour, butter, sugar, eggs and milk.

- **to be made with:** Được làm với (đề cập đến chỉ một trong số nhiều chất liệu làm nên vật)

This soup tastes good because it was made with a lot of spices.

- **to be made by sbd:** được làm bởi ai

This blouse was made for me by my mother

- **to be made in somewhere:** được sản xuất ở đâu.

These laptops were made in Japan.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the following sentences.

1. I still can't believe it! My wallet.....last night.

- A. was stolen B. was stealing C. stolen D. stole

2. The current computer problem isby some experts in the country.

- A. studying B. being Studying C. being studied D. been studied

3. Something funny.....in class yesterday.

- A. happened B. was happened C. happens D. is happened

4. The child's arm was swollen because he.....by a bee.

- A. stung B. had stung
C. had been stung D. had being stung

5. Today, many serious childhood diseases.....by early immunization.

- A. are preventing B. can prevent
C. prevent D. can be prevented

6. I.....with you on that subject.

- A. am agree B. am agreed C. agreeing D. agree

7. Many U. S. automobiles.....in Detroit, Michigan.

- A. manufacture B. have manufactured
C. are manufactured D. are manufacturing

8. Let's go ahead and do it now. Nothing.....by waiting.

- A. accomplishes B. accomplished
C. has accomplished D. will be accomplished

9. "When.....?" "In 1928. "

- A. penicillin was discovered B. did penicillin discovered
C. was penicillin discovered D. did penicillin discover

10. In recent years, the government has imposed pollution controls on automobile manufacturers. Both domestic and imported automobiles must.....anti-pollution devices.

- A. equip with B. be equipped with
C. equip by D. be equipped by

11. A shortage of water is a problem in many parts of the world. In some areas, water.....from the ground faster than nature can replenish the supply.
 A. is being taken B. has been taking C. is taking D. has taken
12. Vitamin C.....by the human body. It gets into the blood stream quickly.
 A. absorbs easily B. is easily absorbing
 C. is easily absorbed D. absorbed easily
13. "When can I have my car back?" "I think it'll.....late this afternoon. "
 A. finish B. be finished C. have finished D. be finish
14. I didn't think my interview went well, but I guess it must have. Despite all my anxiety, I.....for the job I wanted. I'm really going to work hard to justify their confidence.
 A. was hiring B. hired C. got hiring D. got hired
15. My country.....the pursuit of world peace.
 A. is dedicating to B. is dedicated to
 C. is dedicating by D. is dedicated by
16. About 15,000 years ago. northern Wisconsin.....under ice a mile deep.
 A. buried B. was burying C. was buried D. had buried
17. Ed was new on the job, but he quickly fit himself into the.....routine of the office.
 A. established B. establishing C. establishes D. establish
18. The Mayan Indians.....an accurate and sophisticated calendar more than seven centuries ago.
 A. were developed B. developed
 C. are developed D. have been developed
19. George is.....Lisa.
 A. marry with B. marry to C. married with D. married to
20. The rescuers.....for their bravery and fortitude in locating the lost mountain climbers.
 A. were praised B. praised C. were praising D. praising

Exercise 2: Rewrite the following sentences into the passive voice

1. People often take him for his brother.

2. Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake.

3. He recommends fitting new tires.

 He suggested allowing tenants to buy their houses.

4. It is your duty to make tea at eleven o'clock.

5. People know that he is armed.

6. Someone has seen him pick up the gun.

7. We know that you were in town on the Bight of the crime.

8. They think that your father was a spy in the World War II.

.....
9. We believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.
.....

10. You needn't have done this.
.....

11. He likes people to call him "Sir".
.....

12. Don't touch this switch.
.....

13. You have to see it to believe it.
.....

14. He doesn't like people laughing at him.
.....

15. You don't need to wind this watch.
.....

16. They shouldn't have told him.
.....

17. Don't speak until someone speaks to you.
.....

18. It is impossible to do this.
.....

19. He hates people making fun of him.
.....

20. Everyone thought that the Government had ignored their opinions.
.....

21. They gave him artificial respiration.
.....

22. Before they invented printing people had to write everything by hand.
.....

Exercise 3. Rewrite the sentences, using but not altering the bold word in brackets, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. People say he is a good doctor. (**It**)
.....

2. Nobody told me about it. (**not**)
.....

3. I don't like pupils asking stupid questions. (**being**)
.....

4. She doesn't like the others laughing at her. (**laughed**)
.....

5. The boss had his secretary type all these letters. (**typed**)
.....

6. They employed the workers to repair their house. (**had**)
.....

7. They say that elephants never forget. (**forget**)

8. I don't want the others think of me as a burden. (**thought**)

9. People thought that he killed his wife. (**been**)

10. People believe that 13 is unlucky number. (**be**)

11. People expect that the strike will begin tomorrow. (**begin**)

12. I remember that someone gave me that shirt on my birthday. (**remember**)

13. He recommended using secondhand clothes. (**should**)

14. John made me leave soon. (**I**)

15. It is your duty to do your homework before class-time. (**You**)

Exercise 4: Both sentences in each pair have the same meaning. Complete the second sentences:

1. The crowd was slowly filling the huge stadium.

The huge stadium.....by the crowd.

2. The invention of the computer simplified the work of accountants.

Since the computerthe work of accountants
.....simplified.

3. 'I'd take out some travel insurance if I were you, Mr. Smith.

Mr. Smith.....take out some travel insurance.

4. Someone used a knife to open this window.

This window.....a knife.

5. You will hear from us when we have finished dealing with your complaint.

After your complaint....., you will hear from us.

6. An announcement of their engagement appeared in the local paper.

Their engagement.....in the local paper.

7. Nobody ever heard anything of David again.

Nothing.....David again.

8. They paid Sheila \$1000 as a special bonus.

\$ 1000.....Sheila as a special bonus.

PHẦN 4: CÂU TRỰC TIẾP VÀ GIÁN TIẾP TRONG TIẾNG ANH (DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH IN ENGLISH)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Để biến đổi một câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp cần:

1. Đổi chủ ngữ và các đại từ nhân xưng khác trong câu trực tiếp theo chủ ngữ của thành phần thứ nhất.

2. Lùi động từ ở về thứ 2 xuống một cấp so với lúc ban đầu.
3. Biến đổi các đại từ chỉ thị, phó từ chỉ thời gian và địa điểm theo bảng qui định.

Bảng đổi động từ

Direct speech	Indirect speech
Simple present	Simple past
Present progressive	Past progressive
Present perfect (Progressive)	Past perfect (Progressive)
Simple past	Past perfect
Will/Shall	Would
Should	Should
Can	Could
May	Might
Must	Had to

Bảng đổi các đại từ chỉ thị, phó từ chỉ địa điểm và thời gian

Today	That day
Yesterday	The day before
The day before yesterday	Two days before
Tomorrow	The next/ the following day
The day after tomorrow	In two days' time
Next + Time (next week/ month/ year)	The following + Time (the following week/ month/ year)
Last + Time (last week/ month/ year)	The previous + Time (The previous week/ month/ year)
Time + ago (2 months ago)	Time + before (2 months before)
This, these	That, those
Here	There
Overhere	Overthere

* Câu tường thuật một câu hỏi dạng “ Có/ Không” (Yes/ No question)

- Căn cứ vào thì của động từ trong câu hỏi trực tiếp, chúng ta dùng thì của mệnh đề phụ chính xác theo phần đổi từ đã nêu trên:
- Bỏ dấu chấm hỏi và bỏ đảo ngữ (inversion) trong câu hỏi trực tiếp, nghĩa là chủ từ vẫn nằm trước động từ.
- Dùng đại từ nhân xưng, sở hữu tính từ cho phù hợp tình huống.
- Mệnh đề phụ khởi đầu bằng **if** hoặc **whether**.
- Các động từ thường dùng trong mệnh đề chính là: + asked (hỏi), có thể có túc từ kèm theo; + wondered (tự hỏi, thắc mắc); + wanted to know (muốn biết); + didn't know (không biết)

Cấu trúc câu tường thuật một câu hỏi dạng “có không”

S +	asked wondered wanted know	(O) + If / whether S + V...
-----	----------------------------------	-----------------------------

	didn't know	
--	-------------	--

EG: “Are you a teacher?” Jenny asked me. → Jenny asked me if/whether I was a teacher.

“Did you watch TV last night?” Jenny asked me.

→ Jenny asked me if/whether I had watched TV the night before.

*** Câu tường thuật một câu hỏi dạng “WH question”**

Ghi chú: - Chúng ta vẫn áp dụng mọi hướng dẫn ở phần trên:

+ cách đổi thì của động từ khi đã biết thì của động từ trong câu hỏi trực tiếp.

+ thay đổi đại từ nhân xưng, sở hữu tính từ

+ bỏ dấu chấm hỏi, bỏ ngoặc kép và bỏ đảo ngữ.

+ động từ mệnh đề chính vẫn giống như phần trên.

- Chúng ta đã biết câu hỏi dạng Wh-question là những câu hỏi khởi đầu bằng **who, which, what, when, where, why, how**. Và các mệnh đề phụ trong câu tường thuật loại này khởi đầu bằng từ để hỏi, ta dùng ký hiệu là **Wh**. Chúng ta có cấu trúc như sau:

S +	asked wondered wanted to know didn't know	(O) + WH-Question + S + V...
------------	--	-------------------------------------

Eg: “What were you doing at 5 p.m yesterday?” Marry asked me.

→ Marry asked me what I was doing at 5 p.m the day before;

“Who are you?” Marry asked me. → Marry asked me who I was.

*** Câu yêu cầu, câu mệnh lệnh chuyển sang gián tiếp: Chúng ta có cấu trúc như sau:**

S +	asked told	(O/ sbd) to do st
------------	---------------	--------------------------

“Don't walk in rain”, said his mother. → His mother asked him not to walk in rain.

“Keep silent in class” said his teacher. → His teacher asked him to keep silent in class

MỘT SỐ CÂU GIÁN TIẾP ĐI VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ TƯỜNG THUẬT (REPORTING VERBS) PHẢI CHUYỂN THEO CẤU TRÚC RIÊNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ TƯỜNG THUẬT ĐÓ.

*** deny doing st: từ chối làm gì**

Direct speech: “No, it's not true, I didn't steal the money,” said Jean

Indirect speech: Jean denied stealing (having stolen) the money.

*** suggest doing st: đề nghị làm gì**

Direct speech: “Why don't we go to the cinema this evening,” Peter told us.

Indirect speech: Peter suggested (us) going to the cinema.

*** suggest that + 1 clause (should): đề nghị rằng ai đó nên làm gì.**

Direct speech: “It's very hot in this room, isn't it?” said the guest.

Indirect speech: The guest suggested that the room should be opened/ aired.

*** agree to do st: đồng ý làm gì**

Direct speech: “Yes, of course. I'll give you a lift, Helen” said Jenny.

Indirect speech: Jenny agreed to give Hellen a lift.

*** apologize to sbd for doing st: xin lỗi ai vì đã làm gì.**

Direct speech: "I have broken your pen. I am awfully sorry, Jack" said David.

Indirect speech: David apologized to Jack for breaking (having broken) Jack's pen.

*** remind sbd to do st: Nhắc nhở ai làm gì**

Direct speech: "Don't forget to post my letter, will you, Sue," said Diana

Indirect speech: Diana reminded Sue to post the her letter.

*** offer to do st: đề nghị làm gì**

Direct speech: "Let me carry your suitcase, John," said Harry.

Indirect speech: Harry offered to carry John's suitcase.

*** offer sbd st: mời chào ai cái gì.**

Direct speech: "A cup of tea?" said Mai ~ "No, thanks," said I

Indirect speech: Mai offered me a cup of tea but I refused.

*** admit that + 1 clause: thú nhận rằng**

Direct speech: "All right, it is true, I was nervous," said the leading actor.

Indirect speech: The leading actor admitted that he had been nervous.

*** doubt whether(or not)...: nghi ngờ có hay không...**

Direct speech: "I don't think Liverpool will win," said Jack.

Indirect speech: Jack doubted whether Liverpool would win (or not).

*** advise sbd to do st: khuyên ai làm gì**

Direct speech: "I were you. Bill. I'd buy a mountain car," Stephen told Bill.

Indirect speech: Stephen advised Bill to buy a mountain car.

*** promise to do st: hứa làm gì**

Direct speech: "Don't worry. Martin. I'll bring your book back," said Lilly.

Indirect speech: Lilly promised to bring Martin's book back.

*** accuse sbd of doing st (having done st): buộc tội ai là đã làm gì.**

Direct speech: "You murdered Lord, didn't you. Collin," said the inspector.

Indirect speech: The inspector accused Collin of murdering Lord.

*** blame sbd for st/ doing st: đổ lỗi cho ai vì cái gì/ đã làm gì**

Direct speech: "It's you who broke my glasses," Hoa said to me.

Indirect speech: Hoa blamed me for breaking/ having broken her glasses.

*** insist on st/ doing at/ having done st: nài nỉ cái gì, làm gì, đã làm gì.**

Direct speech: "No, no, you really must have another drink!" Dick told me.

Indirect speech: Dick insisted on my having another drink.

*** confess to doing st/ having done: thú nhận đã làm gì**

Direct speech: "It was me who has stole the money," said Jim.

Indirect speech: Jim confessed to stealing the money.

*** decide to do st: quyết định làm gì**

Direct speech: "Right, I'll take the brown pair," said Andrew.

Indirect speech: Andrew decided to the brown pair.

*** refuse to do st: từ chối làm gì**

Direct speech: "No, sorry, I don't want to lend you my camera. " AIEg told me.

Indirect speech: AIEg refused to lend me his camera.

*** threaten to do st: đe dọa làm gì**

Direct speech: "I'll kill you if you don't give me your money," the robber said to the old lady.

Indirect speech: The robber threatened to kill the old lady if she didn't give him her money.

*** request sbd to do st: yêu cầu ai làm gì**

Direct speech: "Please write your full name under your signature," said the clerk.

Indirect speech: The clerk requested me to write my full name under my signature.

*** urge sbd to do st: thúc giục ai làm gì**

Direct speech: "Hurry up," said my mother.

Indirect speech: My mother urged me to hurry up.

*** beg sbd (not) to do st: van xin ai (không) làm gì**

Direct speech: "Please, please, don't leave me now," the girl said to the boy.

Indirect speech: The girl begged the boy not to leave her then.

*** encourage sbd to do st: khuyến khích, động viên ai làm gì**

Direct speech: "Go on. Try your best. Don't give your hope. You'll win your prize." said Jen.

Indirect speech: Jen encouraged me to try my best, not to give my hope and assured that I would win the prize.

*** warn sbd (not) to do st: cảnh báo ai không làm gì.**

Direct speech: "Don't eat these fruits, will you? They're very poisonous," said my mother.

Indirect speech: My mother warned me not to eat these fruits because they were very poisonous.

*** check whether.... (or not): kiểm tra lại rằng**

Direct speech: "You are a teacher, aren't you?" my old friend said.

Indirect speech: My old friend checked whether I was a teacher.

*** invite sbd to do st: mời ai làm gì**

Direct speech: "Would you like to join in our picnic next Sunday," Mai said to Lan.

Indirect speech: Mai invited Lan to join in their picnic the following Sunday.

*** refuse to do st: từ chối làm gì**

Direct speech: "I'm sorry. I can't go with you now. I'm busy with my homework" Lan said.

Indirect speech: Lan refused to go with me then and explained that she was busy with her homework.

*** reply that/ answer that + 1 clause: đáp lại rằng/ trả lời rằng**

Direct speech: "Do you like your job?" I asked him ~ "No," he replied.

Indirect speech: I asked if he like his job and he replied he didn't.

*** assure sbd that: bảo đảm với ai rằng**

Direct speech: "You can have a refund if the product has any faults," Mr. Brown assured me.

Indirect speech: Mr. Brown assured me that I could have a refund if the product had any faults.

*** object that + 1 clause: phản đối rằng. .. / object to doing st: phản đối làm gì**

Direct speech: "No, I don't want to sit here in order to wait for his pity," said the girl.

Indirect speech: The girl objected to sitting there in order to wait for his pity.

*** argue that + 1 clause: tranh cãi rằng**

Direct speech: "But using our own motorbikes will cause air pollution." said Mai.

Indirect speech: Mai argued that using their own motorbikes would cause air pollution.

*** claim that + 1 clause: tuyên bố rằng...**

Direct speech: "Right. I've written that letter to the boss," said Jack.

Indirect speech: Jack claimed that he had written that letter to the boss.

*** complain that + 1 clause: phàn nàn rằng....**

Direct speech: "Oh, you have never complimented me on my work," Lan told her father.

Indirect speech: Lan complained that her father had never complimented her on her work.

*** exclaim that + 1 clause: thốt lên rằng**

Direct speech: "Hey, hey. My team has won!" said the boys.

Indirect speech: The boys exclaimed (with joy/joyfully) that his team had won.

*** Shout/ yell/ scream at (to) sbd (that + 1 clause): la hét, thét lên với ai.**

Direct speech: "Go away!" he told his wife angrily.

Indirect speech: He shouted at his wife and asked her to go away.

Direct speech: "Help, help," said the young girl.

Indirect speech: The young girl yelled for help.

*** compliment sbd on st/ doing st: khen ai về cái gì**

Direct speech: "Well done! It's a great effort. You played the guitar skillfully." Mai told me.

Indirect speech: Mai complemented me on playing the guitar skillfully.

*** reproach sbd for st/ doing st: chỉ trích, trách mắng ai vì cái gì, đã làm gì.**

Direct speech: "You should have locked the door open this morning." My father told me.

Indirect speech: My father reproached me for not having locked the door that morning.

*** remark that + 1 clause: nhận xét rằng...**

Direct speech: "I think that you're making progress," said my English teacher.

Indirect speech: My English teacher remarked that I were making progress.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Complete the second sentence in each pairs so that the meaning stays the same:

1. 'It's pouring with rain down here.'

She told me.....

2. 'I'll come and see you on Friday if that's all right.'

She said that.....

3. The club lost quite a lot of money last month'

The treasurer told the meeting.....

4. 'I'll have finished writing the report by the time you get here,'

She promised me.....

5. 'I enjoyed myself last night'

Clare said that.....

6. "What are the most interesting sights?"

A young man wanted to know.....

7. "Have you got a town plan?"

A German student asked.....

8. "Where can we stay?"

A French couple wondered.....

9. "How long does the film last?" Carol asked.

Carol asked.....

10. "Are there guided tours?"

A Japanese man asked.....

11. "Which way is the castle?"

- A tourist wanted to know.....
12. Peter to Nick: Would you like to stay for lunch?
Peter invited.....
13. Tim to Martin: You ought to see a doctor.
Tim advised.....
14. Louise: I'm sorry I caused so much trouble.
Louise apologized.....
15. Andy: Why don't we go out for the day?
Andy suggested.....
16. Tracy: I'll do the washing up.
Tracy offered.....
17. Pat to Jane: You're going to post the letter, don't forget.
Pat reminded Jane.....
18. Travel agent: Yes, we made a mistake.
The travel agent admitted.....
19. Steve to Mike: Don't touch the electric wires.
Steve warned.....
20. Are you taking much money with you to France?
My bank manager wanted to know.....

Exercise 2: Change the following sentences into reported speeches. Use one of the reporting verbs given below: *advise, promise, suggest, inquire, warn, agree, threaten, apologize, complain, refuse*

1. "Why don't we invite Jane to dinner tonight?" Mrs. Stone said.
.....
2. "Where is Mount Everest?" asked a student.
.....
3. "If you scream, I'll shoot," said the robber to the girl.
.....
4. "I have been standing in this queue for two hours!" said the man.
.....
5. "You should stay in the shade and wear a hat, Mrs. Bent," said the doctor
.....
6. "You'll burn yourself. Tom, if you keep playing with matches." said his sister.
.....
7. "I'm really sorry that I woke you up this morning, Harry," said Chris
.....
8. I think you are right, Tracey. We ought to let the others know," said Kerry
.....
9. "I'll definitely pay you back by the end of the week, Mum," said Sue
.....
10. I will not let you borrow my car tomorrow, Graham," said Michael
.....

Exercise 3: Change the following sentences into reported speech. Use the verbs given in the box. Use each word once only.

<i>suggest</i>	<i>claim</i>	<i>whisper</i>
<i>shout</i>		
<i>agree</i>	<i>boast</i>	<i>admit</i>
<i>protest</i>		

1. "I can speak six languages fluently," he said.
.....
2. "Let's go to the cinema this evening," he said.
.....
3. "Stop that noise in the classroom," said the teacher.
.....
4. "That car you are driving is my property," the man said.
.....
5. "Yes, I broke the windows with my catapults," the boy said.
.....
6. "You can't take me to prison. I know my rights," the man said.
.....
7. "I shall always love you," said his fiancée.
.....
8. "Well, yes, if the weather is bad, we can't go."
.....

Exercise 4: Continue reporting each sentence, using only the number of words stated in brackets.

1. "Do you think you could possibly tell me what the time is?"
David asked me.....(five words)
2. "Excuse me, but I wonder if you'd mind opening the window. "
The man sitting next to me asked me.....(four words)
3. "You go down this street, turn left, then take the second turning on the right. The cinema is just down the street on the left. "
A passer-by told me how.....(five words)
4. "I want to know how much this bike cost. Can you tell me?"
John asked how.....(four words)
5. "Look, don't worry, I'll help you if you like. "
Sue said she.....(three words)
6. "All right, I tell you what, the car's yours for, let's say \$ 500. "
The salesman said I could.....(five words)
7. "I hope you don't mind my saying this, but you're being a bit silly, aren't you?"
Peter told me I.....(five words)
8. "It doesn't look as if I'll be arriving until after eight, I'm afraid. "
Jane said she probably.....(six words)

PHẦN 5: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN - CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

1. **Type 1: Điều kiện có thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại (điều kiện dạng I):**

if + S + simple present tense	S + simple future (will do st) + should/ may/ might/ can + do st
-------------------------------	---

Eg: If he tries much more, he will improve his English. / If I have enough time, I can finish my work.

Câu điều kiện diễn tả thói quen hay sự thật hiển nhiên (**HABITUAL/ FACTUAL ACTION**)

if + S + simple present tense	S + simple present tense..
-------------------------------	----------------------------

Eg: I usually walk to school if I have enough time.

If you heat the ice, it melts. / If summers come, it is hot and sunny

- Câu điều kiện diễn tả MỆNH LỆNH (COMMAND)

if + S + simple present tense	+ command form of verb +...
-------------------------------	-----------------------------

Eg: If you go to the Post Office, mail this letter for me.

Please call me if you hear anything from Jane.

2. Type 2: Điều kiện không thể thực hiện được ở hiện tại

if + S + simple past tense	S + would + V (bare-infinitive)
----------------------------	---------------------------------

Eg: If I had enough money now, I would buy a tourist trip to the moon.

(I don't have money now and I can't buy a...)

Chú ý: Động từ to be phải chia là were ở tất cả các ngôi.

Eg: If I were rich, I would travel around the world.

(I am not rich) (I'm not going to travel around the world)

3. Type 3: Điều kiện không thể thực hiện được ở quá khứ

if + S + past perfect tense	S + would + V (perfect infinitive - have done)
-----------------------------	--

Eg: If he had studied harder for that test, he would have passed it.

(he didn't study harder and he didn't pass the test)

If I hadn't been in a hurry, I wouldn't have had an accident.

(I was in a hurry) (I had an accident)

Câu giả định với wish /if only

- **Trái với hiện tại** (mong ước một sự thay đổi tình trạng ở hiện tại)

S + wish + S + Verb (Past simple)

Eg: I wish I **were** rich /I wish I **had** a car /I wish I **could** speak English well.

- **Trái với quá khứ** (mong ước một sự thay đổi tình trạng ở quá khứ, thể hiện sự hối tiếc về điều đã xảy ra trong quá khứ)

S + wish + S + Verb (Past Perfect)

Eg: I wish I **hadn't** lost my bike last night. /I wish I **had studied** harder last year.

- **Trái với tương lai** (mong muốn một việc gì xảy ra hoặc ai đó làm việc gì ở tương lai)

S + wish + S + would / could + Verb (infinitive)

Eg: I wish she **would come** /I wish it **would stop** raining.

Cấu trúc trên còn diễn tả sự phàn nàn về thói quen xấu của ai đó

Eg: I wish you wouldn't make so much noise in the class.

* **Cấu trúc: Wish + To-Inf** (wish = want = expect) diễn tả sự mong muốn làm việc gì

Eg: I wish **to pass** the exam

NOTE: If only = I wish Eg: If only I **were** rich. If only I **had passed** my exams

Chú ý: Lược bỏ *if* trong câu điều kiện, chúng ta theo cấu trúc sau:

Type 1: Should you go out, please buy me some stamps. = if you go out, please buy me some stamps

Type 2: Were I the president of America, I wouldn't have the war on Iraq. = If I were the President, I wouldn't have the war on Iraq

Type 3: Had she studied hard, she would have passed the examination, last year. = If she had studied hard, she would have passed the examination, last year.

❖ **Mixed conditional sentences: Câu điều kiện hỗn hợp**

Câu điều kiện hỗn hợp là loại câu mà có thời gian ở hai vế (vế điều kiện - if clause và vế kết quả - result clause) không cùng một thời gian với nhau. Các cấu trúc của câu điều kiện hỗn hợp:

* **IF- CLAUSE (PAST PERFECT) + RESULT CLAUSE (Would be/ Verb (inf))**

Đây là câu điều kiện kết hợp giữa loại 2 và loại 3, dùng để diễn đạt một điều kiện không có thật ở quá khứ và kết quả tương ứng không có thật của nó ở hiện tại:

Examples:

- If I **had won** the lottery, I **would be** rich.

(BUT I DIDN'T WIN THE LOTTERY IN THE PAST AND I AM NOT RICH NOW.)

- If I **had taken** French in high school, I **would have** more job opportunities.

(BUT I DIDN'T TAKE FRENCH IN HIGH SCHOOL AND I DON'T HAVE MANY JOB OPPORTUNITIES.)

- If she **had been born** in the United States, she **wouldn't need** a visa to work here.

(BUT SHE WASN'T BORN IN THE UNITED STATES AND SHE DOES NEED A VISA NOW TO WORK HERE.)

* **IF- CLAUSE (PAST PERFECT) + RESULT C LAUSE (Would be + V-ing)**

Đây là câu điều kiện dùng để diễn đạt một điều kiện không có thật ở quá khứ và kết quả tương ứng không có thật của nó sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai.

Examples:

- If she **had signed up** for the ski trip last week, she **would be joining** us tomorrow.

(BUT SHE DIDN'T SIGN UP FOR THE SKI TRIP LAST WEEK AND SHE ISN'T GOING TO JOIN US TOMORROW.)

- If Mark **had gotten** the job instead of Joe, he **would be moving** to Shanghai.

(BUT MARK DIDN'T GET THE JOB AND MARK IS NOT GOING TO MOVE TO SHANGHAI.)

- If Darren **hadn't lost** his money in that gamble, he **would go** to Mexico with us next month.

(BUT DARREN LOST HIS MONEY IN THAT GAMBLE AND HE WON'T GO TO MEXICO WITH US NEXT MONTH.)

* **IF- CLAUSE (PAST SIMPLE) + RESULT CLAUSE (Would have done)**

Đây là câu điều kiện dùng để diễn đạt một điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại và kết quả tương ứng không có thật của nó ở quá khứ.

Examples:

- If I **were** rich, I **would have bought** that Ford car we saw yesterday.

(BUT I AM NOT CURRENTLY RICH AND THAT IS WHY I DIDN'T BUY THE FORD CAR YESTERDAY.)

- If Sam **spoke** Russian, he **would have translated** the letter for you.

(BUT SAM DOESN'T SPEAK RUSSIAN AND THAT IS WHY HE DIDN'T TRANSLATE THE LETTER.)

- If I didn't have to work so much, I would have gone to the party last night.

(BUT I HAVE TO WORK A LOT AND THAT IS WHY I DIDN'T GO TO THE PARTY LAST NIGHT)

*** IF- CLAUSE (PAST SIMPLE) + RESULT CLAUSE (Would be / V(inf))**

Đây là câu điều kiện dùng để diễn đạt một điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại và kết quả tương ứng không có thật của nó ở tương lai.

Examples:

- If I **didn't have** so much vacation time. I **wouldn't go** with you on the cruise to Alaska next week.

(BUT I DO HAVE A LOT OF VACATION TIME AND I WILL GO ON THE TRIP NEXT WEEK.)

- If Cindy **were** more creative, the company **would send** her to New York to work on the new advertising campaign.

(BUT CINDY IS NOT CREATIVE AND THE COMPANY WON'T SEND HER TO NEW YORK TO WORK ON THE NEW CAMPAIGN.)

- If Dan **weren't** so nice, he **wouldn't be tutoring** you in math tonight.

(BUT DAN IS NICE AND HE IS GOING TO TUTOR YOU TONIGHT.)

*** IF- CLAUSE (PAST CONJUNCTIVE) + RESULT CLAUSE (Would have done)**

Đây là câu điều kiện dùng để diễn đạt một điều kiện không có thật ở tương lai và kết quả tương ứng không có thật của nó ở quá khứ.

Examples:

- If I **weren't going** on my business trip next week, I **would have accepted** that new assignment at work.

(BUT I AM GOING TO GO ON A BUSINESS TRIP NEXT WEEK, AND THAT IS WHY I DIDN'T ACCEPT THAT NEW ASSIGNMENT AT WORK.)

- If my parents **weren't coming** this weekend, I **would have planned** a nice trip just for the two of us to Napa Valley.

(BUT MY PARENTS ARE GOING TO COME THIS WEEKEND, AND THAT IS WHY I DIDN'T PLAN A TRIP FOR THE TWO OF US TO NAPA VALLEY)

- If Donna **weren't making** us a big dinner tonight, I **would have suggested** that we go to that nice Italian restaurant.

(BUT SHE IS GOING TO MAKE US A BIG DINNER TONIGHT, AND THAT IS WHY I DIDN'T SUGGEST THAT WE GO TO THAT NICE ITALIAN RESTAURANT.)

*** IF- CLAUSE (PAST CONJUNCTIVE) + RESULT CLAUSE (Would have done)**

Đây là câu điều kiện dùng để diễn đạt một điều kiện không có thật ở tương lai và kết quả tương ứng không có thật của nó ở hiện tại.

Examples:

- If I **were going** to that concert tonight, I **would be** very excited.

(BUT I AM NOT GOING TO GO TO THAT CONCERT TONIGHT AND THAT IS WHY I AM NOT EXCITED.)

- If Sandy **were giving** a speech tomorrow, she **would be** very nervous.

(BUT SANDY IS NOT GOING TO GIVE A SPEECH TOMORROW AND THAT IS WHY SHE IS NOT NERVOUS.)

- If Seb **didn't come** with us to the desert, everyone **would be** very disappointed.

(BUT SEB WILL COME WITH US TO THE DESERT AND THAT IS WHY EVERYONE IS SO HAPPY.)

Một số mẫu câu diễn tả câu điều kiện

* **Unless + positive = if... not:** Trừ phi, nếu không.

Eg: You will be late unless you start at once.

* **But for that + unreal condition:** Nếu không thì

Mệnh đề sau nó phải lùi một thời.

+ Hiện tại: My father pays my fee, but for that I couldn't be here.

+ Quá khứ: My car broke down, but for that we would have been here in time.

* **Otherwise + real condition:** Kéo, nếu không thì.

We must be back before midnight otherwise I will be locked out.

* **Otherwise + unreal condition:** Kéo, nếu không thì.

Sau nó phải là điều kiện không thể thực hiện được, mệnh đề sau nó lùi một thời.

+ Hiện tại: Her father supports her finance otherwise she couldn't conduct these experiments.
(But she can with her father's support).

+ Quá khứ: I used a computer, otherwise I would have taken longer with these calculations
(But he didn't take any longer).

* Lưu ý: Trong tiếng Anh thông tục (colloquial English) người ta dùng *or else* để thay thế cho *otherwise*.

* **Provided/Providing that:** Với điều kiện là, miễn là (= as long as)

You can camp here providing that you leave no mess.

* **Suppose/Supposing = What... if:** Giả sử.... thì sao, Nếu....thì sao.

Suppose the plane is late? = What (will happen) if the plane is late?

* **as if / as though**

- Trái với hiện tại: **AS IF / AS THOUGH + S + Verb (Past Simple/Past continuous)**

- Trái với quá khứ: **AS IF / AS THOUGH + S + Verb (Past Perfect)**

II. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Give the right form of the verb in brackets to complete the following sentences.

1. We'll go to the beach if it.....(be) fine tomorrow.
2. Had it not been for the goalkeeper, the team.....(lose) the match.
3. Supposed that I.....(drop) in his house last night, I.....(tell) him the news.
4. If you aren't going to live in the house, why don't you sell it? If I.....(have) a house I couldn't use I.....(sell) it at once.
5. He'll come and help you if he.....(finish) his work before 5 p. m.
6. If I see him I.....(give) him a lift.
7. They.....(play) football if it.....(not rain) now.
8. The police.....(arrest) him if they catch him.
9. He must tell the truth, otherwise nobody.....(believe) a word he says.
10. Mr Black will buy a new house if he.....(have) enough money.
11. Provided that I have free time, I.....(come) to visit you.

12. It's very noisy next door. It sounds as if they(have) a party.
13. That house is shaking. It looks as if it(fall) down.
14. Ann coughs a lot. She sounds as though she.....(have) a cold.
15. I don't like Norma. She talks as if she(know) everything.
16. Providing that you kindly sit down I.....(make) enquiries for you.
17. Unless you.....(be) more careful you'll have an accident.
18. She (take, not).....care of the children for us next weekend if her business trip (be, not)canceled.
19. Tom is not going to come to dinner tomorrow because you insulted him yesterday. But, he (come).....if you (insult)..... him.
20. Mane (be).....happy now if she (give, not).....up her career when she got married.
21. Dr. Mercer (accept)the research grant at Harvard if he (take, not).....6 months off to spend more time with his family.
22. Professor Schmitz (talk, not).....so much about the Maasai tribe in the last conference if she (be, not).....an expert on African tribal groups.
23. I (be, not).....unemployed now if I (have, not).....a disagreement with my boss and I (be, not).....red.
24. Nicole (speak, not).....Chinese fluently if she (live, not).....in China for ten years.
25. Ok. I (help).....you study for your test if you (spend, not).....the last two weeks partying and wasting time.
26. But, Eleanor and Ben (go).....skiing with us this year if Eleanor (have, not, just).....a baby.
27. If I (be, not).....completely exhausted now, I (go).....with you to the movies tonight.
28. She (be).....worried about the conference tomorrow if she (give).....a speech.
29. Frank (go).....to the graduation ceremony tomorrow if he (break).....his leg snowboarding last week.
30. But for my teacher's help, I (not win).....that competition.

Exercise 2: Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. I didn't have an umbrella with me and so I got wet.
I wouldn't.....
2. I'll call the police if you don't leave me alone!
Unless.....
3. In the snowy weather we don't go to school.
If.....
4. Without Jack's help, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.
If.....
5. You drink too much coffee, that's why you can't sleep.
If you.....
6. You press this button to stop the machine.
If.....
7. Make me some coffee, and I'll give you one of my biscuits.
If.....
8. If you hadn't told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed.

Unless.....

9. If you see Peter, tell him he should be here at 8.00.

If you should.....

10. I wouldn't accept if you asked me to marry you!

If you were.....

Exercise 3: Complete the second sentence in each pair, using the word given, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. I didn't know his address in London, so I didn't visit him.

visited If I had known.....him.

2. If you don't speak clearly, the audience won't understand you.

else You have to.....understand you.

3. Angela, you're not old enough otherwise you would be able to get a motorbike,

were Angela.....a motorbike.

4. I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city if they offered me a higher salary.

condition I wouldn't mind.....me a higher salary.

5. If he decides to go shopping, there's a chance that I will go with him.

might If he.....with him.

6. We can have dinner here unless you want to go to a restaurant.

want If.....dinner here.

7. Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so nobody was seriously injured.

not If.....been seriously injured.

8. I'd like to travel all over the world but I don't have enough money.

would I.....all over the world if I had enough money.

Exercise 4: Rewrite the sentence given, using the word given so that the meaning stays the same.

1. We won't go away if the weather is bad.

UNLESS.....

2. I didn't have money so I didn't buy a new shirt.

WOULD.....

3. If they offered you the job, would you accept?

WERE.....

4. If you are in London by any chance, come and see me.

SHOULD.....

5. If you do have any free time, could you give me a ring?

HAPPEN.....

6. Without you, I would have given up years ago.

BEEN.....

7. If Pauline hadn't been interested, the project would have been abandoned.

BUT FOR.....

8. What would you do if you found some buried treasure?

WERE.....

9. Dick is in prison now because a detective recognized him.

IF.....

10. The fire was brought under control thanks to the night-watchman.

IT HADN'T.....

Exercise 5: Rewrite the sentences, using the word given, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. Jeremy regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.

WISHES.....

2. If you had heard the politician speak, you'd think he had won the election.

THOUGH.....

3. I think you should get a haircut.

ABOUT.....

4. I can't stand Betty borrowing my clothes without asking me first.

RATHER.....

5. It's a pity governments spend so much money on nuclear weapons.

WOULDN'T.....

6. I advise you to see the dentist today; otherwise your toothache will get worse.

BETTER.....

7. Jim would really like to participate in the debate, but he can't.

COULD.....

8. Susan doesn't like watching TV in the evenings, she'd rather read magazines.

TO.....

9. You should have waited for us.

BETTER.....

10. He should start studying hard.

FOR.....It's

11. We didn't want to leave the party so early.

LEFT.....

12. It would have been better to have hired a car during the holiday.

ONLY.....

13. We'd prefer to go shopping rather than stay at home.

RATHER.....

14. I would like to know how to play the piano.

KNEW.....

15. Mr. Smith wanted me to finish the reports yesterday but I couldn't.

SOONER.....

Exercise 6: Correct the following sentences if necessary by taking out the unnecessary word.

1. Christine would rather not to work overtime this week.

2. Suppose you hadn't found your car keys, what would you have done?

3. It's high time he had tidied up his room.

4. It's time for the children went to bed.

5. I would rather not Tom didn't live so far away.

6. I'd rather we have visited a museum.

7. I wish we had lived in a bigger house because then I'd have a room of my own.

8. He acted as if he knew everything.

9. We'd better to fix the leaking tap tomorrow.

10. If only I hadn't broken my leg while playing football.

PHẦN 6: CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH (SUBJUNCTIVE)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Câu giả định hay còn gọi là câu cầu khiến là loại câu đối tượng thứ nhất muốn đối tượng thứ hai làm một việc gì. Câu giả định có tính chất cầu khiến chứ không mang tính ép buộc như câu mệnh lệnh. Trong câu giả định, người ta dùng dạng nguyên thể không có *to* của các động từ sau một số động từ chính mang tính cầu khiến. Thường có *that* trong câu giả định trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt.

* **would rather (that) + S + V (bare infinitive)**...

- Ngữ pháp hiện đại ngày nay đặc biệt là ngữ pháp Mỹ cho phép dùng *would rather* mà không cần dùng *that* trong loại câu này.

Eg: We would rather (~~that~~) he not move to Hanoi.

- Ngoài ra, chúng ta còn dùng cấu trúc: **S + would rather sbd did st**: thà rằng ai đó làm gì thì hơn

Eg: We would rather he wasn't going to move to Hanoi.

I would rather you didn't talk loudly.

- Phân biệt các cấu trúc trên với: **S + would rather do st**: thà rằng làm gì hơn.

S + would rather do st than do st: thà rằng làm gì hơn làm gì.

Eg: I would rather stay at home.

I would rather stay at home than go out with you tonight.

* * **Một số động từ trong bảng sau đòi hỏi mệnh đề sau nó phải có 'that' và động từ động từ sau chủ ngữ 2 ở dạng nguyên thể bỏ to.**

Advise: khuyên

Ask: yêu cầu

Command: ra lệnh

Decree:

ra sắc lệnh

demand: yêu cầu

insist: nài nỉ

move: kích động

order: ra lệnh

Prefer: thích hơn
cầu

Propose: đề nghị

recommend: giới thiệu

Request: yêu

Require: đòi hỏi

Stipulate: đặt điều kiện

Suggest: đề nghị

Urge:

thúc giục

Động từ sau chủ ngữ 2 ở dạng nguyên thể không chia bỏ *to*. Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định đặt *not* sau chủ ngữ 2 trước nguyên thể bỏ *to*.

Subject + verb + that + subject + [verb in simple form] +...

Eg: The doctor suggested that his patient do morning exercises. /

The doctor suggested that his patient not do morning exercises.

- Nếu bỏ *that* đi thì chủ ngữ 2 sẽ trở về dạng tân ngữ và động từ sau nó trở về dạng nguyên thể có *to*, câu mất tính chất giả định, trở thành một dạng mệnh lệnh thức gián tiếp.

Eg: The doctor suggested his patient to do morning exercises.

The doctor suggested his patient not to do morning exercises.

Chú ý: Trong ngữ pháp Anh-Anh trước động từ ở mệnh đề 2 thường có *should*. người Anh chỉ bỏ *should* khi sau nó là động từ *to be* nhưng ngữ pháp Anh-Mỹ không dùng *should* cho toàn bộ động từ ở mệnh đề 2.

* **Một số tính từ trong bảng sau đòi hỏi mệnh đề sau nó phải có 'that' và động từ động từ sau chủ ngữ 2 ở dạng nguyên thể bỏ to.**

Advised: khuyên	Important: quan trọng	Mandatory: có tính
Recommended: giới thiệu		
Necessary: cần thiết	obligatory: bắt buộc, cưỡng bách	bắt buộc
suggested: gợi ý	urgent: khẩn cấp	proposed: đề nghị Required: đòi hỏi
		Imperative: mệnh lệnh

Chú ý rằng trong bảng này có một số tính từ là phân từ 2 cấu tạo từ các động từ ở bảng trên. Nếu muốn cấu tạo phủ định đặt *not* sau chủ ngữ 2 trước nguyên thể bỏ *to*.

It + be + adj + that + S + [verb in simple form]

EG: It is necessary that he learn English. / It is necessary that he not learn English.

EG: It has been proposed that we raise money for that campaign.

It has been proposed that we not raise money for that campaign.

Nếu bỏ *that* đi thì chủ ngữ 2 sẽ biến thành tân ngữ sau giới từ *for*, động từ trở về dạng nguyên thể có *to* và câu mất tính chất giả định trở thành dạng mệnh lệnh thức gián tiếp.

EG: It is necessary for him learn English. / It is necessary for him not to learn English.

EG: It has been proposed for us to raise money for that campaign.

It has been proposed for us not to raise money for that campaign.

Câu giả định dùng với 2 loại trên thường được dùng trong các văn bản hoặc thư giao dịch diễn đạt lời đề nghị từ phía A → B mà không có tính bắt buộc.

Không chỉ có động từ và tính từ mới được dùng theo dạng này, tất cả các danh từ xuất phát từ những động từ và tính từ trên đều buộc mệnh đề sau nó phải ở dạng giả định, nếu như nó diễn đạt các yếu tố trên.

There is suggestion from the boss that John work hard.

It is recommendation that his wife be present at the court.

*** Thể giả định trong một số trường hợp khác**

- Dùng để diễn đạt một ước muốn hoặc một lời nguyện rủa. thường bao hàm các thể lực siêu nhiên.

God be with you = Good bye. : Tạm biệt, chúa sẽ đi theo bạn.

Curse this toad: Chết tiệt cái con cóc này.

- Dùng với động từ *May* trong một số trường hợp đặc biệt sau:

- Come what may : Dù thế nào chẳng nữa, dù bất cứ truyện gì.
- Come what may we will stand by you. : Dù thế nào đi chẳng nữa, chúng tôi luôn bên bạn.
- May as well not do sth.... if. . = Có thể đừng...nếu. ... không.

You may as well not come if you can't be on time. : Bạn có thể đừng đến, nếu bạn không thể đúng giờ.

- May/Might (just) as well do smt = Chẳng mất gì mà lại không, mất gì của bỏ.

Since nobody wants that job, we might (just) as well let him have it.

Vì không ai thích việc này, mình chẳng mất gì mà lại không cho hắn ta làm nó

- May diễn đạt một lời đề nghị mà người nói cho rằng chưa chắc nó đã được thực hiện:

The sign on the lawn says clearly that people may not walk on the grass.

(không dùng *should* trong trường hợp này).

- **May + S + link verb + adj** hoặc **May + S + verb + complement** (Cầu chúc cho).

May you both very happy: Chúc các bạn bách niên giai lão.

May the conference be successful: Chúc hội nghị thành công rực rỡ.

Long may our parents live to help us: Chúc cho bố mẹ sống lâu để giúp chúng ta.

- * **If need be = If necessary** = Nếu cần: If need be, we can take another road

- Dùng với động từ to be, bỏ to sau if để chỉ một sự giả định chưa được phân định rõ ràng là đúng hay sai.
- If that be right, then it would be no defence for this man to say he's innocent.
- Let it be me: Giả sử đó là tôi, giả phải tay tôi.
- Be that as it may... = whether that is true or not... = Cho dù là phải thế hay không.

EG: Be that as it may, you have to accept it.

- Then so be it: Cứ phải vậy thôi.

If we have to pay \$2.000, then so be it (thì cứ phải trả thôi)

*** Câu giả định dùng với *it + to be + time***

- ***It's time (for sb) to do smt.*** đã đến lúc ai phải làm gì (Thời gian vừa vặn, không mang tính giả định).

It's time for me to get to the airport: Đã đến lúc tôi phải ra sân bay.

- ***It's time (hightime/about time) (for sb) did smt.*** đã đến lúc mà (thời gian đã trễ, mang tính giả định)

It's time I got to the airport / It's hightime the city government did smt to stop the traffic jam.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the following sentences.

- I suggest that he.....up his mind quickly or else he would lose his opportunity.
A. makes B. make C. made D. is to make
- His friends suggest that the.....for that job.
A. applies B. apply C. applying D. will apply .
- It's high time we.....about our environment.
A. did B. do C. should do D. to do
- It is necessary that children.....of their old parents.
A. to take care B. takes care C. took care D. take are
- It is essential that all students.....best use of learning facilities in the university.
A. make B. makes C. made D making
- The clients demanded that the post office.....earlier.
A. opening B. opened C. open D. to open
- It is necessary that he.....a certificate in English?
A. will get B. gets C. get D. would get
- I demand that I.....to retake the exam.
A. be allowed B. am allowed C. will be allowed D. were allowed
- The teacher ordered that all pupils.....inside their classroom
A. stay B. stays C. will stay D. would stay
- It is essential that Mai.....speak English.
A. is able to B. was able to
C. be able to D. must be able to
- He suggested that I.....kind to others.
A. am B. was C. be D. would be
- My doctor insisted.....
A. that I diet B. me to diet
C. for me dieting D. for me to diet
- Evefyone urged that Bill.....his education.

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| A. continue | B. continuing | C. to continue | D. continued |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
14. The director requests that all packages.....at the central office.
- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
| A. to mail | B. be mailed | C. to be mailed | D. mailing |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|------------|
15. Long may the Queen.....
- | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------------|
| A. live | B. lives | C. living | D. would live. |
|---------|----------|-----------|----------------|
16. It is important that you.....to our meeting on time.
- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|---------------|---------|
| A. to come | B. should come | C. would come | D. come |
|------------|----------------|---------------|---------|
17. It is imperative that you.....careful on construction site.
- | | | | |
|----------|---------|--------|-------|
| A. to be | B. were | C. are | D. be |
|----------|---------|--------|-------|
18. It is advisable that she.....care of her ill mother.
- | | | | |
|------------|----------|---------|---------|
| A. to take | B. takes | C. take | D. took |
|------------|----------|---------|---------|
19. The teacher ordered that the students.....talking.
- | | | | |
|---------|----------------|------------|-----------|
| A. stop | B. should stop | C. stopped | D. A or B |
|---------|----------------|------------|-----------|
20. She insisted that we.....our summer vacation in the countryside.
- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------------|-----------|
| A. spend | B. spent | C. should spend | D. A or C |
|----------|----------|-----------------|-----------|
21. May you.....happy all your life!
- | | | | |
|--------|---------|-------|----------|
| A. are | B. were | C. be | D. to be |
|--------|---------|-------|----------|
22. "Should I begin typing these letters?" "I suggest.....bookkeeping first".
- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| A. you finished | B. you to finish | C. you finish | D. you will finish |
|-----------------|------------------|---------------|--------------------|
23. It is suggestion that my brother.....when our family are on holiday.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|
| A. not be working | B. be working | C. shouldn't work | D. not work |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------|
24. "Have you received the gift sent from London yet?".
"No, but It's possible that it.....in a few days"
- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|---------|-------------|
| A. will come | B. comes | C. come | D. has come |
|--------------|----------|---------|-------------|
25. I'd rather you.....that present.
- | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|----------------|---------|
| A. not give | B. wouldn'd give | C. didn't give | D. give |
|-------------|------------------|----------------|---------|

Exercise 2: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets to complete the following sentences.

- It's important that she (remember).....to take her medicine twice a day.
- I suggest that Frank (read).....the directions carefully before assembling the bicycle. He doesn't want the wheels to fall off while he is riding down a hill
- Mrs. Finkelstein demanded that the heater (repair)immediately. Her apartment was freezing.
- It's vital that the United States (focus).....on improving Its public education system. What we do now will affect our country for generations to come.
- The monk insisted that the tourists (enter).....the temple until they had removed their shoes.
- I am not going to sit here and let her insult me. I demand that she immediately (apologize) for what she just said.
- Judy asked that we (attend).....her graduation ceremony next week.
- Was it really necessary that (sit) I.....there watching you the entire time you were rehearsing for the play? It was really boring watching you repeat the scenes over and over again.
- It is important to remember that Janine (think).....very differently from you. She may not agree to the changes you have made in the organization of the company.

10. It's a little difficult to find the restaurant. I propose that we all (drive).....together so that nobody gets lost along the way.
11. The woman insisted that the lost child (take).....to store's information desk so his parents could be paged.
12. The nutritionist recommended that Sally (reduce)her daily fat intake.
13. The environmental leader felt it was extremely important that the people of the city (allow)to voice their concerns over the new hotel being built on the bay.
14. She told me that the government (regulate).....the airline industry. I don't know if that is true.
15. The sign at the pool recommended that you (swim).....after eating a large meal.
16. It is necessary that a life guard (monitor).....the swimming pool while the children are taking their swimming lessons.
17. The sun is scorching today. I suggest you (put).....on sunblock immediately before you get a sun burn.
18. John insists that Sarah (invite).....to the wedding; otherwise he will not attend.
19. It is the recommendation that we (send).....our old clothes to poor people in the remote area.
20. It is imperative that the world (work) towards a solution to global warming before the weather patterns of the world are disrupted irreparably.

PHẦN 7: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSE)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Tiếng Anh có 2 loại câu:

- *Câu đơn giản*: là câu có 1 thành phần và chỉ cần như vậy câu cũng đã đủ nghĩa.
- *Câu phức hợp*: là loại câu có 2 thành phần (2 mệnh đề) chính/phụ nối với nhau bằng một từ gọi là đại từ quan hệ và mệnh đề quan hệ chính là mệnh đề phụ làm rõ nghĩa cho mệnh đề chính.

1. Đại từ quan hệ và mệnh đề quan hệ (relative pronouns and relative clauses)

Who, Whom, which, whose, that dùng để thay thế cho danh từ đứng trước nó và nối kết hai mệnh đề với nhau.

Đại từ QH/ Chức năng	Chỉ người	Chỉ vật	Ví dụ
Chủ ngữ	Who, that	Which, that	Yesterday I met the man <i>who/that</i> sold me that painting. The bag <i>which/that</i> is green is mine.
Tân ngữ	Who, whom, that	Which, that	The woman <i>who(m)/that</i> you talked yesterday is my aunt. The film <i>which/that</i> I watched yesterday is interesting.
Sở hữu	Whose	Of which/ whose	The boy <i>whose father died of a lung cancer</i> looks very miserable. I read a novel <i>the content of which /whose content</i> is very magic.

*** Chú ý:** Những trường hợp dùng ‘that’ mà không dùng ‘which’. Dùng ‘that’ khi câu mang ý nhấn mạnh hơn.

Người ta dùng *that* chứ không dùng *which* khi:

+ Đứng trước nó là một tính từ so sánh bậc nhất + danh từ

He is the best student that has got that prize.

+ Khi đứng trước nó là một số các đại từ thêm chỉ như **all, some, any, anything, everything, much, little, nothing** hay một số tính từ như: **only; unique; mere**,... hoặc sau một số danh từ liệt kê.

Eg: I met many people, their cattle and vehicles that went to the fair.

- I want to see all that he drew yesterday.

- All the students' best paintings that will be exhibited.

2. Trạng từ quan hệ và mệnh đề quan hệ (Relative adverbs and relative clauses)

* Trạng từ quan hệ '**where**' dùng để mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn đứng trước nó.

Eg 1: I always miss the small village where I was born and grew up.

= I always miss the small village in which I was born and grew up.

Eg 2: She still remember the airport where she first arrived.

= She still remember the airport at which she first arrived.

Eg 3: He angrily broke the table where she put her ex-husband's letters.

= He angrily broke the table on which she put her ex-husband s letters.

Note: Where = in which; where = on which; where = at which.

* Trạng từ quan hệ '**when**' dùng để mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ thời gian đứng trước nó.

Eg 1: She can't forget the day when they first met each other.

= She can't forget the day on which they first met each other.

Eg 2: 7. 00 was remarkable time when we signed our contract.

= 7. 00 was remarkable time at which we signed our contract.

Eg 3: December is an important month when we have a lot of festivals.

= December is an important month in which we have a lot of festivals.

Note: When = in which; when = on which; when = at which

* Trạng từ quan hệ '**why**' dùng để mở đầu cho mệnh đề quan hệ thay thế cho danh từ '**the reason**' đứng trước nó.

Eg. I didn't know the reason **why** you left me.

3. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining relative clauses) và mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (Non-defining relative clauses)

* **Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining relative clauses)**

- Là loại mệnh đề bắt buộc phải có mặt ở trong câu, nếu bỏ đi câu sẽ mất ý nghĩa ban đầu. Nên dùng *that* làm chủ ngữ cho loại câu này mặc dù *which* vẫn được chấp nhận. Câu phụ thường đứng xen vào giữa câu chính hoặc nối liền với câu chính và không tách rời khỏi nó bởi bất cứ dấu phẩy nào. Trong ví dụ sau nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề phụ được gạch chân thì câu sẽ mang ý nghĩa hoàn toàn khác:

EG: - The man who sits next me in my English class is a manager of a big company.

- The girl who loved him very much killed herself last night.

* **Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (Non-defining relative clauses)**

- Là loại mệnh đề mang thông tin phụ và có tính chất bổ sung thêm thông tin, chứ không có dùng để mô tả, xác định và nhận diện danh từ đứng trước nó, vì thế trong câu, nếu bỏ nó đi câu không mất nghĩa ban đầu. Câu phụ thường đứng chen vào giữa câu chính và bắt buộc phải tách khỏi câu chính bằng 2 dấu phẩy. Xem hai ví dụ sau:

Eg 1: His best friends, whom he belives most, has left him.

Eg 2: I've given his address to Mrs Hoa, who was his old classmate.

Chú ý: Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định thường được dùng khi danh từ nó thay thế ở trong những trường hợp cụ thể như sau:

+ Đi kèm với các từ sở hữu và được xem là duy nhất, có thể xác định dễ dàng.

Eg: This is my father, who is very strict to me.

+ Đi kèm với các danh từ chỉ tên riêng.

Eg: Kim Lien village, which always reminds me of my sweet childhood, has become a tourist place now.

+ Đi kèm với các đại từ chỉ định 'this, that, these, those,...'

Eg: These computers, which our school are using, were the first generation of computer.

+ Khi danh từ được miêu tả rõ ràng.

Eg: The 8 o'clock news is always very brief.

*** Tầm quan trọng của việc sử dụng dấu phẩy đối với mệnh đề phụ**

- Ở những mệnh đề phụ bắt buộc, khi không dùng dấu phẩy tức là mệnh đề phụ xác định một giới hạn đối với danh từ đứng trước trong mệnh đề chính.

Eg: - The travelers who knew about the construction took another road.

- The students who have passed this test will take an interview.

Đối với những mệnh đề phụ không bắt buộc, khi có dấu phẩy ngăn cách thì nó không xác định giới hạn đối với danh từ đứng trước nó.

Eg: - The travelers, who knew about the flood, took another road.

- The students who have passed this test will take an interview.

4. Mệnh đề quan hệ rút gọn

4.1. Relative clauses thay thế bởi present participle phrase

Eg 1. Those people **who are taking photos over there** come from London.

→ Those people taking photos over there come from London.

Eg 2: The teachers who teach in mountainous areas should be paid higher salary.

→ The teachers teaching in mountainous areas should be paid higher salary.

- Mệnh đề này thường mang nghĩa chủ động.

4.2. Relative clauses thay thế bởi past participle phrase.

Eg 1. The boy **who was given** a present is my son.

→ The boy **given a present** is my son.

Eg 2. The motorbikes which were made in Japan are better ones.

→ The motorbikes made in Japan are better ones.

- Mệnh đề này thường mang nghĩa bị động

(Chú ý: Có thể bỏ đại từ quan hệ khi nó làm tân ngữ trong câu)

Eg: I enjoy the book **which / that** you lent me yesterday.

→ I enjoy the book you lent me yesterday.

4.3. Relative clauses thay thế bởi to- infinitive: trong các câu có sử dụng: the first, the second, the last,...

Eg 1. Neil Armstrong was **the first person who landed** on the moon.

→ Neil Armstrong was **the first person to land** on the moon.

Eg 2. Mai was the first girl in my school who got that scholarship.

→ Mai was the first girl in my school to get that scholarship.

5. Cách sử dụng *All, Both, Some, Several, Most, Few + Of + Whom/ Which*

Xem các ví dụ sau:

Eg 1. Her sons, both of whom are studying abroad, call her every week, (không được nói *both of them*)

Eg 2. The buses, some of which were overload luggage, were stopped by the police.

Tuyệt đối không được dùng đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ: *them, us* trong trường hợp này.

6. What (*the things that*) có thể làm tân ngữ cho mệnh đề phụ cùng lúc làm chủ ngữ cho mệnh đề chính/ hoặc làm chủ ngữ của cả 2 mệnh đề chính, phụ

What happened to him yesterday might happen to us tomorrow.

7. “That” đứng đầu câu làm chủ ngữ và đi sau nó là một mệnh đề bổ ngữ.

Eg: - That I passed my examination made my parents happy.

- That he refused to marry him broke his heart.

- That he became famous surprised everyone in my village.

- That she got scholarship was understandable.

8. Which thay thế cho một mệnh đề.

Eg: Sally lost her job. That wasn't surprising.

→ Sally lost her job, which wasn't surprising)

She usually comes to class late. That upsets her teachers.

→ She usually comes to class late, which upsets her teachers.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the following sentences.

- That book is by a famous anthropologist. It's about the people in Samoa.....for two years.
A. that she lived
B. that she lived among them
C. among whom she lived
D. where she lived among them
- The missing man's family is desperately seeking anyone.....information about his activities or whereabouts.
A. has
B. having
C. who have
D. have
- The publishers expect that the new biography of Simon Bolivar will be brought people.....in Latin American history.
A. who they are interested
B. are interested
C. interested
D. they are interested
- I have always wanted to visit Paris,of France.
A. is the capital
B. which the capital is
C. that is the capital
D. the capital
- The chemistry book.....was a little expensive.
A. that I bought it
B. I bought that
C. what I bought
D. I bought
- Have you ever met a man.....over there? ~ Yes, I do.
A. stands
B. standing
C. is standing
D. who he is standing
- Do you have the book.....the teacher? - Yes. I do.
A. that it belongs to
B. to which belongs to
C. to which belongs
D. that belongs to

8. The voters were overwhelmingly against the candidate.....proposals called for higher taxes.
A. who his B. whose C. whom he had D. that his
9. Do you remember Mr. Goddard, taught us English composition?
~ I certainly do.
A. who B. whom C. that D. which
10. I have three brothers,are businessmen.
A. that all of them B. who they all
C. all of whom D. who all of them
11. Were you able to locate the person.....wallet you found? ~ Luckily, yes.
A. which B. that his C. whose D. that's
12. Some fish is frozen, but.....is best.
A. fish is fresh B. fresh fish
C. fish fresh D. fresh fish is caught
13. Why do you get up at 4 A. M. today? ~ Because it's the only time.....without being interrupted.
A. when I can work on my book B. when I can work on my book at
C. when I can work on my book then D. at when I can work on my book
14. You seem so happy today. ~ I am. You are looking at a person.....has just been accepted into medical school.
A. who B. who she C. whom she D. whom
15. The movie.....last night was terrific. ~ What's it about?
A. I went B. I went to it C. I went to D. that I went
16. Many people lost their homes in the earthquake. The government needs to establish more shelters to care for those.....have homes.
A. who doesn't B. who don't C. which doesn't D. which don't
17. The problem.....never occurs.
A. I had expected it B. who I had expected
C. I had expected D. that I had expected it
18. I had to drive to the factory to pick up my brother,car wouldn't start.
A. who his B. who C. who's D. whose
19. I read a book about Picasso,
A. is a Spanish painter B. a Spanish painter
C. who a Spanish painter is D. that is a Spanish painter
20. The people.....the acrobat turn circles in the air were horrified when he missed the outstretched hands of his partner and fell to his death.
A. watched B. watch C. watching D. were watching
21. My writing has improved a lot in this class. ~ Mine has, too. All the students.....do well in writing.
A. whom Mr. David teaches them B. which Mr. David teaches
C. that Mr. David teaches them D. Mr. David teaches
22. Have you seen the place.....the graduation ceremony will be held? ~ Yes. It's big enough to hold 5,000 people.
A. in that B. where C. is where that D. which

23. How's your class this term? ~ Great. I have seventeen students, most of.....speak English very well.
 A. who B. those C. whom D. which
24. Will everyone like the book? – No, Only people.....interested in anthropology.
 A. are B. who are C. in whom are D. that is
25. How did you enjoy your dinner with Mr. Jackson? ~ It was boring. He talked only about himself,almost put us to sleep.
 A. which B. that C. who D. that he
26. My grandfather,a wise man, has greatly influenced my life.
 A. is B. that is C. who is D. who he is
27. Is Dr. Brown the person.....you wish to speak? - Yes, please.
 A. that B. whom C. to that D. to whom
28. In the movie, a teenager.....to pursue a singing career meets resistance from his strong-willed father.
 A. wants B. wanted C. wanting D. who want
29. Excuse me, but there is something about.....immediately. - Certainly.
 A. which I must speak to you B. which I must speak to you about it
 C. that I must speak to you about D. that I must speak to you
30. Little Women,in 1868, is my sister's favorite book.
 A. is a novel published B. a novel published
 C. a novel was published D. was a novel published
31. Who is eligible for the scholarship? ~ Anyone.....scholastic record is above average can apply for the scholarship.
 A. who has a B. has a C. who's a D. whose
32. Dr. Sales is a person.....
 A. in whom I don't have much confidence
 B. in that I don't have much confidence
 C. whom I don't have much confidence in him
 D. I don't have much confidence
33. Is April twenty-first the day.....? - No, the twenty-second.
 A. you'll arrive then B. when you'll arrive
 C. on that you'll arrive D. when you'll arrive on
34. The severe drought.....occurred last summer ruined the corn crop.
 A. that it B. which it C. it D. that
35. Florida,the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.
 A. is B. known as
 C. is known as D. that is known as
36. The new shopping mall is gigantic. It's as a place.....you can find just about anything you might want to buy.
 A. where B. which C. in where D. in that
37. Lola's marriage has been arranged by her family. She is marrying a man.....
 A. that she hardly knows him B. whom she hardly knows him
 C. she hardly knows D. she hardly knows him

38. People who exercise frequently have greater physical endurance than those.....
 A. who doesn't B. that doesn't C. which don't D. who don't
39. Is this the address to.....you want the package sent?
 A. where B. that C. which D. whom
40. Ann quit her job at the advertising agency,surprised everyone.
 A. which B. that C. who D. that it

Exercise 2: Find and correct the mistake in the following sentences.

1. Last Saturday I attended a party giving by one of my friends. My friend, who his apartment is in another town, was very glad that I could come.
2. Dr. Darnell was the only person to whom I wanted to see.
3. There are eighty students, are from all over the world, study English at this school.
4. The people who we met them on our trip last May are going to visit us on October.
5. Dianne Jones that used to teach Spanish has organized a tour of Central America for senior citizens.
6. There is an old legend telling among people in my country about a man lived in the seventeenth century saved a village from destruction.
7. I've met many people since I came here who some of them are from my country.
8. An old man was fishing next to me on the pier was muttering to himself.
9. People can speak English can be understood in many countries.
10. When I was a child, I was always afraid of the beggars whom they went from house to house in my neighborhood.
11. One of the people which I admire most is my uncle.
12. Baseball is the only sport in which I am interested in it.
13. My favorite teacher, Mr. Peterson, he was always willing to help me after class.
14. There are some people in the government who is trying to improve the lives of poor people.
15. I have some good advice for anyone who he wants to learn a foreign language.

Exercise 3. Make one sentence from each group of sentences, beginning as shown.

1. The hotel was full of guests. The hotel was miles from anywhere. The guests had gone there to admire the scenery.
 The hotel
2. I lent you a book. It was written by a friend of mine. She lives in France.
 The book
3. A woman's jewels were stolen. A police officer was staying in the same hotel. The woman was interviewed by him.
 The woman.....
4. A goal was scored by a teenager. He had come on as a substitute. This goal won the match.
 The goal.....
5. I was sitting next to a boy in the exams. He told me the answers.
 The boy.....
6. My wallet contained \$100. It was found in the street by a boy. He returned it.
 My wallet
7. My friend Albert has decided to buy a motorbike. His car was stolen last week.
 My friend Albert.....
8. Carol is a vegetarian. I cooked a meal for her last week. She enjoyed it.

- Carol
9. I got on a train. I wanted to go to a station. The train didn't stop there.
The train
10. I read a book. You recommended a book to me. This was the book.
The book.....
11. The ship hit an iceberg and sank. Warning messages had been sent to it. The ship ignored these.
The ship
13. I used to own a dog. People came to the door. The dog never barked at them.
The dog.....
14. I bought my car from a woman. She lives in a house. You can see the house over there.
The woman
15. We went to a beach on the first day of our holiday. It was covered in seaweed. This smelled a lot.
The beach
16. My neighbors have three small children. The children make a lot of noise. My neighbors never apologize.
My neighbors
17. I lost my wallet last week. It was found by a man. He was digging a hole in the street outside our house.
The wallet.....
18. Carol slammed the door behind her. Her father had given a car as a present. She drove off in it.
Slamming
19. At the end of the street was a building. The street was crowded with shoppers.
Tom had not noticed the building before.
At the end of the street.....
20. Some people have just moved in next door. They have the same surname as some other people. Those other people have just moved out.
The people
21. The journalist will interview the old man. His house was broken into last night.
The Journalist.....
22. I listened to George patiently until he started insulting me. At that point I told him a few home truths. He didn't like it.
George.....

Exercise 4: Put one suitable relative pronoun in each space, or leave the space blank if possible.

Murder at the station (by Loraine Small. Episode 5)

The story so far: Jane Platt (1).....is traveling to London because of a mysterious letter, is the only person (2).....witness a murder at Victoria Station. The detective to (3).....she gives her statements then disappears. Jane goes to an office in Soho to answer the letter (4)..... she has received. There she discovers that her uncle Gordon, (5).....lives in South America, has sent her a box (6).....she is only to open if in trouble. Jane, (7).....parents have never mentioned an Uncle Gordon, is suspicious of the box, (8).....she gives to her friend Tony. They go to Scotland Yard and see inspector Groves, (9).....has not heard of the Victoria murder, (10).....was not reported to the police. Jane gives Inspector Groves the murdered man's ticket (11).....she found besides his body. Then Jane and Tony decide to go to Redhill, (12)

was the town (13).....the murdered man had come from. On the train they met a man, (14)..... face is somehow familiar to Jane, (15).....says he knows her Uncle Gordon. Now read on.

Sherlock Homes

Sherlock Homes, (1).....name is well-known, didn't really exist. However, for many (2).....have read his adventures, he might as well have been a real person.

The man (3).....created Holmes was Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Edinburgh in 1859. He trained as a doctor, but found he could earn more money by writing than practicing medicine. He wrote not only stories about Holmes, but many other books (4)..... people also liked. However, it is for the detectives stories (5).....he wrote that he is most remembered. The place (6)..... the Holmes mysteries are set is Victorian England. Holmes, (7)..... is a brilliant detective, uses his intelligence and scientific knowledge to solve the mysteries. Even though Doyle wrote many Holmes mysteries, we'll never know the reason (8) he gave us so little information about Holmes'

private life. All the books were written in the first person, not by Holmes, but by his assistant. Dr. Watson, (9).....knowledge of his master's private life was limited.

Exercise 5. Rewrite each sentence so that the meaning stays the same.

1. I like Brenda, she is my kind of person. (**THAT**)

.....

2. The whole summer was sunny and warm for a change. (**which**)

.....

3. Jean was the first person I asked for advice. (**WHOSE**)

.....

4. Not a single house in the street had escaped undamaged. (**WHICH**)

.....

5. Then I realized that I had left my wallet at home. (**WHEN**)

.....

6. I don't really approve of his proposal. (**WHAT**)

.....

7. It is an event I would rather forget. (**WHICH**)

.....

8. I have read all of her books but one. (**WHICH**)

.....

PHẦN 8: MODAL VERBS (ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Modal verbs: will/ shall (would)/ can (could)/ may (might)/ must/ have to (had to)/ should/ ought to; had better + Verb (bare infinitive) / semi-modal verb: need/ needn't/ used to.

Động từ khuyết thiếu được dùng với các chức năng ngôn ngữ sau:

1- Diễn tả khả năng làm gì

+ Can: được dùng để chỉ khả năng làm gì chung chung ở hiện tại

Eg: I can use computer. / She can speak English well.

+ Could: được dùng để chỉ khả năng làm gì chung chung ở quá khứ.

Eg: I could read and write when I was 4 years old. / She could drive when she was 18.

Ngoài ra một số cấu trúc câu cũng dùng để chỉ khả năng làm gì:

+ Was/ were able to do st: chỉ khả năng xoay sở một cách thành công để làm gì trong quá khứ.

Eg: Their house was on fire but they were able to escape from it.

+ To be able to do st/ to be capable of doing st: có khả năng làm gì (chia theo các thì khác nhau)

Eg: He will be able to speak English well after this course.

They have been capable of solving their own problems for many years.

2. Diễn tả sự suy diễn, tiên đoán

* **Diễn tả sự suy đoán không chắc chắn về cái gì, chúng ta sử dụng 'could/ may/ might' theo các công thức sau.**

- **Could/ may/ might + Verb (bare infinitive):** có lẽ làm gì

Eg: It might rain tomorrow. / It may rain tomorrow.

It could rain tomorrow. / It will possibly rain tomorrow. = Maybe it will rain tomorrow.

Chú ý: *maybe* là sự kết hợp của cả *may* và *be* nhưng nó là một từ và không phải là trợ động từ. Nó là một phó từ, có nghĩa như *perhap* (có

- **Could/ may/ might + be Verb-ing:** có lẽ đang làm gì

Eg: It might be raining at 5 p. m tomorrow.

Lan may be studying now.

Mai sister could be playing computer game at 5 p. m tomorrow.

- **Could/ may/ might + have + P2 =** có lẽ đã làm gì.

Eg: It may have rained last night, but I'm not sure.

He could have forgotten the ticket for the concert last night.

I didn't hear the telephone ring, I might have been sleeping at that time.

The cause of death could have been bacteria.

* **Diễn tả sự suy đoán chắc chắn về cái gì, chúng ta sử dụng 'must/ can't / couldn't' theo các công thức sau.**

- **Must + Verb (bare infinitive):** chắc là... (chỉ một kết luận logic dựa trên những hiện tượng đã xảy ra.)

Eg: The lights in his room are out. He must be asleep.

She drives a luxurious car. She must be rich.

- **Must + be + V-ing:** Chắc là đang làm gì

Eg: The grass is wet. It must be raining.

Our children's room is quiet. They must be sleeping.

- **Must + have + P2 =** chắc là đã, hẳn là đã làm gì:

Eg: The grass is wet. It must have rained last night. / (It probably rained last night)

Jane did very well on the exam. She must have studied hard

- **Can't + be + adj/ + V (inf)**.: Không thể như thế nào/ không thể làm gì

Eg: Mai's parents died when she was 4. She can't come from a rich family. She can't be a rich student in our class.

- **Can't / couldn't + be Verb-ing**: không thể đang làm gì

Eg: Minh can't be playing football in the park now. He must be taking his examination now. (because the speaker knows exactly that it is time for the examination).

- **Can't / couldn't + have + P2**: không thể đã làm gì

Eg: Minh can't/ couldn't have stolen your money yesterday because we went out together all yesterday.

Mai couldn't have gotten the scholarship because she was too lazy.

3. Diễn tả lời khuyên, sự mong đợi.

* **'Should' được sử dụng trong những trường hợp sau:**

- Để diễn đạt một lời khuyên, sự gợi ý, sự bắt buộc (nhưng không mạnh).

Eg: He should study tonight.

- Diễn đạt người nói mong muốn điều gì sẽ xảy ra. (Expectation)

Eg: It should rain tomorrow. (I expect it to rain tomorrow)

My check should arrive next week. (I expect it to arrive next week).

- Các cụm từ **had better**, **ought to**, **be supposed to do st** đều có nghĩa tương đương và cách dùng tương tự với **should** trong cả hai trường hợp trên (với điều kiện động từ **be** trong **be supposed to** phải chia ở thời hiện tại).

Eg: John ought to study tonight. / John is supposed to study tonight. / John had better study tonight.

4. Diễn tả các nghĩa vụ, sự bắt buộc ai đó làm gì

* **Cách sử dụng 'Must' và 'have to'**

* **"Must"** có nghĩa "phải": mang nghĩa hoàn toàn bắt buộc (mạnh hơn **should**). Với **should** (nên), nhân vật có thể lựa chọn có thực hiện hành động hay không nhưng với **must** (phải), họ không có quyền lựa chọn.

Eg: George must call his insurance agent today.

A car must have gasoline to run.

Ngoài ra 'must' còn diễn tả lời khuyên mạnh, xuất phát từ suy nghĩ của người nói.

Eg: Teacher to her students: You must study hard.

* **"have to"** thay cho **must** với nghĩa bắt buộc, nhưng **'have to'** chỉ sự bắt buộc mang yếu tố khách quan, từ yếu tố bên ngoài)

Eg: We will have to take an exam next week.

You have to wear uniform on Monday because it's our school's rule.

* **'had to'** được dùng để diễn đạt một nghĩa vụ trong quá khứ, phải dùng **had to** chứ không được dùng 'must'.

Eg: Mr Hung had to pass an examination before practicing law.

You had to do your homework before going to class today.

Chú ý:

- Trong câu hỏi, **have to** thường được dùng thay cho **must** để hỏi xem bản thân người hỏi bắt buộc phải làm gì hoặc để diễn đạt sự bắt buộc do khách quan đem lại.

Eg: Guest: Do I have to leave a deposit? ~ Receptionist: No, you needn't. But you have to leave your I. D card. I'm sorry but that's the way it is.

- Trong văn nói, người ta dùng *have got to*, cũng có nghĩa như *have to*.

Eg: He has got to go to the office tonight.

5. Diễn tả sự cấm đoán làm gì

“**mustn't**” và “**can't**” được dùng để diễn tả sự cấm đoán làm gì

- Mustn't / can't do st = not be allowed to do st = it is necessary not to do st (không được phép làm gì)

Eg: You mustn't take photos in the museum. / You mustn't make noise in the class.

You can't drive on the left in Vietnam.

* Phân biệt Mustn't với don't/ didn't have to do st

- don't/ didn't have to do st = don't /didn't need to do st = needn't do st/ needn't have done st = it + not be necessary to do st (không cần thiết làm gì, hành động làm là vô ích)

Eg: You needn't apply for a visa to visit France if you hold a EU passport.

You don't have to go to school and wear uniform on Sunday.

6. Diễn tả sự hối tiếc làm gì.

- **Needn't + have + P2**: Lẽ ra không cần phải phải làm gì:

Eg: You needn't have come so early - only waste your time.

- **Should have + P2** = Lẽ ra đã phải làm gì, lẽ ra nên phải đã làm gì. (Chỉ một việc lẽ ra đã phải xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng vì lí do nào đó lại không xảy ra.)

Eg: You shouldn't have called me last night. (She did call him).

My mother should have gone to her office this morning.

The policeman should have made a report about the accident.

Chú ý: Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng cụm từ *was/were supposed to* + [verb in simple form] để thay cho *should + perfective*. Chỉ được dùng *had to* hoặc *should + perfective* hoặc *be supposed to* khi diễn tả một trách nhiệm bắt buộc ở quá khứ.

Eg: My mother was supposed to go to her office this morning.

The policeman was supposed to make a report about the accident.

* Cách dùng should trong một số trường hợp cụ thể khác

- Diễn đạt kết quả của một yếu tố tưởng tượng:(Sẽ làm gì)

Eg: If I was asked to marry him, I should resign.

- Dùng trong mệnh đề có *that* sau những tính từ chỉ trạng thái như *anxious* (sốt ruột)/ *sorry* (tiếc rằng)/ *concerned* (lo lắng, lo âu) / *happy* (vui vẻ)/ *delighted*. . . : Lầy lầm. .. rằng/ lầy lầm. .. vì:

Eg: I'm anxious that she should be safe on that train. (Tôi lo lắng rằng liệu cô ấy có được an toàn trên chuyến tàu ấy không/ We are sorry that you should feel uncomfortable here.

- Dùng với *if/in case* để chỉ một điều khó có thể xảy ra, người ta đưa ra ý kiến chỉ đề phòng ngừa.

Eg: If you should make another decision, please let me know.

In case he should have left you alone, I will stand by you.

- Dùng sau *so that/ in order that* để chỉ mục đích (Thay cho *would/ could*).

Eg: I put away my diary so that noone should be able to read it.

My teacher speaks slowly in order that we should understand.

- Dùng trong lời yêu cầu lịch sự: I should like to have a talk to you, if possible

- Dùng với *imagine/ say/ think*. .. để đưa ra lời đề nghị: Thiết tưởng, cho là

Eg: I should imagine our celebration will be successful.

(Tôi cho là sự tổ chức của chúng ta sẽ thành công.)

- Dùng trong câu hỏi để diễn tả sự nghi ngờ, thiếu chắc chắn

Eg: How should I know?(Làm sao tôi biết được kia chứ)

Why should he think that? (sao nó lại nghĩ như vậy).

- Dùng với các đại từ nghi vấn như *what/ where/ who* để diễn tả sự ngạc nhiên, thường dùng với "But".

Eg: I was thinking of going to see John when who should appear but John himself.

- * **Cách sử dụng Would + like:** Để diễn đạt một cách lịch sự lời mời hoặc ý muốn gì. (Không nên dùng *do you want* khi mời người khác.)

Eg: Would you like to go to the cinema with me tonight.

Chú ý: (nếu để diễn đạt sở thích thì sau *like* là một *V-ing*). / He likes listening to music.

- Nhưng để diễn đạt sự lựa chọn hoặc sở thích ở một thời điểm cụ thể ta dùng (like + V-ing).

Eg: I'm hungry now, I like to eat some beef noodle now.

- Wouldn't like = không ưa # don't want = không muốn.

Eg: I wouldn't like any orange juice now.

- Lưu ý rằng khi like được dùng với nghĩa "cho là đúng" hoặc "cho là hay/ khôn ngoan" thì bao giờ theo sau cũng là một nguyên thể có to (infinitive).

Eg: She likes the children to learn to play the guitar.

- * **(Would like = would care /love/ hate/ prefer + to + verb:** khi diễn đạt điều kiện cho một hành động cụ thể ở tương lai:

Eg: Mai: Would you (like/care) to come with me? ~ Hoa: I'd love to

- Would like/ would care for/ would enjoy + Verb-ing khi diễn đạt khẩu vị, ý thích nói chung của chủ ngữ.

Eg: She would like/ would enjoy dancing if she could dance better.

I wonder if Tom would care for/ would enjoy dining out tonight.

- * **Dare (dám):** Dùng như một nội động từ: Không dùng ở thể khẳng định, chỉ dùng ở thể nghi vấn và phủ định.

Eg: Did they dare (to) do such a thing?

= Dared they do such a thing? (Họ dám làm như vậy sao?)

- **Dare** không được dùng ở thể khẳng định ngoại trừ thành ngữ I dare say/ I dare say với 2 nghĩa sau:

Eg: Tôi cho rằng: I dare say there is a restaurant at the end of the train.

Tôi thừa nhận là: I dare say you are right.

- **How dare/ dared + S + Verb in simple form:** Sao. . . dám (tỏ sự giận giữ)

Eg: How dared you read my diary: Sao mà dám đọc nhật ký của tao.

- **Dare sb to do smt** = Thách ai làm gì

Eg: They dare the boy to drive fast on that dangerous road.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the correct completion (A, B, C or D) for each sentence below.

1. Al painted his bedroom black. It looks dark and dreary. He.....a different colour.

A. had to choose B. should have chosen
C. must have chosen D. could have been choosing

2. Tom is sitting at his desk. He is reading his chemistry text because he has a test tomorrow. He.....

A. could study B. should be studying
C. will study D. must be studying

3. When Mr. Lee was younger, he.....work in the garden for hours, but now he has to take frequent rest because he has emphysema.
 A. has got to B. could
 C. should be able to D. must be studying
4. Whenever my parents went out in the evening, I.....the job of taking care of my younger brother.
 A. would get B. should get
 C. must have gotten D. had better get
5. Peter.....rather sleep on a mattress than on the floor.
 A. shall B. could C. would D. must
6. Jimmy and Maria were mischievous children. They.....tricks on their teachers.
 A. could play B. used to play
 C. could have played D. may have played
7. Robert has a new car. He.....it for a very good price. He paid 30 % less than the regular retail cost.
 A. could buy B. had to buy
 C. was supposed to buy D. was able to buy
8. "Did you enjoy a picnic?" / "It was O. K, but I 'd rather.....to a movie. "
 A. go B. be going C. have gone D. went
9. "Why are you so sure that Ann didn't commit the crime she's been accused of committing. "She.....that crime because I was with her, and we was out of town on that day. "
 A. committed B. may not have committed
 C. wasn't supposed to commit D. couldn't have committed
10. "Since we have to be there in a hurry, we.....take a taxi." / "I agree."
 A. had better B. may C. have been used to D. are able to
11. "It.....rain this evening. Why don't you take an umbrella?" / "That's a good idea!"
 A. had better B. could be C. must D. might
12. ".....you hand me that pair of scissors, please?" / "Certainly. "
 A. May B. Shall C. Will D. Should
13. "Larry drove all night to get here for his sister's wedding. He.....exhausted by the time he arrived. "
 A. ought to be B. could be C. must have been D. will have been
14. "What are you doing here now? You.....be here for another three hours. "
 "I know. We got an early start and it took less time than we expected I hope you don't mind. "
 A. couldn't B. might not
 C. had better not D. aren't supposed to
15. ".....taking me downtown on your way to work this morning?" / "Not at all. "
 A. Can you B. Why don't you
 C. Would you mind D. Could you please
16. "I locked myself out of my apartment. I didn't know what to do." / "You.....your roommate."
 A. could have called B. may have called
 C. would have called D. must have called
17. You haven't eaten anything since yesterday afternoon. You.....be really hungry!" / "I am."

- A. might B. will C. can D. must
18. "How long have been married?" / "We.....have been married for twenty three years on your next anniversary. '
- A. must B. should C. will D. could
19. "I.....there at 6 P. M for the meeting, but my car won't start. Could you please give me a lift in your car?" ~ "Sure. Are you ready to go now?"
- A. will be B. may be
C. supposed to be D. have got to be
20. "I left a cookie on the table, but now it's gone. What happened to it?"
~ "I don't know. One of children.....it. "
- A. may have eaten B. could eat
C. had to eat D. should have eaten
21. "My boss is always looking over my shoulder whenever I do anything. "
- ~ "That.....bother you. " / "But it does. "
- A. shouldn't B. might not C. may not D. won't
22. "This movie is boring and too violent. " / " I agree.....leave?"
- A. Will we B. Why don't we C. Must we D. Would we
23. "Chris, you.....the fish in the refrigerator before it spoils. "
- ~ "You are right. I didn't know it was still in the bag.
- A. had better put. B. had to put
C. would rather put D. may put
24. "What does Mr. Griffin do for a living?"
~ "Nothing. He is very rich. He.....work for a living. "
- A. must not B. shouldn't C. doesn't have to D. had better
25. "Why are you so late?" ~ "I.....my aunt to their airport. The traffic was terrible!"
- A. could take B. must have taken C. should take D. had to take
26. "I heard that Laura was offered a job at a top computer firm in Chicago."
- ~ "Oh? That's wonderful! She.....very pleased. "
- A. is supposed to be B. might be C. must be. D. is
27. "The hot weather doesn't seem to bother you. "
- ~ " When I had my farm. I.....work in the hot fields for hours. "
- A. used to B. ought to C. must D. had better
28. "They towed my car away from the executive parking lot yesterday. "
- "You.....have parked there. "
- A. may not B. should not C. must not D. might not
29. "Are you going to have a big party for your father?"
~ "Not this year, but next year. He.....50 years old then. "
- A. should be B. must be C. will be D. has to be
30. "I need some help with this table.....you lift the other end, please?"
~ "Sure, just a second. "
- A. May B. Should C. Could D. Shall
31. "Barbara just told me that she can't go to the meeting tonight. "
- ~ "She.....go! We need her there for the financial report. "

- A. has got to B. has gotten to C. have to D. must be
32. ".....letting me use your bicycle for a little while?" ~ "Not at all. "
- A. Please to B. would you mind
C. Will you D. Could you please
33. "We.....be here. That sign says "No trespassing. "
- ~ " It is too late now. We 're already been here. "
- A. couldn't B. don't have to
C. might not D. aren't supposed to
34. "Harry's new jacket doesn't seem to fit him very well. "
- ~ "He.....it on before he bought it"
- A. must have tried B. was able to try
C. should have tried D. may have tried
35. "Do you like to play tennis?" ~ "Yes. When I work at the embassy, I.....meet a friend at 5 every afternoon for a game. "
- A. would B. should C. had better D. would rather
36. Thank goodness we.....eat fish again tonight. Dad didn't catch any today.
- A. must B. have to C. must not D. don't have to
37. The pen won't write; it.....out of ink.
- A. must run B. must be running C. must have run D. must have ran
38. The line is busy; someone.....the telephone now.
- A. must be using B. must have used
C. must use D. must have been using
39. Bob is absent, he.....sick gain now.
- A. must have been B. must be C. must be being D. must being
40. He.....his job because he seems very happy.
- A. would like B. can like C. will like D. must like

Exercise 2: Complete the second sentence in each pair, using the word given, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. There is a possibility that they won't visit us at the weekend.
might They.....at the weekend.
2. Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing up.
will Karen,.....with the washing up?
3. I'm sure it wasn't Tim who called you because I saw him outside.
been It.....Tim who you called because I saw him outside.
4. I suppose Bruce has gone to the dentist since he has a terrible toothache.
have Bruce.....to the dentist since he has a terrible toothache.
5. May I borrow your tape recorder this afternoon?
mind Would.....your tape recorder this afternoon?
6. You can't walk your dog in the park.
are You.....your dog in the park.
7. Perhaps you didn't buy that watch from this shop.
could You.....that watch from another shop.
8. Garry couldn't remember where he had put his wallet.

was Garrywhere he had put his wallet.

9. You were wrong to drive through the red light.

should You.....through the red light.

10. Our children were never in the habit of telling lies.

used Our children.....lies.

Exercise 3: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the words in parentheses. Add not if necessary for a sentence to make sense:

1. A: Why wasn't Pamela at the meeting last night?

B: She (*may + attend*).....the lecture at Shaw Hall. I know she very much wanted to hear the speaker.

2. AlEg has a test tomorrow that he needs to study for. He (*should + watch*).....TV right now.

3. A: Why didn't Diane come to the phone? I know she was home when I called.

B: I don't know. She (*might + wash*).....her hair when you called. Who knows?

4. There's Tom. He's standing at the bus stop. He (*must + wait*).....for the two o'clock bus.

5. Kathy lost her way while driving to River City. She (*should + leave*).....her road map at home.

6. A: Where's Ann?

B: I don't know. She (*could + visit*).....her aunt and uncle right now. She usually visits them every Friday evening.

7. You (*should + watch*).....the movie on TV tonight. I highly recommend it. It's a classic.

8. I heard a loud crash in the next room. When I walked in, I found a brick on the floor, and the window was broken. Someone (*must + throw*).....the brick through the window.

9. Jack is in the employee lounge drinking coffee. He (*should + work*).....on his report right now. It's due at 3:00 this afternoon. He (*should + waste*).....his time in the employee lounge.

10. A: Where's Jane? I haven't seen her for a week.

B: I'm not sure. She (*might + travel*).....in Europe. I think I heard her mentioning something about spending a few weeks in Europe this spring.

11. My tweed jacket isn't in my closet. I think my roommate (*might + borrow*).....it. He often borrows my things without asking me.

12. Do you hear that guitar music? Carla (*must + play*).....her guitar.

13. A: When I arrived, Dennis looked surprised.

B: He (*must + expect*).....you.

14. A: I couldn't reach Peter on the phone. I wonder where he was.

B: He told me he was going to wash his car and then go to dinner at the Bistro Cafe. He (*might + wash*).....his car when you called, or he (*may + leave + already*).....for the restaurant by then.

Exercise 4: Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word given in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same:

1. I think you should give up smoking immediately.

(HAD).....

2. I expect we will get there by 5:00, if there isn't too much traffic.

(SHOULD)

3. Is it necessary for me to bring my passport?
(HAVE)
4. I am sure that the cat is in the house somewhere.
(MUST).....
5. An aerial is not required with this radio.
(HAVE)
6. It is very inconvenient if you can't drive.
(ABLE).....
7. I am sure that John is not the thief.
(CAN'T).....
8. I am certain that Norman will be late.
(BOUND)
9. All students should report to the mam hall at 9:00. (ARE)
10. I thought that you would know better!
(OUGHT).....

Exercise 5. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains *can, could, must, have to or should*. Include *not* if necessary.

1. I'm sure that Helen feels rather lonely.
.....
2. You are not allowed to park here.
.....
3. It would be a good idea if Harry took a holiday.
.....
4. I'm sure that Brenda isn't over thirty.
.....
5. Do I need a different driving license for a motorbike?
.....
6. What would you advise me to do?
.....
7. Mary knows how to stand on her head.
.....
8. You needn't come with me if you don't want to.
.....
9. It's possible for anyone to break into this house!
.....
10. The dentist will see you soon. I don't think he'll be long.
.....

PHẦN 9: INVERSION AND EMPHASIS IN ENGLISH (ĐẢO NGỮ VÀ SỰ NHẤN MẠNH TRONG TIẾNG ANH)

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Trong Tiếng Anh, người ta thường sử dụng đảo ngữ trong các trường hợp sau:

* **Khi một câu chứa đựng một từ hay ngữ diễn đạt mang hàm nghĩa phủ định hay bán phủ định** và từ, ngữ đó đứng ở đầu câu trong Tiếng Anh viết để có thể có ảnh hưởng kịch tính hơn, nhấn mạnh hơn, thì trật tự từ của câu đó giống như trật tự của câu hỏi, có nghĩa là có hiện tượng đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ của câu. Hãy xem các ví dụ sau:

Examples:

- No-one should enter this room under/in any circumstances.
→ Under/In no circumstances should anyone enter this room.
- She at no time told me who she was/She didn't tell me who she was at any time.
→ At no time did she tell me who she was.
- I have rarely seen such a beautiful butterfly.
→ Rarely have I seen such a beautiful butterfly.
- I have never heard such a stupid thing.
→ Never have I heard such a stupid thing.
- I did not witness the robbery, either.
→ Neither/Nor (less formal) did I witness the robbery.

Trong câu có các từ hay ngữ diễn đạt mang hàm nghĩa phủ định hay bán phủ định sau thường có hiện tượng đảo ngữ:

Never: chưa bao giờ	No sooner....than....: Không sớm hơn. ... thì...
Seldom: hiếm khi	On no account: Dù bất cứ lý do gì cũng không
Hardly: Khó lòng mà.	Under no circumstance: Dù trong bất cứ hoàn cảnh nào cũng không.
Neither: cũng không	Only in this way: Chỉ bằng cách này
At no time: chưa khi nào	In no way: Không sao có thể
Nor: cũng không	By no means: Hoàn toàn không
Rarely: ít khi	Not only...but...as well: Không những...mà còn
Nowhere: không nơi nào..	Not often: không thường xuyên....
Not until: không đến khi	Scarcely.... when: Chắc chắn không khi nào khi
Not once: Không một lúc	Hardly ever: Chưa từng.. khó mà
Only when: chỉ khi	Barely: hoàn toàn không
Only later: chỉ sau đó	Only then/ only after: chỉ sau khi

Examples:

- On no account must this switch be touched.
- Only in this way could the problem be solved
- In no way could I agree with you.
- By no means does he intend to criticize your idea.

Negative. . . , nor + auxiliary + S + V

He had no money, nor did he know anybody from whom he could borrow.

Chú ý: Đảo ngữ chỉ được thực hiện ngay phần đầu của câu chứa đựng những sự diễn đạt này. Xem các ví dụ sau:

- We had hardly/scarcely/barely started to watch the film when the light went off.
→ Hardly/Scarcely/Barely had we started to watch the film when the light went off.
- I felt much better after I took a sachet of this medicine/
= I had no sooner taken a sachet of this medicine than I felt much better.

→ No sooner had I taken a sachet of this medicine than I felt much better.

- They had no sooner started the engine than the car exploded.

= Immediately they started the engine, the car exploded.

→ No sooner had they started the engine than the car exploded.

- I was no sooner informed of the facts than I took legal action.

= As soon as I was informed of the facts, I took legal action.

→ No sooner was I informed of the facts than I took legal action.

As soon as he sees a pretty girl, he asks her to go out with him.

= He no sooner sees a pretty girl than he asks her to go out with him.

→ No sooner does he see a pretty girl than he asks her to go out with him

- They not only took care of me, but (they) also treated me as if I were their own daughter.

→ Not only did they take care of me, but (they) also treated me as if I were their own daughter.

*** Khi chúng ta đặt một số từ và cụm từ ở đầu câu để câu mang hàm ý nhấn mạnh, câu đó có hiện tượng đảo ngữ. Hãy xem các ví dụ sau.**

Examples:

- It was only when my children arrived home safely that I felt relieved.

→ Only when my children arrived home safely did I feel relieved.

- We did not know anything about what was going to happen to us next.

→ Little did we know about what was going to happen to us next.

- I well remember when I saw her for the first time.

→ Well do I remember when I saw her for the first time.

- I waited for you to come back many times/many a time.

→ Many is the time (that) I waited for you to come back/Many a time did I wait for you to come back.

*** Đảo ngữ trong câu điều kiện (xem thêm phần câu điều kiện)**

Examples:

- If you should need a sun protection cream, please tell me.

→ Should you need a sun protection cream, please tell me.

- If I were you, I would try to fascinate her.

→ Were I you, I would try to fascinate her.

- If they had confessed everything, they would have been expelled from school.

→ Had they confessed everything, they would have been expelled from school.

*** Khi một mệnh đề mở đầu bằng các thành ngữ chỉ nơi chốn hoặc trật tự thì động từ chính có thể đảo lên chủ ngữ nhưng tuyệt đối không được sử dụng trợ động từ trong trường hợp này.**

Clause of place/ order + main verb + S (no auxiliary)

In front of the house is a big garden..

First came the teacher, then came the headmaster.

(Thoạt đầu là giáo viên đến, tiếp sau là thầy hiệu trưởng.)

*** Khi một ngữ giới từ làm phó từ chỉ địa điểm hoặc phương hướng đứng ở đầu câu, các nội động từ đặt lên trước chủ ngữ nhưng tuyệt đối không được sử dụng trợ động từ trong loại câu này. Nó rất phổ biến trong văn mô tả khi muốn diễn đạt một chủ ngữ không xác định:**

Under the table was lying a big dog.

Directly behind the mountain stood a great temple.

On the table sat a black cat..

*** Tính từ cũng có thể đảo lên trên đầu câu để nhấn mạnh và sau đó là liên từ nhưng tuyệt đối không được sử dụng trợ động từ.**

I was so happy that I arranged a big party/My happiness was such that I arranged a big party.

→ So happy was I that I arranged a big party/Such was my happiness that I arranged a big party.

*** Các phó từ away (= off), down, in, off, out, over, round, up... có thể theo sau là một động từ chuyển động và sau đó là một danh từ làm chủ ngữ**

A way/down/in/off/out/over/round/up... + motion verb + noun/noun phrase as a subject.

Examples:

- Away went the football hooligans/ Down fell the snow.

- Peter goes up again. → Up goes Peter again. (But Up he goes again.)

- The beautiful scenery I had been told about lay/was below me.

→ Below me lay/was the beautiful scenery I had been told about.

+ Nhưng nếu một đại từ nhân xưng làm chủ ngữ thì động từ phải để sau chủ ngữ:

Eg: Away they went/ Round and round it flew.

Chú ý: Trong tiếng Anh viết (written English) các ngữ giới từ mở đầu bằng các giới từ **down, from, in, on, over, out of, round, up...** có thể được theo sau ngay bởi động từ chỉ vị trí (**crouch** (né mình, cúi mình), **hang** (treo), **lie** (nằm), **sit** (ngồi), **stand** (đứng). ..) hoặc các dạng động từ chỉ chuyển động, các động từ như **be born/ die/ live** và một số dạng động từ khác.

Eg: - In the doorway stood a man with a gun.

- On the wall hung a nice picture.

- Over the wall came a strange man.

Chú ý: Có thể diễn đạt bằng một VERB-ING mở đầu cho câu và động từ BE đảo lên trên chủ ngữ:

Eg: - Standing in the doorway was a man with a gun.

- Sitting on a armchair next to me was a black cat.

*** Có hiện tượng đảo ngữ khi chủ ngữ sau các phó từ so sánh as/than quá dài**

Eg: - She was very selfish, as were most of her family members.

- Smokers have a higher death rate than do non-smoking people.

*** Tân ngữ mang tính nhấn mạnh cũng có thể đảo lên đầu câu**

Eg: - Not a single word did he say.

- Nothing but a full apology would satisfy him.

*** Here/There hoặc một số các phó từ đi kết hợp với động từ đứng đầu câu cũng phải đảo động từ lên trên chủ ngữ là một danh từ, nhưng nếu chủ ngữ là một đại từ thì không được đảo động từ**

Eg: - Here comes Mr John. (*Incorrect: Here comes he.*)

- Off we go (*Incorrect: Off go we.*)

- There goes your teacher.

- He Stopped the car, and up walked a robber.

*** Emphasis in English**

Theo sau là một số cách để diễn tả thêm vào sự nhấn mạnh cho câu nói (viết) trong Tiếng Anh khi mà chúng ta muốn diễn tả quan điểm, sự không đồng ý, hay làm những lời đề nghị mạnh mẽ, sự tức giận.

*** Use of the Passive** (sử dụng câu bị động)

Câu bị động được sử dụng để nhấn mạnh việc gì đã xảy ra, hơn là ai/ cái gì đã làm gì, nó nhấn mạnh con người hay cái gì bị tác động bởi hành động.

Examples:

Reports are expected by the end of the week.

Mr John was killed in his livingroom yesterday.

*** Use of Inversion** (Sử dụng câu đảo ngữ - xem phần trên)

Examples:

- At no time did I say you couldn't come.
- Hardly had I arrived when he started complaining.
- Little did I understand what was happening.
- Seldom have I felt so alone.

(Note that the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject which is followed by the main verb.)

*** Use the continuous form modified by 'always', 'forever'** (sử dụng dạng tiếp diễn với 'always/ forever')

Chúng ta sử dụng dạng tiếp diễn với '**always/ forever**' để diễn tả sự tức giận hay phàn nàn về một thói quen xấu nào hay xảy ra như thường lệ của ai đó.

Examples:

- Martha is always getting into trouble.
- Peter is forever asking tricky questions.
- George was always being reprimanded by his teachers.

(Note that this form is generally used with the present or past continuous (he is always doing, they were always doing).

*** Use of cleft sentences** (sử dụng câu chẻ)

Câu chẻ là là câu nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ hay tân ngữ và được hình thành theo công thức (**It is/ was + Subjective pronoun / Noun/ Nounphrase + 1 clause relative**) or **Câu có mệnh đề 'what' làm chủ ngữ**.

Examples:

- It was I who received the promotion.
- It is the awful weather that drives him crazy.
- What we need is a good long shower.
- What he thinks isn't necessarily true.

*** Exceptional Use of 'Do' or 'Did'** (sử dụng thêm trợ động từ (do, Does/ did)

Examples:

- No that's not true. John did speak to Mary.
- I do believe that you should think twice about this situation.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Rewrite each of the sentences below, using the words given in the brackets, so that the meaning of each one has an emphasis.

1. My brother went off without saying a word. (**Off...**)

.....

2. He went off without saying a word. (**Off...**)

.....

3. Her toys were along the corridor. (**Along the corridor...**)

.....

4. The castle stands on a hill. (**On a hill...**)

.....

5. Your chance to speak out is now. (**Now...**)
.....
6. We have seldom fished so much here. (**Seldom...**)
.....
7. They are in no way responsible for what occurred last night. (**In no way...**)
.....
8. You should not on any account take these pills when you drink alcohol. (**On no account. ...**)
.....
9. She not once offered us her help. (**Not once...**)
.....
10. I did not became aware of what was going on until I saw her weeping. (**Not until...**)
.....
11. We little realised the dangers that were awaiting us. (**Little ...**)
.....
12. He was so tired that he slept for fourteen hours. (**So tired ...**)
.....
13. My delight was such that I bought everybody a drink. (**Such. ...**)
.....
14. I love him to such an extent that I would even give my life for him. (**To such an extent...**)
.....
15. They not only supply us with food, but also with drinks. (**Not only. . .**)
.....
16. We had no sooner eaten it than we had a terrible stomach-ache. (**No sooner. ...**)
.....
17. I had hardly gone to bed when the telephone rang. (**Hardly. ...**)
.....
18. She took him to the zoo and to the cinema as well. (**Not only ...**)
.....
19. The cock crows as soon as the day breaks. (**No sooner**)
.....
20. She agreed to go out with him only when he bought her some flowers. (**Only when...**)
.....
21. If you should need a good make-up remover, please let me know. (**Should...**)
.....
22. If I were to win the first prize in the national lottery, I would no longer work. (**Were...**)
.....
23. If you hadn't flooded the engine, it would have started at once. (**Had you...**)
.....
24. If my parents should need me, I will never let them down. (**Should...**)
.....
25. If I were in your place, I would try to be more assertive. (**Were...**)
.....

Exercise 2: Finish the second sentence so that the meaning has a similar meaning with an emphasis.

1. You shouldn't in any way consider him as your worst enemy.
→In no way.....
2. You must on no account upset your parents.
→On no account
3. Mr and Mrs Adam live across the bridge.
→Across the bridge.....
4. I was so scared that I could not even scream.
→So scared.....
5. The horrific view of the massacre was in front of us.
→In front of us
6. The canyon lies behind those mountains.
→Behind those mountains.....
7. He only then became aware of the dangers of the jungle.
→Only then.....
8. She had scarcely begun to study when her boyfriend rang the bell.
→Scarcely.....
9. I won't go trekking with him.
→No way
10. My terror was such that I couldn't move.
→Such.....
11. I had no sooner switched on the dishwasher than it broke down.
→No sooner.....
12. As soon as he saw her, he fell in love with her.
→No sooner.....
13. If we had known that you were interested in buying the block of flats, we would have sold it to you.
→Had.....
14. Your mother went down the road.
→Down the road
15. She went down the road.
→Down the road
16. This disease is common only in hot countries.
→Only in hot countries.....
17. You will never again have such an opportunity.
→Never again.....
18. We not only wrote to her many times, but telephone her twice, too.
→Not only
19. Immediately he learnt about his mother's incurable disease, he cried his eyes out.
→No sooner
20. We have both put aside some money and stocked up with a lot of groceries from the shop next door.
→Not only
21. I did not use suntan lotion, either.
→ Neither
22. The wood pigeon flew up.

- Up
23. If you should increase our wages, we will work overtime.
- Should
24. She had hardly taken everything out of the picnic basket when it began to rain.
- Hardly
25. If you were to buy a new car, which of these would you choose?
- Were.....
26. You should not press both button at once under any circumstances.
- Under no circumstances
27. Jean not once offered her boss a word Ò apology.
- Not once
28. I didn't realize who he was until later.
- Only later.....
29. He never suspected that the money had been stolen.
- At no time.....
30. He insisted on a refund.
- Nothing

PHẦN 10: CONECTIVES: CÁC TỪ NỐI

A. LÝ THUYẾT CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

1. Các từ nối diễn đạt các ý tương phản.

* **Despite/Inspite of / Though/ Even Though/ Although:** bất chấp, mặc dầu, cho dù....

Despite/Inspite of + Noun Phrase/ V-ing.

+ the fact that + 1 clause

Though/ Even though/ Although + 1 clause

- **Although** (dùng với ý trung tính- neutral); **even though** (dùng với ý nhấn mạnh - more emphasis); **though** (dùng trong văn phong ít trang trọng hơn- less formal)

Eg 1: Although /Even though /Though he had a sprained ankle (or he had sprained his ankle/his ankle was sprained), he went out for a walk.

Eg 2. In spite of/Despite having a sprained ankle/having sprained his ankle, he went out for a walk.

Eg 3: In spite of/Despite his sprained ankle, he went out for a walk.

Eg 4: In spite of/Despite his ankle being sprained, he went out for a walk.

* **But:** Nhưng + 1 clause

Eg: He had a sprained ankle, *but* he went out for a walk.

- **But** + adj/ adv

Eg: He is intelligent *but* lazy. / He works hard *but* unsuccessfully.

* **However/ Nevertheless/ All the same/ Yet/ Still/ Even so + 1 clause:** Tuy nhiên, tuy vậy.

- **However** (dùng với ý trung tính); **Nevertheless** (dùng trong văn phong trang trọng);

All the same/ Yet/ Still/ Even so (dùng trong văn phong ít trang trọng hơn)

Eg 1: He had a sprained ankle/He had sprained his ankle/His ankle was sprained.

However

Nevertheless /Nonetheless/ All the same/Yet /Still/ Even so, he went out for a walk.

Eg 2: He had a sprained ankle/He had sprained his ankle/His ankle was sprained.

He went out for a walk, though (informal)/ however/nevertheless/all the same/nonetheless.

* **However/ No matter how + adj / adv+ S + linking verb/ verb = dù có. . . đi chăng nữa thì...**

- **No matterhow** (dùng trong văn phong trang trọng hơn)

Eg 1: However strong you are, you can't move this rock.

Eg 2: However hard/No matter how hard (more formal) you try, you will never be able to do it.

Eg 3: Even though/Even if you try hard, you will never be able to do it.

Eg 4: It does not matter how hard you try, you will never be able to do it.

Eg 5. Although you try hard, you will never be able to do it.

Eg 6: Much (adverb) as/though I loved him, I had to leave him.

= *Although* I loved him a lot. I had to leave him.

Eg 7: Angry (adjective) as/though I was, I did not tell them anything..

= *Although* I was angry, I did not tell them anything.

Eg 8. Some people who are not happy with what they possess firmly believe the American dream, as it evokes the things they would like to have. *For all that*, it is just a dream.

2. Các từ nối diễn tả sự thêm vào, ý thêm vào

* **And (và); Also (cũng vậy); Furthermore (Hơn nữa là) = In addition = Additionally = Moreover = What's more/ Besides** (Ngoài ra)+ 1 clause

* **And (và)/ In addition to** (thêm vào) + Noun/ Noun Phrase/ V-ing

* **not only...but also...(as well):** không những...mà còn...

* **On top of that:** hơn thế nữa

* **On the one hand.../On the other (hand):** Một mặt thì...Mặt khác thì

Eg 1: I don't feel like dancing, and I'm *also* very exhausted.

Eg 2: I don't feel like dancing. *Also*, I'm very exhausted.

Eg 3: I don't feel like dancing. *Besides*. I'm very exhausted.

Eg 4: I don't feel like dancing. *In addition*, I'm very exhausted.

Eg 5: I don't feel like dancing, and *what's more* I'm very exhausted. (informal)

Eg 6: She works at the bank around the corner. *Besides*, she does the household chores.

Eg 7: *In addition to working* at the bank around the corner, she does the household chores

Eg 8: They *not only* fined him, *but also* withdrew his driving licence.

Eg 9: They fined him and, *on top of that*, they withdrew his driving licence.

Eg 10: *On the one hand*, we must bear in mind the costs. *On the other (hand)*, the benefits we can obtain from them.

3. Từ nối diễn tả kết quả, hậu quả của cái gì.

* **As a result** (như một kết quả thu được)= **As a consequence = Consequently = In consequence; Hence** (vì thế, vì lý do đó cho nên; do vậy)= **Thus = Therefore = So / For this reason** (vì lý do này)

Eg 1: The management of the company have been raising funds illegally during the last few years; Therefore/Consequently/For this reason/ As a result/As a consequence/In consequence, they will be taken to court.

Eg 2: The management of the company have been raising funds illegally during the last few' years. They will, *therefore*, be taken to court.

Eg 3: The management of the company have been raising funds illegally during the last few years. *Thus* (very formal)/ *So* (less formal)/*Hence* (very formal) they will be taken to court.

Eg 4: The management of the company have been raising funds illegally during the last few years, *with the result/ consequence that* they will be taken to court.

4. Từ nối diễn tả nguyên nhân hay lý do

* **Because / Because of = On account of:** bởi vì

Because + 1 clause (S-V) # because of + Noun Phrase

Eg: We arrived late *because* there was a traffic jam. /We arrived late *because of* a traffic jam.

- Có thể dùng *because of* thay cho *on account of* và *due to/ owing to* và ngược lại.

Nhưng thường dùng *due to* sau động từ to be.

Eg: The accident was *due to* the heavy rain.

- Dùng *as a result of* để nhấn mạnh hậu quả của hành động hoặc sự vật, sự việc.

Eg: He was blinded *as a result of* a terrible accident.

Eg: She couldn't walk properly *because of/on account of (formal)/owing to (formal)* her injured leg

* **Because = As = Since = For (vì)**

Eg: Ba is tired *because/ as/since/for* he stayed up late watching TV.

* **The reason why / that + 1 clause:** Lý do tại sao/ rằng

Eg 1: *The reason (why/that)* we left a message for you was that we couldn't contact you.

Eg 2: We couldn't contact you. This is (*the reason*) why we left a message for you.

5. Từ nối diễn tả quan điểm/ suy nghĩ

Eg 1: I think (*that*) the government should do something about inflation.

= *In my opinion/To my mind/In my view/To me (informal)/To my way of thinking/As far as I am concerned/If you ask me (informal)/ From my point of view/From my viewpoint/As I see it/The way I see it*, the government should do something about environment.

Eg 2: *Personally/For my part, I think (that)* the government should do something about environment.

Eg 3: *As far as I know/As far as I am aware/To (the best of) my knowledge/For all I know*, the unemployment rate has fallen.

6. Từ nối diễn tả sự kết luận, tóm tắt lại ý

* To conclude = In conclusion = In short = In brief = Briefly = (To put it) in a nutshell/Summarising/ Summing up/To sum up/ All in all/ After all/ Taking every into account/ consideration, ... (*nói tóm lại rằng/ để tóm tắt lại, để cô đọng lại,...* .

Eg 1: If we consider everything, this business is profitable.

Eg 2: Taking everything into account/consideration, this business is profitable.

Eg 3: Taking account of everything, this business is profitable.

Eg 4: All in all. the business is profitable.

Eg 5: Briefly/In brief/In conclusion/In short/(To put it) in a nutshell/ Summarising/ Summing up/To sum up, this business is profitable.

7. Từ nối diễn tả sự xảy ra theo thứ tự của các ý, các hành động.

* **First (of all)/In the first place/Firstly,... +1 clause:** Trước tiên là, thứ nhất là.. . .

* **In the second place/Second(ly),... +1 clause:** Thứ hai là

* **In the third place/Third(ly),... + 1 clause:** Thứ ba là

* **Then/Next/After that,... +1 clause:** Tiếp theo đó là.

* **Finally/Lastly/In the end/Last of all,...** Cuối cùng là

* **To begin with/To start with/For a start,... + 1 clause:** Để bắt đầu với. ..

* **To end with/To finish with/To conclude with**,...: Để kết thúc với. . .

* **In summary = To sum up = To conclude = In conclusion = In short = In brief + 1 clause** . . . (nói tóm lại rằng/ để tóm tắt lại, để cô đọng lại. . .

Eg: First, we must consider the fact that this year's income is lower than last year's; then, that we are working harder than last year.

8. Từ nói để đưa các ví dụ, dẫn chứng

* **For example = For instance** (ví dụ như là); **in particular = particularly** (cụ thể là..)

* **such as** (như là, theo sau là một loạt danh từ liệt kê;

* **that is/ that is to say/ namely** (đó chính là)

* **so on; so forth**: nhiều nhiều nữa, vân vân = **etc (et cetera)**

* **As a case in point**: Trường hợp cụ thể là

Eg 1: In this school, you can benefit a lot of things *such as* good learning condition, good teaching condition, good friendship, safety, *etc. (full form: et cetera)*

Eg 2: Working as a famous actor, he can get money, fame, troubles and *so on*.

Eg 3: Some snakes in this region are poisonous. *For example/For instance*, cobras and vipers.

Eg 4: Some snakes in this region are poisonous, *such as/like (less formal)* cobras and vipers.

Eg 5: Some snakes in this region are poisonous. *As a case in point*, we can mention cobras and vipers/We can mention cobras and vipers, *as a case in point*.

Eg 6: Some snakes in this region are poisonous. The cobra is *a case in point/A case in point* is the cobra.

9. Từ nói để diễn tả một ý ngoại trừ hay một điều gì đó hiển nhiên.

* **Apart from + NP**: tách ra khỏi

* **Except for + NP**: ngoại trừ

* **Needless to say**: không cần phải nói

* **Nothing to say/to mention**: Chẳng có gì để nói, để đề cập đến.

* **Let alone**: để riêng, chỉ riêng

Eg 1: *Apart from* a couple of incidents, our trip was marvellous/Our trip was marvellous, *apart from* a couple of incidents/A couple of incidents apart, our trip was marvellous.

Eg 2: *Except for* a couple of incidents, our trip was marvellous/Our trip was marvellous, *except for* a couple of incidents.

Eg 3: You were the only person to arrive on time. / *Nobody but /except* you arrived on time.

Eg 4: I do not think it necessary to say that you will have to bring your own forks and spoons.
= *Needless to say*, you will have to bring your own forks and spoons.

Eg 5: *It goes without saying* that you will have to bring your own forks and spoons.

Eg 6: We don't have enough money to buy food; and as you can imagine, it is impossible for us to pay the rent. = We don't have enough money to buy food, *let alone* pay the rent.

Eg 7: Last night's hailstorm ruined our fruit crop. But *this is not all*, it also caused a lot of damage to the trees. = Last's night hailstorm ruined our fruit crop, *to say nothing of/not to mention* the damage caused to the trees.

10. Restating (từ nói diễn tả sự giải thích lại, diễn đạt lại ý)

* **In other words** (nói một cách khác); **that is (to say)** (điều đó nói rằng. . .); **to put it simply** (để nói một cách đơn giản rằng. . .), **What we want to say is that**. . . (những gì chúng ta cần nói rằng. . .); **to put it in another way** (diễn đạt cách khác rằng. . .); **I mean** (tôi ý nói rằng. . .)

Eg 1: Experience is a necessity to apply for this job. *What we want to say* is that those who have no experience should not apply for it.

Eg 2: Experience is a necessity to apply for this job. *To put it another way*, those who have no experience should not apply for it.

Eg 3: Experience is a necessity to apply for this job, *that is (to say)* those who have no experience should not apply for it.

Eg 4: Well, my life has changed a lot since I met him. *What I want to say* is that I love him deeply.

Eg 5: Well, my life has changed a lot since I met him. *I mean*, I love him deeply.

14. Từ nối để đưa quan điểm chung và nhấn mạnh tầm quan trọng của một cái gì đó khác.

* **On the whole/By and large (informal)/Broadly speaking/Generally speaking/In general** (nói chung)

* **but, above all (else)/first and foremost** (nhưng, trên tất cả và đầu tiên và trước hết)

Eg 1: Everybody came to my party and enjoyed themselves very much. If we consider everything in general terms, it was a great success. Everybody came to my party and enjoyed themselves very much. *On the whole/By and large (informal)/ Broadly speaking/Generally speaking/In general*, it was a great success.

Eg 2: My sister is very intelligent, *but her best attribute is that* she is a hard-working girl.

Eg 3: My sister is very intelligent: *but, above all (else)/first and foremost*, she is a hard-working girl.

15. Từ nối để đưa thông tin chi tiết về cái gì đó hay không đồng ý với cái gì đã được đề cập trước đó.

* **In (actual) fact/In point of fact/As a matter of fact/Actually** (spoken): thực sự là, sự thật là, vấn đề của sự thật là.....;to be precise (chính xác là);

Eg 1: The weather was bad. It rained all the time to be precise.

Eg 2: The weather was bad. *In (actual) fact/In point of fact/As a matter of fact/Actually (spoken)*, it rained all the time.

Eg 3: She told me that he was a little bit retarded, which was not exactly true, as he was very retarded.

= She told me that he was a little bit retarded; but, *in (actual) fact/in point of fact/as a matter of fact/actually*, he was very retarded.

13. Từ nối để giới thiệu một chủ điểm.

* **In connection with** (nối kết với)/ **As regards/Regarding/In regard to/With regard to** (xem xét tới)/**As for/Apropos(of)** (về vấn đề liên quan tới)

* **In this regard/In this connection/On this score/In this respect/On this matter/On this subject/As regards this**, (về mặt này, về khía cạnh này, về điểm này, về chủ điểm này)

Eg 1: Something must be done about the drop in sales. - *In connection with* the drop in sales, something must be done about it.

Eg 2: *As regards/Regarding/In regard to/With regard to/As for/ Apropos (of)* the drop in sales, something must be done about it.

Eg 3: *As far as* the drop in sales is concerned, something must be done about it.

Eg 4: I have something to say about this. - *In this regard/In this connection/ On this score/In this respect/On this matter/On this subject/As regards this.* etc... I have something to say.

Một số từ nối khác

*** Or/ Else/ Otherwise (kéo không thì) + 1 clause**

Eg: We have to work hard, or/else/otherwise we will fail the exam.

*** Whereas (Trong khi- chỉ sự tương phản) + 1 clause**

Eg: He learns hard whereas his friends don't.

*** While (trong khi- chỉ sự việc xảy ra đồng thời) + 1 clause**

Eg: Don't sing while you work. / I was studying while he was listening to music.

*** Một số liên từ chỉ thời gian: After (sau khi); as = when (khi); as soon as (ngay khi); before (trước khi); till/ until (cho đến khi)**

Eg: The ship was checked carefully after she had been built.

I will phone you as soon as I come home

*** Proved that/ providing that + 1 clause: miễn là**

Eg: I will lend you my laptop provided (providing) that you use it carefully.

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentences below.

1. I can't ride my bicycle.....there isn't any air in one of the tires.
A. despite B. because C. although D. but
2. I got to class on time.....I had missed by bus.
A. even though B. nevertheless C. because D. despite
3. Brian used to been active person, but now he has to limit his activities.....problem with his health.
A. nevertheless B. because of C. although D. in spite of
4. It should be easy for Bod to find more time to spend with his children.....he no longer has to work in the evenings and on weekends.
A. even though B. now that C. due to D. but
5. Jake is a very good student of languages. His brother Michael,.....has never been able to master another language.
A. therefore B. even though
C. whereas D. on the other hand
6. The ancient Aztecs of Mexico had no technology for making tools from metal....., they had sharp knives and spears made from a stone called obsidian.
A. Whereas B. Although C. Nevertheless D. Despite
7. Roberts missed the meeting without a good reason. She had been told that it was critical that she be there. I couldn't want to be in her shoes at work tomorrow.
A. despite B. despite the fact that C. even D. however
8. I usually enjoy attending amateur productions in small community theaters. The play we attended last night,was so bad that I wanted to leave after the first act.
A. therefore B. however C. whereas D. even though
9. Some snakes are poisonous,.....other are harmless.
A. but B. so C. for D. despite
10. Most 15th century Europeans believed that the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth.....many sailors of the time refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters.

- A. due to the fact that B. Nevertheless C. Therefore D. Whereas
- 11.....the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.
- A. Due to B. Even if C. Provide that D. Unless
12. To power their inventions, people have made use of natural energy sources,.....coal, oil, water, and steam.
- A. in addition to B. as C. and they use D. such as
- 13.....excellent art museums, Moscow has a world-famous ballet company.
- A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to
14. It is still a good idea to know how to type,.....the many technological advances in typewriters and word processors, a skilled operator remains indispensable.
- A. Because of B. In spite of C. In case of D. In addition to
15. Even though a duck may live on water, it stays dry.....the oil on its feathers. The oil prevents the water from soaking through the feathers and reaching its skin.
- A. due to B. besides C. in spite of D. in event of
16. AlEg cannot express himself clearly and correctly in writing. He will never advance in his job he improves his language skills.
- A. otherwise B. if C. only if D. unless
- 17.....there was no electricity, I was able to read because I had a candle.
- A. Unless B. Even though C. Even D. Only if
18. A fire must have a readily available supply of oxygen....., it will stop burning
- A. Consequently B. Furthermore C. Otherwise D. However
19. I studied Spanish for your years in high school....., I had trouble taking with people when I was traveling in Spain.
- A. Therefore B. On the other hand C. Moreover D. Nevertheless
20. I'm sorry you've decided not to go with us on the river trip, but.....you change your mind, there will still be enough room on the boat for you.
- A. even B. nevertheless
- C. in the even that D. provided that
21. I like to keep the windows open at night no matter how cold it gets. My wife,.....prefers a warm bedroom with all windows tightly shut.
- A. nevertheless B. consequently C. on the other hand D. moreover
22. Some fish can survive only in salt water,.....other species can live only in fresh water.
- A. whereas B. unless C. if D. since
23.Jason became famous, he has ignored his old friends. He shouldn't do that.
- A. if B. Ever since C. Even though D. Due to
24. We're going to lose this game.....the team doesn't start playing better soon.
- A. if B. unless C. although D. whereas
25. My two children are cooking dinner for the family for the first time tonightthe food is terrible, I'm going to enjoy this meal very much. It will be fun to have them cook for me a change.
- A. Only if B. if C. Even if D. Provided that
26. Jack insisted that he didn't need any help,.....I helped him anyway.
- A. and B. so C. besides D. but

27. Florida is famous for its tourist attractions. Its coastline offers excellent white sand beaches.....
it has warm, sunny weather.
A. Otherwise B. Furthermore
C. Nevertheless D. On the other hand
28. The flowers will soon start to bloom.....winter is gone and the weather is beginning to get warmer.
A. event if B. agree I C. I agree D. I will agree
29. Only if you promise to study hard.....to tutor you.
A. will I agree B. agree I C. I agree D. I will agree
30. Camels have either one hump or two humps, the Arabian camel has one hump.
A. nevertheless B. however C. furthermore D. otherwise

Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences below with the connectors given in brackets.

1. He is too short to be a basketball player. (**because**)
.....
2. Although I approve of parties, I can't let you give one tonight. (**much as**)
.....
3. As you have not performed your duties, you will be expelled from the club. (**consequently**)
.....
4. 'However fast I ran, I was always in the same place,' she dreamt. (**although**)
.....
5. His father has died, so he is crying his heart out. (**owing to**)
.....
6. These are the rules, but there are exceptions. (**nevertheless**)
.....
7. I neither love you nor I want to see you again. (**what's more**)
.....
8. Majorca is a paradise for tourists; this is the consequence of its popularity. (**hence**)
.....
9. The cause of his death was a heart attack. (**due to**)
.....
10. As our business is going from bad to worse, we will have to close down. (**as a result**)
.....
11. Many people are dying from lack of food everyday in the Third World. (**on account of**)
.....
12. We will have to work hard at it because time is pressing on. (**so**)
.....
13. No matter how much you hate them, you will have to live with them. (**even if**)
.....
14. We will have to take strict measures, since the unemployment rate has increased. (**thus**)
.....
15. You have failed all your exams, so we will not buy you the bike we promised. (**since**)
.....
16. The lack of discipline was the reason they lost the battle. (**through**)
.....

-
17. Even though he was happy, he felt lonely at times. (**happy though**)
-
18. In spite of being clever with his hands, he couldn't fix it. (**clever as**)
-
19. The padlock I bought was not big enough for the gate. (**but**)
-
20. He could not live without her, so he consented to all her wishes. (**for**)
-
21. We have considered your proposal thoroughly, but we are afraid to tell you that we cannot assent to it. (**however**)
-
22. We were in a hurry, so we didn't wait for them. (**the reason**)
-
23. Nobody dared to dissent from the decision of the prime minister, but she did. (**all the same**)
-
24. If it hadn't been for her, I would have drowned. (**thanks to**)
-
25. Although she had told him that she would always be true to him, she wasn't. (**in spite of**)
-
26. It was snowing heavily, but they went on climbing. (**despite**)
-
27. Despite being caught driving dangerously, he was not fined. (**all the same**)
-
28. I know you don't love me; but, even so, I'll marry you. (**even though**)
-
29. As well as being well-trained for the post, she is beautiful. (**in addition to**)
-
30. These fairy cakes are not only homemade, but they also have the best-quality ingredients. (**besides**)
-

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences below with the connectors given in brackets.

1. You will have to carry, for example, a hundred pounds. (**let's say**)
-
2. If we don't take into account the people next door, everybody in the neighbourhood is lovely. (**except for**)
-
3. You should attend to your guests. Don't forget you're the hostess. (**after all**)
-
4. Consequently, we can reach the conclusion that something must be done to put an end to violence on the streets and drug trafficking. (**summing up**)
-
5. As well as being a very good guitarist, he also sings beautifully. (**apart from**)
-

6. They lost all their money in a shady business. But this is not all, they took a loan out of the bank and lost it as well (**not to mention**)
7. I reckon you should put your cards on the table. (**the way I see it**)
8. She likes many romantic poets. For instance, Coleridge, Wordsworth, Byron and Keats. (**like**)
9. You're the only person that can make me happy. (**except**)
10. They had little confidence in him, so they abandoned him to his fate. (**for**)
11. They couldn't reach the peak because it had snowed heavily. (**as a result of**)
12. The country's economy is becoming better and better. For example, inflation is stabilising now. (**a case in point**)
13. There is no necessity to mention that all applicants must identify themselves before the interview. (**needless to say**)
14. For my part, I found his remarks unnecessary. (**personally**)
15. Time is short, so we'll have to hurry. (**since**)
16. We'll grant you a favour because your days are numbered. (**which is why**)
17. Therefore, we can draw the following conclusion: we made a substantial profit last year. (**in conclusion**)
18. I think you shouldn't argue with them about politics. (**to my way of thinking**)
19. If I can't carry my belongings, how do you expect me to carry yours? (**let alone**)
20. Money is what makes the world go round. What I want to say is that the more money you have, the more powerful you become. (**that is to say**)
21. Hatred creates even more hatred. What I want to say is that the more you hate somebody, the more they will hate you. (**to put it another way**)
22. He is the most important person in this company. What I want to say is that he is the boss. (**that is**)
23. If we consider military service in general terms, it is a waste of time and money. (**on the whole**)

24. I don't mind what time you arrive home. The most important thing is that you arrive safe and sound.

(**above all**)

25. He has presented several television shows; but, most importantly, he is a journalist. (**first and foremost**)

26. If we speak in general terms, this play may be divided into four main parts. (**broadly speaking**)

27. If we talk generally, Eivissa is one of the best holiday spots in the world. (**by and large**)

28. She told me that the grammar exercises were as easy as falling off a log; but it was untrue, since I found them very difficult. (**as a matter of fact**)

29. The weather forecaster said that today would be quite hot, but it is quite chilly. (**in fact**)

30. I don't want to see them any more. The truth is that I hate them. (in actual fact)

31. They said that they had done all the work, but the truth of the matter is that they had done nothing. (**in point of fact**)

32. She told me that she was as poor as a church mouse, which was not true, as she was loaded. (**actually**)

33. With reference to your application for the job as a sales representative, we are glad to inform you that it will be offered to you. (**regarding**)

34. Concerning your brother, he is the most qualified person for the post. (**in regard to**)

35. In connection with air pollution, the government should take stronger measures to combat it. (**as for**)

36. In connection to what he stated yesterday, we consider it the most appropriate alternative. (**apropos**)

37. The government should act at once about the decline in the country's exports. (**as far as**)

38. Taking everything into account, we must do something to stop burglars. (**in a nutshell**)

39. We want you to write to us regularly; but, most importantly, don't forget to telephone us. (**above all else**)

40. Firstly, it rained heavily that weekend. Secondly, I felt unwell most of the time, (**on the one hand, on the other**)

PHẦN 11: TÍNH TỪ (ADJECTIVE), TRẠNG TỪ (ADVERB) VÀ CÁC CÁCH SO SÁNH.

A. KIẾN THỨC CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

1. Tính từ và vị trí của tính từ trong câu:

- Tính từ là từ chỉ tính chất, mức độ, phạm vi.... của một người hoặc vật. Nó bổ nghĩa cho danh từ, đại từ hoặc liên từ (linking verb).

- Tính từ luôn đứng trước danh từ được bổ nghĩa: That is her old brown hat.

- Tính từ đứng sau các đại từ phiếm chỉ (something, anything, anybody...)

That's someone strange to me/ I'd like to eat something spicy

- Tính từ đứng sau linking verb như:

be	remain	stay	feel	look	become
appear	sound	taste	turn	smell	seem

Eg: Jack appears tired. / This food tastes salty.

Nếu trong một cụm từ có nhiều tính từ cùng bổ nghĩa cho một danh từ thì thứ tự các tính từ sẽ như sau: **tính từ sở hữu hoặc mạo từ, opinion, size, shape, age, color, origin, material, purpose.**

Eg: - a tall young blonde Italian lady

- a short fat old man

- a big square dining room

Chú ý:

* Danh từ dùng làm tính từ

Trong tiếng Anh có nhiều trường hợp một danh từ đứng trước một danh từ khác làm nhiệm vụ của một tính từ (a wool coat, a gold watch, a history teacher). Các liên kết số đếm - danh từ (number-noun) luôn được ngăn cách bởi dấu gạch nối:

Eg: We had a five-week holiday. / These are ten kilo bags.

* Phân từ được dùng như tính từ: Chúng ta có hai loại phân từ (Participles):

- Hiện tại phân từ (**present participles**): **V-ing** mang ý chủ động, tích cực.

- Quá khứ phân từ (**past participles**) **V-ed/ V3** thường mang ý bị động.

EG: - frightening news (tin tức đáng sợ, tin gây sợ hãi) # frightened people: những người bị sợ hãi

- boiling water (nước đang sôi) # boiled water (nước đã đun sôi)

- polluting waste (chất thải gây ô nhiễm) # polluted water (nước bị ô nhiễm)

2. Trạng từ (Phó từ) và vị trí của trạng từ

- Trạng từ (Phó từ) bổ nghĩa cho động từ, cho một tính từ hoặc cho một phó từ khác.

- Thông thường, các tính từ mô tả có thể biến đổi thành phó từ bằng cách thêm đuôi **-ly** vào tính từ:

He is a careful driver. He always drives carefully.

* Một số tính từ chuyển sang trạng từ theo cách riêng:

good => well; hard => hard; fast => fast; late => late (soon/ early/fair/high)

* Một số tính từ cũng có tận cùng là đuôi **ly** (lovely, friendly/lively) nên để thay thế cho phó từ của các tính từ này, người ta dùng: **in a + Adj + way/ manner**

He is a friendly man. He behaved me in a friendly way.

* Một số trạng từ có đuôi 'ly' nhưng nghĩa khác hẳn:

- Hardly = hardly any time/almost no time/ never. Eg: She hardly passed her examinations.

- Fairly. Eg: Fairly, she doesn't love him but she loves his money.

- Lately. Eg: She hasn't seen him lately # she often comes to class late.

- Nearly = almost. Eg: She nearly dropped all plates # the truck came quite near me.

- Highly = very. Eg: I highly appreciate your help. # The balloon didn't go very high

- Mostly =mainly/usually. Eg: we mostly travel by train # What I hate most is telling lies

3. Các cách so sánh

3.1. So sánh ngang bằng

S + V + as + {adj/ adv} + as + {noun/ pronoun}/ (S + Auxiliary verb)

Eg: She is as intelligent as her mother. / He works as fast as his lather does.

3.2. So sánh không ngang bằng

S + V + not so/as + {adj/ adv} + as + {noun/ pronoun}/ (S + Auxiliary verb)

Eg: Lan is not as fat as her mother. /He didn't come as late as we (do).

3.3. So sánh kém hơn

S + V + less + {adj/ adv} + than + noun/ pronoun}/ (S + Auxiliary verb)

Eg: She is less carefull than her brother. / She drives less carefully than her husband(does)

3.4. So sánh hơn

S + V + {short- adj/ adv} + er + than + noun/ pronoun}/ (S + Auxiliary verb)

S + V + more {long- adj/ adv} + than + noun/ pronoun}/ (S + Auxiliary verb)

Eg: Today is wanner than yesterday. /This apartment is more expensive than others.

Her brother studies harder than she (does) / He speaks English more fluently than I (do).

Chú ý: Short adjective/ adverbs là những từ một âm tiết hoặc từ tận cùng bằng: y/ow/ le (pretty/ easy/ early/ gentle/ slow/...): Long adjective / adverbs là những từ hai âm tiết trở lên hoặc từ tận cùng bằng: ing/ ed

Để nhấn mạnh sự so sánh, chúng ta thêm: far/ much/ a lot/ (nhiều); a bit/ a little/ slightly (một ít) trước tính từ và trạng từ so sánh

EG: She is getting much fatter. / It is becoming darker and darker.

3.5. So sánh bậc nhất (từ 3 đối tượng trở lên)

S + V + the { short- adj/ adv} + est	{in + N (singular count noun)}
S + V + the most { long- adj/ adv	{of + N (plural count noun)}
S + V + the least + adj/ adv} +	

EG: John is the tallest boy in the family. / These shoes are the least expensive of all. (Sau cụm từ One of the + so sánh bậc nhất + noun (số nhiều), và động từ phải chia ở số ít.

Eg: One of the greatest tennis players in the world is Johnson. /

So sánh của các tính từ và phó từ đặc biệt

Tính từ Hoặc trạng từ	So sánh hơn/ kém	So sánh nhất	Tính từ hoặc trạng từ	So sánh hơn/ kém	So sánh nhất
much many	more	Most	Far	farther further	farthest furthest
good well	better	Best	Old	older elder	oldest eldest
bad badly	worse	Worst	little few	less fewer	least fewest

Lưu ý: - *farther* dùng cho khoảng cách; *further* dùng cho thông tin hoặc các trường hợp trừu tượng khác.
- *Elder* dùng cho anh em trong gia/ *older* dùng cho các trường hợp khác.

3.6. Phép so sánh không hợp lý

- **Sở hữu cách:** His drawings are as perfect as his instructor's. / (instructor's = instructor's drawings)

- **Dùng that of thay thế cho danh từ số ít:**

The life of a rich man is more comfortable than that of a poor man. / (that of = the life of)

- **Dùng those of thay cho các danh từ số nhiều:**

The books of Mr. Nam's bookshop are cheaper than those of Mrs Lan's. / (those of = the books of)

3.7. So sánh bội số là so sánh: bằng nửa (half), gấp đôi (twice), gấp ba (three times)..

S + V + number multiple + as + much/ many + (noun) + as + noun/ pronoun

Nam has half as many CDs now as I had last year. / Minh ate three times as much food as Lan.

3.8. So sánh kép: Là loại so sánh với cấu trúc: Càng... càng. . .

The + comparative + S + V + the + comparative + S + V

The hotter it is, the more miserable I feel. / The bigger they are, the faster they fall

The more + S + V + the + comparative + S + V

The more you study, the smarter you will become. / (Càng học, anh càng thông minh hơn)

3.9. So sánh hơn kém không dùng than (giữa 2 đối tượng): Trong câu thường có cụm từ of the two + noun, nó có thể đứng đầu hoặc cuối câu.

Harvey is the smarter of the two boys. / Of the two shirts, this one is the prettier.

Pealse give me the smaller of the two cakes. / Of the two books, this one is the more interesting.

Một số cấu trúc so sánh khác

* Khi so sánh bằng danh từ, sử dụng cấu trúc sau:

S + V + the same + (noun) + as + {noun/ pronoun}

S + V + such (a/an) + (noun) + as + {noun/ pronoun}

EG: My house is the same height as his (house). / I've never seen such a nice girl as her.

* **to differ from/ different from {noun/ pronoun}**. EG: Their teacher differs (is different) from ours.

* **to be similar to {noun/ pronoun}** Eg: Their ideas are similar to mine (my ideas).

* **to be like/ to look like/ to sound like/ to taste like + noun/ . . .** Eg: This sounds like a great success.

* **to be alike:** Eg: Their ideas are alike

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1: Put the ajectives in the brakets into the correct order to have a meaningful noun phrases.

1. a (rectangular, cream, modern).....bathroom

2. (silken, pretty, long).....hair

3. a (dreadful, pink, old).....chinawear

4. a (processing, new, central, tiny)unit

5. a (tired, local, camera).....crew

6. (vast, green, beautiful).....plains

7. a (vegetable, large, Greek).....trailer

8. a (middle-aged, good-looking, black, pop).....star

9. a (traffic, two-hour).....jam

10. a (dangerous, New York, gloomy).....alleyway

11. a(n) (brand-new, sports, mustard, American)car

12. a (fantastic, delightful).....evening

13. You look very (pretty, elegant).....on that dress.

14. a (toilet, horrible, lilac).....bag.
15. a(n) (enormous, sky-blue, round).....spaceship
16. the (wonderful, colourful).....scenery
17. a(n) (old, breakdown, red, white).....truck
18. a (leather, brown, pretty, turquoise).....handbag
19. a(n) (long-distance, obstacle).....course
20. a (country, magnificent).....house
21. a (tangerine, silk, lime, dreadful).....shirt
22. a pair of (Catalan, expensive).....mocassins
23. a(n) (ice, peach, modern).....bucket
24. a(n) (Chinese, blue, dining, oval).....table
25. a pair of (cheap, football, black, yellow)..... boots

Exercise 2: Choose the correct form of the participles used as adjectives in the following sentences

1. Compassionate friends tried to console the (*crying / cried*) victims of the accident.
2. When James noticed the (*burning / burnt*) building, he notified the fire department immediately.
3. The (*exciting/ excited*) passengers jumped into the lifeboats when notified that the ship was sinking.
4. The (*smiling / smiled*) Mona Lisa is on display in the Louvre in Paris.
5. The wind made such (*frightening/frightened*) noises that the children ran to their parents' room.
6. The (*frightening/frightened*) hostages only wanted to be left alone.
7. We saw the (*advancing / advanced*) army from across the town.
8. Mrs. Harris's (*approving / approved*) smile let us know that our speeches were well done.
9. Our representative presented the (*approving /approved*) plan to the public.
10. The (*blowing/ blown*) wind of the hurricane damaged the waterfront property.
11. We were going to see the movie at the Theater, but our friends told us it was a (*boring/bored*) movie.
12. Mary's (*cleaning /cleaned*) service comes every Wednesday.
13. The (*cleaning / cleaned*) shoes were placed in the sun to dry.
14. We found it difficult to get through the (*closing /closed*) door without a key.
15. As we entered the (*crowding/crowded*) room. I noticed my cousin.
16. Dr. Jameson told my brother to elevate his (*aching/ ached*) foot.
17. I was (*disappointing/disappointed*) with the film. I had expected it to be better.
18. The (*breaking / broken*) dishes lay on the floor.
19. The (*trembling / trembled*) children were given a blanket for warmth.
20. The (*interesting / interested*) tennis match caused a great deal of excitement.

Exercise 3: Choose the right word, adjective or adverb.

1. The floor looks *clean/ cleanly*.
2. The plane landed *safe/safely* on the runway.
3. The man looked *honest/ honestly*, but he wasn't.
4. Jane looked at her book *thoughtful/ thoughtfully* before she answered the teacher's question.
5. A rose smells *good/ well*.
6. Beth spoke *confident/confidently* when she delivered her speech.
7. Most of the students did *good/ well* on their tests.
8. He spoke *angry/ angrily*
9. He seemed very *angry/ angrily*.

10. The teacher taught us very *careful/ carefully*.

Exercise 4: Write the comparative/ superlative of a word from the box for each blank.

<i>beautifully</i>	<i>early</i>	<i>fast</i>
<i>fluently</i>		
<i>hard</i>	<i>late</i>	<i>peacefully</i>
<i>sensitively</i>		

1. If we don't walk....., we'll never arrive on time.
2. She sings.....than any one else I've ever heard.
3. Andy's the most intelligent, but Sue works.....
4. Eight is late - could you possibly get here any.....
5. Of all the children, Helen writes.....
6. I would sleep.....if I weren't worried about Tom.
7. For the 10. 20 train,.....we can leave home is 10.
8. Mark speaks French.....of all the boys in his class.

Exercise 5: Make sentences like the one in the example

Example. He drives fast, he gets nervous.

~ The faster he drives, the more nervous he gets; and the more nervous he gets, the faster he drives.

1. He eats ice-cream; he gets fat. (*The more ice cream.....*)

.....

2. He reads, he forgets.

.....

3. She ignores him; he loves her.

.....

4. She buys shoes; she wants shoes.

.....

5. We spend money; we have friends.

.....

6. I sleep; I'm tired.

.....

Exercise 6: Complete each sentence by choosing the most suitable word or phrase

1. I really think that apologizing is.....you can do.

A. no as much as

B. a little

C. the least

D. as far as

2. I can't stand this weather. It's getting.....

A. more and more

B. worse and worse

C. coldest and coldest

D. further and further

3. Although Brenda came last, everyone agreed she had.....her best.

A. done

B. made

C. had

D. got

4. I wish Charles worked as hard as Mary.....

A. did

B. can

C. will

D. does

5. The more you water this plant, the.....it will grow.

A. best

B. tall

C. wetter

D. faster

6. From now on, we won't be able to go out as much as we.....

- | | | | |
|---------|--------|------------|---------|
| A. were | B. had | C. used to | D. will |
|---------|--------|------------|---------|
7. I've never owned.....independent cat as this one.
- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|---------|---------------|
| A. a more than | B. such an | C. a so | D. as much an |
|----------------|------------|---------|---------------|
8. Brian has been working.....since he was promoted.
- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
| A. much harder | B. as harder | C. just as hardly | D. more hardly |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|----------------|
9. I've been feeling.....tired lately, doctor.
- | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|---------|
| A. such a | B. the most | C. more and more | D. much |
|-----------|-------------|------------------|---------|
10. This exercise will give you.....practice.
- | | | | |
|------------|--------------|--------------|----------|
| A. farther | B. much more | C. as better | D. a lot |
|------------|--------------|--------------|----------|

Exercise 7: Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. That's the best meal I've ever eaten.
→I've never eaten
2. Fish and meat are the same price in some countries.
→Fish costs
3. I've never enjoyed myself so much.
→I've never had
4. If you run a lot, you will get fitter.
→The more
5. The doctor can't see you earlier than Wednesday I'm afraid.
→Wednesday is
6. I must have a rest. I can't walk any more.
→I must have a rest. I can't go
7. Home computers used to be much more expensive.
→Home computers aren't
8. I don't know as much Italian as Sue does.
→Sue knows
9. I thought that learning to drive would be difficult, but it isn't.
→Learning to drive is
10. Barbara can skate just as well as John can.
→John isn't
11. Jill can run faster than Peter.
→Peter.....
12. I thought this journey would last longer than it did.
→This journey didn't
13. I didn't arrive as early as I expected.
→I arrived
14. You are working too slowly.
→You'll have to
15. I have a brother who is older than me.
→I have an
16. Martin thought the second part of the film was more interesting.
→Martin didn't think the first.....
17. Paula's work is less careful than Peter's.

→Paula has been working

18. There aren't any trains earlier than this one.

→This is.....

19. All other pubs are further away.

→This pub

20. Is this the best price you can offer?

→ Can't you

Exercise 8. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word given in capitals.

1. Your car was cheaper than mine.

COST.....

2. I'm not as good at maths as you are.

BETTER.....

3. Keith is slightly taller than Nigel.

LITTLE.....

4. Bill was growing angrier all the time.

AND.....

5. Sally tried as hard as she could.

BEST.....

6. I thought this film would be better.

AS.....

7. This is the bumpiest road I've ever driven along.

SUCH.....

8. When you eat a lot, you get fat.

MORE.....

9. George said he couldn't do any better.

COULD.....

10. This year's exam and last year's exam were equally difficult.

JUST.....

PHẦN 12: CẤU TRÚC ĐỘNG TỪ: VERB STRUCTURES

A. KIẾN THỨC CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Trong Tiếng Anh, động từ đi với động từ phải theo một công thức nào đó, hay nói cách khác động từ theo sau động từ chính sẽ ở dạng nguyên thể có 'to' (to-infinitive) nguyên thể không 'to' (bare infinitive) nguyên thể tiếp diễn (to be V-ing), nguyên thể hoàn thành (to have done) hay dạng hiện tại phân từ (V-ing), quá khứ phân từ (having done). Sau đây là một số cấu trúc động từ.

1. Form 1:

S + V1 + V2 (Bare Infinitive)

V1 = can / could / will / would / shall / should / may / might / must / need (aux) had better / would rather.....

Eg: You should stop smoking/ I can use computer very well/ I would rather/I'd rather stay at home.

*** let / have (have got)/ make.....+ Object + Verb (Bare Infinitive)**

Eg: My father doesn't let me ride motorbike. / He has someone clean his car.

2. Form 2:

S + V1 + V2 (To-Infinitive)

V1 = decide / want / hope / promise / agree / plan / manage / refuse / threaten / learn / fail / tend / intend / arrange / aim / attempt / afford / offer / would like / would love / would prefer / desire / expect / prepare / seem,....

Eg: We have decided to take this exam. / We promise to study well.

3. Form 3:

S + V1 + Object + V2 (To-Infinitive)

V1 = want / get / ask / invite / advise / expect / tell / remind / force / enable / encourage / warn / persuade / allow / permit / teach / instruct / forbid / recommend / order / urge / prepare,...

Eg: She invited me to go to her party. / She asked me to give this dictionary to you.

4. Form 4:

S + V1 + Adjective + V (To-Infinitive)

Adjs = anxious / boring / eager / easy / pleased / usual / prepared / common / dangerous / good / ready / difficult / hard / strange / able / possible / unable / impossible...

Eg: It's boring to stay at home all day/ he is eager to learn English/ It is dangerous to drive too fast.

5. Form 5:

S + V + to / in order to/ so as to/-Infinitive

(dùng để diễn tả mục đích làm gì)

Eg: I go to school to learn / in order to learn / so as to learn.

6. Form 6:

S + V1 + V2 (V-ing)

V1 = enjoy / mind / finish / hate / give up / quit / practice / risk / delay / put off / keep / keep on / carry on / imagine / avoid / consider / allow / permit / advise / fancy / postpone / detest / forbid / encourage / suggest / recommend / deny / admit / miss / report / appreciate / recall / . . .

Eg: Do you enjoy *playing* soccer?/ He admitted having stolen money from his friends

Một số động từ mà ngữ nghĩa của chúng sẽ đổi khác hoàn toàn khi tân ngữ sau nó là một động từ nguyên thể hoặc verb-ing.

Stop to do smt: dừng lại để làm gì

Eg: He stopped to talk to me = Anh ta dừng lại để nói chuyện với tôi.

Stop doing smt: dừng làm việc gì

Eg: He stopped talking to me and went out = Anh ta ngừng nói với tôi và bỏ ra ngoài.

Remember to do smt: Nhớ sẽ phải làm gì

Eg: Remember to lock the door before going out. = Hãy nhớ khoá cửa trước khi đi ra ngoài nhé!

Remember doing smt: Nhớ là đã làm gì

Eg: I remember locking the door before leaving, but now I can't find the key.

Đặc biệt nó thường được dùng với mẫu câu: S + still remember + V-ing: vẫn còn nhớ là đã...

Eg: I still remember meeting him at Jenny's house.

*** Forget to do smt:** quên sẽ phải làm gì

Eg: I forgot to buy some butter so we don't have any butter now. = Tôi quên không mua ít bơ.

Forget doing smt: (quên là đã làm gì). Đặc biệt nó thường được dùng với mẫu câu **S will never forget +**

V-ing: sẽ không bao giờ quên được là đã...

Eg: She will never forget meeting her boyfriend at the first time.

Cô ấy sẽ không bao giờ quên lần đầu tiên gặp bạn trai của mình.

* **Regret to do smt**: Lấy làm tiếc vì phải làm gì (thường dùng khi báo tin xấu)

Eg: We regret to inform the passengers that the flight for Hanoi was canceled because of the bad weather.

Regret doing smt: Lấy làm tiếc vì đã làm gì

Eg: He regrets getting married at very young age. It's the biggest mistake in his life.

Một số các động từ đặc biệt khác: Đó là những động từ ở trong các mẫu câu khác nhau sẽ có ý nghĩa khác nhau.

* **agree to do smt**: đồng ý làm gì:

Eg: He agreed to leave early tomorrow morning.

* **agree to one's doing smt**: đồng ý với việc ai làm gì. :

Eg: He agreed to my leaving early tomorrow morning.

* **Mean to do smt**: có ý định làm gì. :

Eg: I mean to get to the top of the hill before sunrise.

If it + mean + verb-ing: cho dù cả việc, bao hàm cả việc làm gì.

Eg: I was determined to study overseas if it meant learning English well..

* **Propose to do smt**: có ý định làm gì. :

Eg: I propose to work for that company.

Propose doing smt: Đề nghị làm gì:

Eg: I propose waiting till the boss comes back.

* **Go on doing smt/smt**: tiếp tục làm gì, cái gì (một việc đang bị bỏ dở);

Eg: He went on writing after a break

Go on to do smt: Quay sang tiếp tục làm gì (vẫn về cùng một vấn đề nhưng chuyển sang khía cạnh khác)

Eg: He showed the picture of his family then went on to tell about his family.

* **Try to do smt**: cố gắng làm gì:

Eg: He tried to solve his own financial problems.

Try doing smt: Thử làm gì: *Eg*: I try eating this strange kind of food.

❖ **Động từ đứng sau giới từ**: Tất cả các động từ đứng ngay sau giới từ đều phải ở dạng V-ing.

Sau đây là bảng các động từ có giới từ theo sau, vì vậy các động từ khác đi sau động từ này phải dùng ở dạng verb-ing.

Verb + prepositions + V-ing			
approve of be better of count on depend on	give up insist on keep on put off	rely on succeed in think about think of	worry about object to look forward to confess to
accustomed to afraid of	intent on interested in	capable of fond of	successful in tired of
Be busy with	have difficulty (in)	spend (time/ money) on st/ doing st	waste time/ money doing st

Eg: I look forward to seeing you soon. / She is surprised at getting a prize.

I have some difficulties (in) working here. / She spends a lot of money on clothes/ buying clothes

My father gave up smoking because of his doctor's advice.

My sister is thinking of going to France next year.

❖ **Noun + preposition + verb-ing**

Noun + prepositions + V-ing

choice of	intention of	possibility of	(method of)
excuse for	method for	reason for	

Eg: There is no reason for staying here. / Lan has no intention of breaking your camera.

❖ **Động từ đi sau tính từ: Nói chung, nếu động từ đi ngay sau tính từ (không có giới từ) thì được dùng ở dạng nguyên thể.** Những tính từ đó bao gồm.

<i>anxious</i>	<i>eager</i>	<i>pleased</i>	<i>usual</i>
<i>boring</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>prepared</i>	<i>common</i>
<i>dangerous</i>	<i>good</i>	<i>ready</i>	<i>difficult</i>
<i>hard</i>	<i>strange</i>	<i>able</i>	

Eg: It is dangerous to drive so fast in this busy street. / Minh is anxious to see his boss

We are ready to go now. / It is difficult to pass this test.

Chú ý: *able* và *capable* có nghĩa như nhau nhưng cách dùng khác nhau: (**able/ unable**) **to do smt** = (**capable/ incapable**) **of doing smt**.

❖ **Trường hợp tân ngữ là V-ing**

Trong trường hợp tân ngữ là một V- ing thì đại từ/danh từ phải ở dạng sở hữu.

Subject + verb + {pronoun/ noun {(possessive form)} + verb-ing...

Eg: We understand your not being able to come to my party. /

We object to their picking up flowers in the park.

* **Một số cấu trúc động từ theo sau nó là nguyên thể hoàn thành và phân từ hoàn thành.**

* **Dùng với một số động từ: *to appear, to seem, to happen, to pretend***

- Nên nhớ rằng hành động của nguyên mẫu hoàn thành xảy ra trước hành động của mệnh đề chính.

Eg: He seems to have passed the exam = It seems that he has passed the exam.

She pretended to have read the material = She pretended that she had read the material.

* **Dùng với *sorry, to be sorry + to have + P2*: Hành động của nguyên mẫu hoàn thành xảy ra trước trạng thái *sorry*.**

Eg: The girls were sorry to have missed the Rock Concert

(The girls were sorry that they had missed the Rock Concert.)

* **Dùng với một số các động từ sau đây ở thể bị động: *to acknowledge, believe, consider, find, know, report, say, suppose, think, understand*. Hành động của nguyên mẫu hoàn thành xảy ra trước hành động của mệnh đề chính.**

Eg: He was believed to have gone out of the country.

(It was believed that he had gone out of the country.)

* **Dùng với một số các động từ khác như *to claim, expect, hope, promise*. Đặc biệt lưu ý rằng hành động của nguyên mẫu hoàn thành sẽ ở *future perfect* so với thời của động từ ở mệnh đề chính.**

Eg: He expects to have graduated by June.

(He expects that he will have graduated by June.)

He promised to have told me the secret by the end of this week.

(He promised that he would have told me the secret by the end of this week.)

*** Cách sử dụng to get trong một số trường hợp**

*** To get + P2:** *get washed/ dressed/prepared/ lost/ drowned/engaged/ married/ divorced.*

Chỉ việc chủ ngữ tự làm lấy một việc gì hoặc tình huống mà chủ ngữ đang gặp phải.

(Chú ý: không được lẫn trường hợp này với dạng bị động.)

Eg: She is very sad because she has just got divorced.

My son got lost in the market yesterday.

*** Get + V-ing = Start + V-ing:** Bắt đầu làm gì

Eg: We'd better get moving, it's late.

*** Get sb/smt + V-ing:** Làm cho ai/ cái gì bắt đầu.

Eg: Please get him talking about his aim of doing that.

*** Get to do st:** Tìm được cách làm gì

Eg: We should get to know about English culture.

*** Get to do st:** Có cơ may làm gì.

Eg: When do I get to have a better job.

*** Get to do st:** Được phép làm gì

Eg: At last we got to meet the headmaster.

*** Get + to + Verb (về hành động) = Come + to + Verb (về nhận thức) = Gradually = dần dần**

Eg: We will get to speak English more easily as time goes by.

He comes to understand that his situation is not too bad.

*** Cách sử dụng 'to be' trong một số trường hợp**

*** To be of + noun = to have:** có (dùng để chỉ tính chất hoặc linh cảm)

Eg: Mary is of a gentle nature = Mary có một bản chất tử tế.

*** To be of + noun:** Nhấn mạnh cho danh từ đứng đằng sau

Eg: Hoa Hong restaurant is of (ở ngay) the center of the city.

*** To be + to + verb:** là dạng câu tạo đặc biệt, sử dụng trong trường hợp:

- Để truyền đạt các mệnh lệnh hoặc các chỉ dẫn từ ngôi thứ nhất qua ngôi thứ hai đến ngôi thứ ba.

Eg: No one is to leave this building without the permission of the police.

- Dùng với mệnh đề *if* khi mệnh đề chính diễn đạt một câu điều kiện: Một điều phải xảy ra trước nếu muốn một điều khác xảy ra. (Nếu muốn... thì phải..)

Eg: If we are to get there by lunch time we had better hurry.

Something must be done quickly if the environment are to be protected perfectly.

- Được dùng để thông báo những yêu cầu xin chỉ dẫn:

Eg: He asked the guide where he was to go next.

- Được dùng khá phổ biến để truyền đạt một dự định, một sự sắp đặt, đặc biệt khi nó là chính thức.

Eg: She is to get married next month. / I am to go to London next month.

*** was/ were + S + to + verb = if + S + were + to + verb = thể nếu (một giả thuyết)**

Eg: Were I to tell you that he won the first prize, would you believe me.

*** was/ were + to + verb:** Để diễn đạt ý tưởng về một số mệnh đã định sẵn

Eg: They said goodbye without knowing that they were never to meet again.

*** to be about to + verb = near future (sắp sửa)/** *Eg: They are about to leave.*

*** Một số cấu trúc câu khiến (causative)**

*** To have sb do sth = to get sb to do sth = Sai ai, khiến ai. Bảo ai làm gì**

Eg: I'll have him fix my car. / I'll get him to fix my car.

#**To have/to get sth done** = làm một việc gì bằng cách thuê người khác

Eg: I have my hair cut. (Tôi đi cắt tóc - chứ không phải tôi tự cắt)

I have my car washed. (Tôi mang xe đi rửa ngoài dịch vụ - không phải tự rửa)

* **To make sb do sth = to force sb to do sth** = Bắt buộc ai phải làm gì

Eg: The robbers made the shop keeper give them all the money.

- Đằng sau tân ngữ của *make* còn có thể dùng 1 tính từ: **To make sb/sth + adj**

Eg: Wearing a necklace made her more beautiful.

* **To make sb + P2** = làm cho ai bị làm sao: Working all night on Friday made me tired on Saturday.

= **To cause sth + P2** = làm cho cái gì bị làm sao

Eg: The big thunder flood caused many houses damaged.

Chú ý: Nếu tân ngữ của *make* là một động từ nguyên thể thì phải đặt *it* giữa *make* và tính từ, đặt động từ ra phía đằng sau: *make it + adj + V as object*.

Eg: The wire service made it possible to collect and distribute news faster and cheaper

Tuy nhiên nếu tân ngữ của *make* là 1 danh từ hay 1 ngữ danh từ thì không được đặt *it* giữa *make* và tính từ: *Make + adj + noun/ noun phrase*.

Eg: The wire service made possible much speedier collection and distribution of news.

* **To let sb do sth = to permit/allow sb to do sth** = để cho ai, cho phép ai làm gì

Eg: He let me go. /At first, she didn't allow me to go out alone at night.

* **To help sb to do sth/do sth** = Giúp ai làm gì

Eg: Please help me to throw this table away. /She helps me open the door.

Chú ý: Nếu tân ngữ của *help* là một đại từ vô nhân xưng mang nghĩa người ta thì không cần phải nhắc đến tân ngữ đó và bỏ luôn cả *to* của động từ đằng sau.

Eg: Modern machines help (~~people to~~) save labour force.

- Nếu tân ngữ của *help* và tân ngữ của động từ sau nó trùng hợp với nhau, người ta sẽ bỏ tân ngữ sau *help* và bỏ luôn cả *to* của động từ đằng sau. Eg: The fur of the birds helps (them to) keep warm.

* **To see/to watch/ to hear sb/sth do sth** (hành động được chứng kiến từ đầu đến cuối)

Eg: I heard the telephone ring and then John answered it.

#**To see/to watch/ to hear sb/sth doing sth** (hành động không được chứng kiến trọn vẹn mà chỉ ở một thời điểm)

Eg: I heard her singing at the time I came home.

* **Một số cấu trúc câu:**

* **S + V + enough + Noun + to -V**. . . có đủ cái gì để làm gì

Eg: He does not have enough money to attend the concert.

* **S + V + Adj/ ADV + enough + to-V**...

Eg: She is tall enough to reach the ceiling.

* **S+V + so + adj/ adv + that + 1 clause = S + V + such + (a/an) + Noun (s,es) + that + 1 clause**

(đến nỗi mà). Eg: The film was so boring that nobody watched it until the end.

= It was such a boring film that nobody watched it until the end

* **S+V + so much/ little + Noun (uncountable) + that + 1 clause**. : Có quá nhiều (quá ít). . . đến nỗi mà

Eg: He has so much money that he doesn't know how to spend.

* **S+V + so many/ few + Noun (countable, plural) + that + 1 clause**. Có quá nhiều (quá ít). . đến nỗi mà

Eg: They have so many children that they form their own football team.

* **S + V + so + adjective + a + singular count noun + that +1 clause**.

Eg: It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.

* **S + V + too + adj + (for sbd) + to-V** . . . quá (đối với ai) đến nỗi không làm được gì.

EG: He is too short to reach the ceiling. / Eg: English is too difficult for us to study well

* **It + be + too + adj + (for sbd) + to-V + Obj**

Eg: It is too difficult for us to study English well.

Cách sử dụng một số cấu trúc đi với Present Participle (V-ing)

* **Have sb/sth + doing**: làm cho ai làm gì.

John had us laughing all through the meal.

* **S + won't have sb + doing = S + won't allow sb to do sth**: không cho phép ai làm gì

I won't have him telling me what to do.

Các cụm phân từ: **adding, pointing out, reminding, warning, reasoning that** đều có thể mở đầu cho một mệnh đề phụ gián tiếp.

He told me to start early, reminding me that the road would be crowded.

Reasoning that he could only get to the lake, we followed that way.

* **To catch sb doing sth**: bắt gặp ai đang làm gì (hàm ý bị phạt lòng).

If she catches you reading her diary, she will be furious.

* **To find sb/sth doing sth**: Thấy ai/ cái gì đang làm gì

I found him standing at the doorway

He found a tree lying across the road.

* **To leave sb doing sth**: Để ai làm gì

I left Bob talking to the director after the introduction.

* **Go/come doing sth** (dùng cho thể thao và mua sắm)

Go skiing/ go swimming/ go shopping/ come dancing

* **To have a hard time/trouble doing sth**: Gặp khó khăn khi làm gì

He has trouble listening to English. I had a hard time doing my homework.

* **To be worth doing sth**: đáng để làm gì

This project is worth spending time and money on.

* **To be busy doing something**: bận làm gì

She is busy packing now.

* **Hai hành động xảy ra song song cùng một lúc thì hành động thứ hai ở dạng V-ing, hai hành động không tách rời khỏi nhau bởi bất kì dấu phẩy nào.**

Eg: She was walking home singing a love song. (cô ấy vừa đi về nhà vừa hát một bài hát tình yêu)

- Khi hành động thứ hai hoặc các hành động tiếp sau theo nó là một phần trong quá trình diễn biến của hành động thứ nhất thì hành động thứ hai hoặc các hành động tiếp theo sau nó ở dạng V-ing. Giữa hai hành động có ngăn cách nhau bởi dấu phẩy.

Eg: She went out and bought some stamps = She went out, buying some stamps.

- Khi hành động thứ 2 hoặc các hành động sau nó là kết quả của hành động thứ nhất thì hành động thứ 2 và các hành động tiếp theo sẽ ở dạng V-ing. Nó sẽ ngăn cách với hành động chính bằng một dấu phẩy.

Eg: He fired two shots, killing a robber and wounding the other.

* **Một số ngữ động từ**

go + gerund: để chỉ một hoạt động nào đó: **Do + V-ing**: để chỉ một hoạt động nào đó:

-go fishing đi câu cá

- do (the) washing giặt giũ

-go shopping đi mua sắm

- do washing up rửa chén

-go swimming đi bơi	- do cleaning	lau chùi
-go hiking đi bộ dã ngoại	- do gardening	làm vườn
-go walking đi bộ	- do shopping	mua sắm
-go sightseeing đi ngắm cảnh	- do ironing:	ủ quần áo

*** Một số thành ngữ + gerund**

- **can't help doing st**: không thể nhịn được làm gì: We **can't help laughing**
- **can't bear doing st**: không chịu được làm gì: I **can't bear hearing** his lies
- **can't stand doing st**: không chịu được làm gì: I **can't stand** seeing him here
- **It's no use doing st**: Vô ích làm gì **It's no use phoning** him at this time

Exercise 1. Complete the following text, putting the verbs into the gerund or the to- infinitive

- I like (go).....to the zoo.
- The play wasn't very good. The audience started (leave).....before it was over.
- After a brief interruption, the professor continued (lecture).....
- The children love (swim).....in the ocean.
- I hate (see).....any living being suffer. I can't bear it.
- I'm afraid of flying. When a plane begins (move).....down the runway, my heart starts (race)..... Oh - oh! The plane is beginning (move).....and my heart's starting (race).....
- When I travel, I prefer (drive).....to (take).....a plane.
- I prefer (drive).....rather than (take).....a plane.
- I always remember (turn).....off all the lights before I leave my house.
- I can remember (be).....very proud and happy when I graduated.
- Did you remember (give)Jack my message?
- I remember (play).....with dolls when I was a child.
- What do you remember (do).....when you were a child?
- What do you remember (do).....before you left for class this morning?
- What did you forget (do).....before you leave for class every day?
- I'll never forget (carry).....my wife over the threshold when we moved into our first home.
- I can't ever forget (watch).....our team score the winning goal in the last seconds of the game to capture the national championship
- Don't forget (do).....your homework tonight!
- I regret (inform)you that your loan application has not been approved.
- I regret (not listen).....to my father's advice. He was right.

Exercise 2. Supply an appropriate preposition and verb forms

- Alice isn't interested (look).....for a new job.
- Henry is excited (leave).....for India.
- You are capable (do).....better work.
- I have no excuse (be).....late.
- I'm accustomed (have).....a big breakfast.
- The rain prevented us (complete).....the work.
- Fred is always complaining (have).....a headache.
- Instead (study)....., Margaret went to a ball game with some of her friends.

9. Thank you (help).....me carry the package to the post office.
10. Mrs. Grant insisted (know).....the whole truth.
11. He showed us how to get to his house (draw).....a map.
12. You should take advantage (live).....here.
13. Laura had a good reason (not go).....to class yesterday.
14. Everyone in the neighborhood participated (search).....for the lost child.
15. I apologized to Diane (make).....her wait for me.
16. The weather is terrible tonight. I don't blame you (not want).....to go to the meeting.
17. Who is responsible (wash).....and (dry).....the dishes after dinner?
18. In addition (go)..... to school full-time, Sam has a part-time job.
19. The angry look on his face stopped me (speak).....my mind.
20. Where should we go for dinner tonight? Would you object (go).....to an Italian restaurant?
21. The mayor made another public statement for the purpose(clarify).....the new tax proposal.
22. The thief was accused (steal).....a woman's purse.
23. The jury found Mr. Adams guilty (take).....money from the company he worked for and (keep).....it for himself.
24. Bill isn't used (wear).....a suit and tie everyday.
25. I'm going to visit my family during the school vacation. I'm looking forward (eat).....my mother's cooking and (sleep)in my own bed.

Exercise 3. Supply an appropriate form, gerund or infinitive, of the verbs in brackets.

1. Mary reminded me (not be).....late for the meeting.
2. We went for a walk after we finished (clean).....up the kitchen.
3. I forgot (take).....a book back to the library, so I had to pay a fine.
4. When do you expect (leave).....on your trip?
5. The baby started (talk).....when she was about eighteen months old.
6. I don't mind (wait)for you. Go ahead and finish (do)..... your work.
7. I've decided (stay)here over vacation and (paint).....my room.
8. We discussed (quit).....our jobs and (open).....our own business.
9. I'm getting tired. I need (take).....a break.
10. Sometimes students avoid (look).....at the teacher if they don't want (answer).....a question.
11. The club members discussed (postpone).....the meeting until March.
12. Most children prefer (watch).....television to (listen).....to the radio.
13. My grandfather prefers (read).....
14. Did Carol agree (go).....(camp).....with you?
15. As the storm approached, the birds quit (sing).....
16. The taxi driver refused (take).....a check. He wanted the passengers (pay).....in cash.
17. The soldiers were ordered (stand).....at attention.
18. The travel agent advised us (not wait).....until August.
19. When a student asks a question, the teacher always tries (explain).....the problems as clearly as possible.

20. I tried everything, but the baby wouldn't stop crying. I tried (hold).....him. I tried (feed)..... him. I tried (change).....his diapers. Nothing worked.

Exercise 4: Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. I was made to study hard when I was at school.
→They.....
- 2 If I take the job, I'll have to move to Paris.
→ Taking the job.....
3. It's very kind of you to give me a lift.
→I appreciate.....
4. It might be good idea to use honey instead of sugar.
→Why don't you try.....
5. I'm quite happy to look after the baby for you.
→I don't mind.....
6. I must see the manager!
→I demand.....
7. "Go on, Jack, apply for the job." said Sally.
→Sally encouraged.....
8. You wouldn't know where the Hilton is, would you?
→Do you happen.....
9. Parking is not permitted here.
→You are
10. "Shall I carry that bag for you, John?" said Pauline.
→Pauline offered.....

Exercise 5: Complete each sentence with the suitable form of one of the verbs given

1. Mary was so angry that she.....to see the manager.
A. demanded B. hoped C. risked D. stopped
2. The weather is so awful that I don't.....going out this evening.
A. fancy B. like C. try D. want
3. The children could hardly.....to leave their pets behind.
A. bear B. forget C. regret D. seem
4. You don't.....looking after the baby, do you?
A. agree B. stand C. mind D. notice
5. Do you.....to know when this castle was built?
A. ask B. happen C. imagine D. like
6. John.....to let his children go to the concert.
A. afforded B. avoided C. refused D. stopped
7. If I give you the information. I.....losing my job!
A. expect B. mean C. prepare D. risk
8. What do you.....to be doing in ten years' time?
A. begin B. expect C. remember D. suggest
9. Do you.....to tell the police about the missing money?
A. admit B. confess C. deny D intend
10. Why does Basil.....looking at his watch?

A. appear

B. attempt

C. keep

D. mean

Exercise 6: Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.

1. Jack said that he hadn't cheated in the exam.

CHEATING.....

2. It was difficult for me not to laugh at Wendy's letter.

HELP.....

3. I'm sorry but you have not been appointed to the post.

REGRET.....

4. I needed a drink of water and so I stopped running.

TO.....

5. Luckily Peter didn't pay a fine.

PAYING.....

6. I think it would be a good idea to take the train.

SUGGEST.....

7. Don't forget the lights when you leave.

OFF.....

8. I can hear voices upstairs.

SOMEONE.....

9. I think Derek has forgotten the meeting.

APPEARS.....

10. My neighbor said he would call the police.

THREATENED.....

11. I'm sorry I didn't go to university. (REGRET)

.....
12. Winning the football pools meant we could buy a new car. (ENABLED)

.....
13. There is a risk that he will miss the plane if he waits. (RISKS)

.....
14. I believe you were the murderer because of this clue. (LED)

.....
15. Does using the hotel swimming pool cost extra? (PAY)

.....
16. I think that this is the right street. (APPEARS)

.....
17. Jean succeeded in finishing all her work on time. (MANAGED)

.....
18. They said they would like me to stay with them in Florida. (INVITED)

.....
19. Calling Jim is pointless, because his phone is out of order. (USE)

.....
20. It is compulsory for all students to leave a cash deposit. (REQUIRED)

PHẦN 13: MỘT SỐ THÀNH NGỮ VÀ NGỮ ĐI VỚI GIỚI TỪ

A. KIẾN THỨC CƠ BẢN VÀ NÂNG CAO

Một số thành ngữ đi với giới từ thường gặp trong các bài thi học sinh giỏi

1. Một số thành ngữ với “IN”

- In time for = In good time for = Đúng giờ (thường kịp làm gì, hơi sớm hơn giờ đã định một chút) /

Eg: She arrived at the theater in good time for a coffee. (Cô ấy đến nhà hát vẫn còn đủ thời gian để uống một tách cà phê.)

- In future = from now on = từ nay trở đi

- Once in a while = đôi khi, thỉnh thoảng

Eg: Once in a while I enjoy fishing: (Đôi khi tôi cũng thích đi câu cá.)

- In no time at all / in less than no time = trong nháy mắt, một thoáng.

Eg: The train will be here in no time at all. (Tàu sắp đến đây rồi.)

- In the middle of = ở giữa, ở trong.

Eg: In the middle of difficulty lies opportunity. (Trong khó khăn mới có cơ hội.)

- In the army/ airforce/ navy: trong quân đội, trong lực lượng không quân,....

Eg: He has been in the army for thirty years. (Ông ấy đã phục vụ trong quân ngũ 30 năm.)

- In the event = trong trường hợp mà

Eg: in the event of a power failure we'll have to change our plan. (Trong trường hợp mất điện chúng tôi sẽ phải thay đổi kế hoạch.)

- In case = để phòng khi, ngộ nhỡ.

Eg: Bring your umbrella in case it rains (Đưa theo cái ô phòng khi trời mưa.)

- In the corner = ở góc trong # At the corner = ở góc ngoài/ tại góc phố

Eg: The student is sitting in the corner. (Cậu sinh viên đang ngồi ở góc phòng)

- in favour of = có thiện cảm với, ủng hộ

Eg: We are in favour of his decision to leave the city.

(Chúng tôi ủng hộ quyết định đi khỏi thành phố của anh ấy.)

- in common with sb = có cái gì chung với ai

Eg: She has nothing in common with her sister. (Cô ấy chẳng có gì chung với chị mình cả.)

- in other words= nói cách khác

Eg: I have no more money, in other words, I am now broke. (Tôi không còn tiền nữa, hay nói cách khác, tôi đang cháy túi.)

- in tears = đang khóc

Eg: She was in tears over the death of her puppy. (Cô bé đang khóc cái chết của con chó nhỏ của mình.)

- in private = riêng, không ai khác có mặt

Eg: She wanted to see me in private. (Bà ấy muốn gặp riêng tôi.) # in public công khai, ở giữa công chúng

- in bed = đang ngủ # on the bed = ở trên cái giường.

Eg: It's already ten o'clock, but she's still in bed. (Đã 10 giờ rồi, vậy mà cô ta vẫn đang ngủ.)

- in all = cả thảy, tổng cộng. *Eg:* There were ten of us in all. (Chúng tôi có cả thảy mười người.)

- in general = nói chung. *Eg:* In general I don't like her. (Nói chung là tôi không thích cô ta)

- in particular = nói riêng, nói cụ thể. *Eg:* The whole meat was good but the wine in particular was excellent. (Toàn bộ bữa ăn là ngon, riêng món rượu thì thật tuyệt hảo.)

- in the way = chặn lối, chắn đường. *Eg:* I'm afraid your car is in the way. (Tôi e rằng ô tô của anh đang gây cản trở.)
- in a way = ở một mức độ nào đó, theo cách nào đó.
Eg: In a way, you are right. Ở một mức độ nào đó thì anh đúng.
- in a hurry = vội vàng. *Eg:* She seems to be in a hurry. (Cô ấy dường như đang vội.)
- in secret = bí mật *Eg:* They left the country in secret. (Họ rời khỏi đất nước một cách bí mật.)
- in advance = trước / *Eg:* Thank you in advance. (Cám ơn anh trước nhé.)
- in turn = lần lượt. / *Eg:* The students called out their names in turn. (Các học sinh lần lượt xưng tên mình)
- in one's opinion = theo ý kiến ai. *Eg:* In my opinion, he is right. (Theo ý tôi thì anh ta đúng)
- in writing = dưới dạng viết, bằng văn bản. *Eg:* You must get his agreement in writing. (Anh phải được anh ấy đồng ý bằng văn bản.)
- in cash = bằng tiền mặt / *Eg:* Can I pay in cash? (Tôi có thể trả bằng tiền mặt được không?)
- in charge (of sb/st) = phụ trách, đảm trách/ *Eg:* Who's in charge of this class? (Ai phụ trách lớp này?)
- in addition (to) = thêm vào/ *Eg:* In addition to the names on the list there are six other applicants. (Thêm vào tên trong danh sách còn có sáu người nữa.)
- in comparison with = so sánh với / *Eg:* The tallest buildings in London are small in comparison with those in New York. (Những tòa nhà cao nhất ở London thật nhỏ khi sánh với những tòa nhà ở New York.)
- in conclusion = kết luận, cuối cùng là. / *Eg:* In conclusion I'd like to say that I don't agree with you. (Cuối cùng tôi muốn nói rằng tôi không đồng ý với các bạn.)
- in control of = chỉ đạo, quán xuyến, cai quản / *Eg:* Who's in control of this project? (Ai chỉ đạo dự án này?)
- in danger = gặp nguy hiểm, bị đe dọa. *Eg:* His life was in danger. (Cuộc sống của ông ta đang gặp nguy hiểm.) >< out of danger.
- in detail = một cách đầy đủ, chi tiết. *Eg:* He explained everything to us in detail. (Anh ta giải thích mọi thứ với chúng tôi một cách rất chi tiết.)
- in fact = trên thực tế, thật ra. *Eg:* In fact, she has been lying to him for ten years. (Thực tế là cô ta đã lừa dối anh trong suốt mười năm trời.)
- in good / bad condition = trong tình trạng tốt / xấu. *Eg:* The house is still in good condition. (ngôi nhà vẫn còn rất tốt.)
- in one's free time = trong thời gian rảnh. *Eg:* What do you usually do in your free time? (Anh thường làm gì trong thời gian rảnh?)
- in love with = đem lòng yêu mến ai/ cái gì, phải lòng ai. *Eg:* She is in love with one of my friends. (Cô ấy đã phải lòng một người bạn của tôi.)
- in a good / bad mood = có tâm trạng vui vẻ / khó chịu. *Eg:* Today she's in a good mood. (Hôm nay tâm trạng cô ấy vui vẻ.)
- in order = ngăn nắp, trật tự >< in a mess: lộn xộn, bừa bộn, hỗn loạn. *Eg:* My life is in a real mess! (Cuộc sống của tôi thật sự là một mớ bòng bong)
- in pieces = vỡ tan, thành từng mảnh.
Eg: The boat was smashed to pieces on the rocks. (Chiếc thuyền đã bị va vào đá vỡ tan thành nhiều mảnh.)
- in practice / in theory = trên thực tế/ trên lý thuyết.
Eg: In theory, three things could happen.

(về lý thuyết, có ba khả năng xảy ra.)

- in reality = trên thực tế, thực ra. *Eg:* The house looks very old, but in reality it's quite new.

(Ngôi nhà trông có vẻ cũ, nhưng thực ra nó còn mới.)

- in touch with = giữ liên lạc với. *Eg:* Please keep in touch with each other when we are away. (Xin hãy giữ liên lạc khi chúng ta xa nhau.)

- in uniform = mặc đồng phục, thuộc các lực lượng vũ trang. *Eg:* How long was he in uniform? (Anh ta đã ở trong quân ngũ bao lâu rồi?)

- in a loud / low voice = (nói) to / thì thầm. *Eg:* "I'm in love," he said in a low voice. (Tôi đang yêu, anh ta thì thầm.)

1. Một số thành ngữ với “AT”

- at all costs = bằng mọi giá, bằng bất cứ giá nào. *Eg:* We must get there at all costs. (Chúng ta phải đến đó bằng mọi giá.)

- at times = luôn luôn. *Eg:* I'm at your service at all times. (Tôi luôn luôn sẵn sàng phục vụ các ông.)

- at present = hiện nay, hiện tại, lúc này. *Eg:* I can't help you at present. (Lúc này tôi không thể giúp anh được.)

- at a profit = có lãi. *Eg:* The company is operating at a profit. (Công ty đang hoạt động có lãi.)

- at first = thoát tiên. *Eg:* At first I think he is our new teacher. (Thoạt tiên tôi nghĩ rằng đó là thầy giáo mới của chúng tôi.)

- at last = cuối cùng, rốt cuộc. *Eg:* At last the bus arrived. We'd been waiting for nearly an hour. (Cuối cùng thì xe buýt cũng đến. Chúng tôi đã đợi gần một tiếng đồng hồ.)

- at the latest, muộn nhất (một thời điểm cụ thể nào đó). *Eg:* I'm in a hurry because I must have these reports ready by six o'clock at the latest. (Tôi đang vội bởi vì tôi phải làm xong những bản báo cáo này muộn nhất là 6 giờ.)

- At least = ít nhất. *Eg:* You could at least clean up your room. (Ít nhất thì anh cũng dọn lấy phòng của mình đi chứ.)

- At most = nhiều nhất, tối đa.

Eg: At most I might earn \$250 a week. (Tôi có thể kiếm được tối đa là 250 đô la mỗi tuần.)

- At the same time = đồng thời.

Eg: You shouldn't eat and talk at the same time. (Các cháu không nên vừa ăn vừa nói.)

- At peace with = ở trong tình trạng thân ái hoặc hòa thuận với ai.

Eg: In order to be happy, you should always be at peace with yourself. (Để được hạnh phúc, bạn phải luôn thanh thản với chính bản thân mình.) >< at war with

- at war with = trong tình trạng xung đột, chiến tranh.

Eg: The country has been at war with its neighbor for two years. (Đất nước đã ở trong tình trạng xung đột với nước láng giềng đã hai năm rồi.)

2. Một số thành ngữ với “OUT OF”

- out of reach = ngoài tầm tay.

Eg: Keep those medicines out of reach of children. (Không được để những thứ thuốc này trong tầm tay trẻ con.)

- out of doors = ở ngoài trời.

Eg: He likes to stay out of doors. (Anh ta thích ở ngoài trời.)

- out of breath = hụt hơi, thở dốc.

Eg: After five flights of stairs I'm out of breath. (Chỉ sau năm bậc thang là tôi đã thở dốc rồi.)

- out of sight = ngoài tầm mắt. *Eg:* Out of sight, out of mind. Xa mặt cách lòng
- out of mind = ngoài tầm suy nghĩ, không còn nhớ tới nữa
- out of work = thất nghiệp. *Eg:* He is now out of work. (Hiện nay anh ta đang thất nghiệp.)
- out of date = lạc hậu, lỗi thời >< up to date: cập nhật, hiện đại
- out of practice = không luyện tập. *Eg:* It's important to keep in practice. (Điều quan trọng là phải duy trì luyện tập) >< in practice
- out of control = không kiểm soát được, mất quyền kiểm soát. *Eg:* The economy is now seriously out of control. (Nền kinh tế hiện nay đang mất kiểm soát trầm trọng.) >< in control: trong vòng kiểm soát.
- out of danger = hết nguy hiểm. *Eg:* She was very ill, but is now out of danger. (Cô ấy đang ốm, nhưng đã qua cơn nguy kịch.) >< in danger: trong nguy hiểm
- out of debt = trả hết nợ nần. *Eg:* We are poor, but we have been out of debt. (Chúng tôi nghèo nhưng đã trả hết nợ nần rồi.) >< in debt: trong nợ nần
- out of fashion / style = lỗi mốt.

Eg: Long skirts are now out of fashion. (Váy dài hiện nay đã lỗi mốt rồi.)

- out of place = không phù hợp, không đúng chỗ.

Eg: Her criticisms were quite out of place. (Các lời chỉ trích của cô ấy hoàn toàn không đúng chỗ.)

- out of the question = không bàn cãi, không thể được.

Eg: Telling him the truth now is out of the question. (Nói cho anh ta biết sự thật vào lúc này là không thể được.)

- out of stock = hết hàng, không còn hàng để bán.

Eg: I'm sorry our shop is now out of stock. (Xin lỗi cửa hàng chúng tôi tạm thời hết hàng.)

- out of the ordinary = khác thường, không bình thường.

Eg: Her behavior is out of the ordinary. (Cách cư xử của cô ấy thật không bình thường.)

- nothing out of the ordinary = không có gì đặc biệt.

Eg: It was an interesting lecture, but nothing out of the ordinary. (Đó là một bài giảng hay, nhưng không có gì đặc biệt lắm.)

- out of trouble = hết rắc rối >< in trouble = đang gặp rắc rối

3. Một số thành ngữ với “ON”

- on behalf of = nhân danh, thay mặt. *Eg:* On behalf of the whole class I thank you for your help. (Thay mặt cả lớp em xin cảm ơn thầy đã giúp đỡ chúng em.)

- on business = đang làm việc, đang đi công tác. *Eg:* My father is in Hanoi on business this week. (Tuần này bố tôi đi công tác Hà nội.)

- on strike = đình công. *Eg:* The workers are on strike for a pay rise. (Công nhân đang đình công đòi tăng lương.)

- on a diet = ăn kiêng. *Eg:* If you are on a diet you should avoid eating fatty foods and sugar. (Nếu cậu đang ăn kiêng thì nên tránh ăn những thức ăn chứa nhiều chất béo và đường.)

- on average = trung bình. *Eg:* We fail one student per year on average. (Tính trung bình mỗi năm chúng tôi bị trượt một sinh viên.)

- on duty = đang làm việc, đang có ca trực. *Eg:* The doctor is on duty now. (Hiện nay bác sĩ đang trực >< off duty hết phiên trực.)

- on the whole = tóm lại, xét toàn bộ. *Eg:* On the whole. I'm in favour of the proposal. (Tóm lại, tôi ủng hộ đề nghị đó.)

- on holiday = đi nghỉ. *Eg:* Where are you going on holiday this summer? (Hè này cậu định đi nghỉ ở đâu?)
- on sale = a) có bán, sẵn để bán. *Eg:* The new model is not on sale in the shops. (Mẫu mới không có bán tại các cửa hiệu); b) bán với giá hạ. *Eg:* These books are on sale. (Những quyển sách này đang được bán hạ giá) >< for sale để bán. *Eg:* I'm sorry this painting is not for sale. (Xin lỗi, bức tranh này không bán.) -
- on a trip / an excursion / a tour = đi một chuyến đi / tham quan/ du lịch. *Eg:* We are planning to go on a trip to Delphi next weekend. (Chúng tôi dự định đi một chuyến tới Delphi vào cuối tuần tới.)
- on the phone = có dùng điện thoại. *Eg:* Are you on the phone? (Nhà cậu có dùng điện thoại không?)
- on purpose = một cách cố ý. *Eg:* He took my bag on purpose. (Hắn ta cố ý lấy chiếc túi của tôi) >< by accident: vô tình, do nhầm lẫn. *Eg:* I opened his briefcase by accident.
- on TV/ radio = chiếu / phát qua ti vi, đài. *Eg:* What is on TV tonight? (Tối nay TV có gì?)
- on the market = đưa ra bán, đang bán. *Eg:* These computers are not yet on the market. (Các máy tính này chưa thấy bán.)
- On foot = đi bộ. *Eg:* His house is next to school, so he get there on foot. (Nhà cậu ấy gần trường nên cậu ấy đi bộ tới trường.)
- On fire = đang cháy. *Eg:* Call the fire brigade. The neighbor's house is on fire. (Gọi cứu hỏa đi. Nhà người hàng xóm đang cháy.)
- On one hand / on the other hand: Một mặt. . . mặt khác. . . *Eg:* On one hand I'd like more money, but on the other hand, I'm not prepared to work the extra hours in order to get it. (Một mặt tôi vẫn muốn có thêm tiền, nhưng mặt khác tôi lại chưa sẵn sàng làm thêm giờ để kiếm tiền.)
- On time = đúng giờ (không sớm, không muộn). *Eg:* Don't worry, she usually arrives at meetings on time. (Đừng lo, cô ấy luôn đến họp đúng giờ) >< in time/ in good time for: đúng giờ, hơi sớm một chút.

4. Một số thành ngữ với “BY”

- by means of = bằng cách. *Eg:* Lift the load by means of a crane. (Nâng tải trọng bằng cần trục)
- by no means / not by any means = không tí nào. *Eg:* She's by no means poor, in fact, she's quite rich. (Bà ta không nghèo tí nào, thực ra, bà ta rất giàu.)
- by chance = tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên, không cố ý. *Eg:* I met her by chance. (Tôi gặp cô ấy rất tình cờ.)
- by oneself = một mình. *Eg:* I did it by myself (tôi tự mình làm điều đó.)
- (know) by sight = nhận ra khuôn mặt ai, nhưng không biết tên. *Eg:* I knew him by sight. (Tôi nhận ra anh ta, nhưng tôi không biết tên anh ta)
- by heart - thuộc lòng. *Eg:* We have to learn this poem by heart: (Chúng tôi phải học thuộc lòng bài thơ này.)
- by mistake = do nhầm lẫn. *Eg:* They took our case by mistake. (Họ xách nhầm va li của chúng tôi.)
- by cheque/ credit card = (trả) bằng séc/ thẻ tín dụng. *Eg:* Can I pay by cheque? (Tôi có thể trả bằng séc được không?)
- by accident = by chance: tình cờ, ngẫu nhiên. *Eg:* I ran into an old friend by accident. (Tôi tình cờ gặp một người bạn cũ.)

5. Một số thành ngữ với “UNDER”

- under the impression = có cảm tưởng rằng, có ý nghĩ rằng. *Eg:* I was under the impression that you were coming tomorrow. (Tôi có cảm tưởng rằng ngày mai anh mới tới.)
- under consideration / discussion = đang được xem xét / thảo luận. *Eg:* Your request is under consideration at the meeting. (Đề nghị của anh đang được xem xét tại cuộc họp.)

- under arrest = bị bắt giữ. *Eg:* The three men were under arrest for robbing a bank. (Ba người đàn ông đang bị bắt giữ vì tội cướp ngân hàng.)
- under certain conditions = trong hoàn cảnh nào đó. *Eg:* The mountain road is closed under certain conditions. (Con đường núi bị chặn do hoàn cảnh nào đó.)
- under control = trong tầm kiểm soát. *Eg:* The fire was under control after the fire department arrived. (Đám cháy đã được kiểm soát sau khi đội cứu hỏa đến.) >< out of control: ngoài tầm kiểm soát
- under one's breath = thì thầm. *Eg:* The man was talking under his breath in the movie theater. (Người đàn ông thì thầm trong rạp chiếu phim.)
- Under one's nose = dễ thấy, ngay trước mặt ai. *Eg:* I put the bill right under his nose so that he couldn't miss it. (Tôi để tờ hóa đơn ngay trước mặt anh ta để cho anh ta không thể nào lỡ đi được.)
- Under the sun = khắp mọi nơi. *Eg:* We looked for the wallet everywhere under the sun. (Chúng tôi tìm cái ví khắp mọi nơi.)
- Under the weather = khó ở, hơi mệt. *Eg:* I am feeling under the weather so I'm going to bed early tonight. (Tôi cảm thấy hơi mệt vì vậy tối nay tôi sẽ đi ngủ sớm.)
- Under the wire = vừa kịp lúc. *Eg:* We sent in our payment for school fees just under the wire. (Chúng tôi đóng tiền học phí vừa kịp lúc.)
- Under the circumstances = trong hoàn cảnh

6. Một số thành ngữ với “FOR”

- for good = lâu dài, vĩnh viễn, dứt khoát. *Eg:* She says that she's leaving the country for good (Cô ấy nói rằng cô ấy sẽ rời khỏi đất nước vĩnh viễn.)
- for a living = để kiếm sống. *Eg:* What does he do for a living? (Anh ta làm gì để kiếm sống?)
- for sale = để bán. *Eg:* She has put her house up for sale. (Bà ấy xây nhà để bán.)
- for sure = chắc chắn. *Eg:* I think he lives there but I couldn't say for sure. (Tôi nghĩ bà ta sống ở đó nhưng tôi không thể nói chắc chắn được.)
- for a while = trong một khoảng thời gian. *Eg:* She worked in a bank for a while before studying law. (Cô ấy đã làm việc ở ngân hàng một thời gian trước khi học luật.)
- for now / for the time being = hiện tại, tạm thời. *Eg:* That's enough for now, let's continue our conversation tomorrow. (Hiện tại thế là đủ rồi, chúng ta hãy tiếp tục đối thoại vào ngày mai.)
- for a change = để thay đổi. *Eg:* We usually drive to work, but today we took a taxi for a change. (Chúng tôi thường tự lái xe đi làm, nhưng hôm nay để thay đổi chúng tôi đi tắc xi.)
- for example / instance = ví dụ như, chẳng hạn như. *Eg:* In this class there are many good students - John for example. (Lớp này có nhiều học sinh giỏi, chẳng hạn như em John.)
- for the sake of = vì lợi ích của ai đó. *Eg:* I'll help you for your family's sake. (Tôi sẽ giúp đỡ anh vì lợi ích của cả gia đình anh.)

7. Một số thành ngữ với “OFF”

- off duty = hết phiên làm việc / trực. *Eg:* The policeman was off duty that evening. (Viên cảnh sát này đã hết ca trực tối hôm đó.)
- off school / work = nghỉ học/ làm việc. *Eg:* May I take a day off work? (Tôi có thể nghỉ làm một ngày không ạ?)
- off and on = thỉnh thoảng. *Eg:* I read his blog off and on. (Thỉnh thoảng tôi có đọc blog của anh ta.)
- off the track = sao nhãng khỏi dòng suy nghĩ, mục tiêu. *Eg:* Your question has put me off the track. (Câu hỏi của anh cắt ngang dòng suy nghĩ của tôi.)

8. Một số thành ngữ với "FROM”

- from time to time = thỉnh thoảng. *Eg:* From time to time we play cards with each other. (Thỉnh thoảng chúng tôi cũng chơi bài cùng nhau.)
- from scratch = từ ban đầu. *Eg:* After the business failed, they decided to reorganize and begin from scratch. (Sau khi việc kinh doanh thất bại, họ quyết định tổ chức lại và bắt đầu lại từ đầu.)
- from head to toe /foot / heels = từ đầu đến chân. *Eg:* He was dressed in black from head to toe. (Anh ta mặc đồ đen từ đầu đến chân.)
- From the bottom of one's heart: từ thâm sâu đáy lòng. *Eg:* From the bottom of my heart, I am grateful to him for what he has just helped me.

9. Một số thành ngữ với “WITH”

- with regard to = về việc gì. *Eg:* I have nothing to say with regard to your complaints. (Tôi chẳng có gì để nói về những phàn nàn của anh cả.)
- with respect to = về, đối với. *Eg:* This is true with respect to English but not to French. (Điều này đúng với tiếng Anh chứ không đúng với tiếng Pháp.)
- with difficulty = một cách khó khăn. *Eg:* He opened his mouth with difficulty. (Anh ta mở miệng một cách rất khó khăn.)

10. Một số thành ngữ với “WITHOUT”

- without delay = không trì hoãn, (làm) ngay. *Eg:* Please do these tasks without delay. (Xin hãy làm những việc này ngay.)
- Without exception = không ngoại lệ. *Eg:* The rule applies to everyone without exception. (Quy tắc này áp dụng cho tất cả mọi người không có ngoại lệ.)
- Without (a) doubt = chắc chắn. *Eg:* He is without doubt the cleverest student I've ever taught. (Câu ấy chắc chắn là người thông minh nhất mà tôi từng dạy)
- Without fail - nhất định. *Eg:* I'll be there ill two o'clock without fail. (Tôi nhất định sẽ có mặt ở đây đúng 2 giờ.)

B. BÀI TẬP ÔN LUYỆN

Exercise 1. Complete each sentence with one word or phrase from the box:

according to because of in common with instead of
apart from by means of in favor of on
behalf of
as for in case of in front of regardless of

- I think I'd rather have coffee.....tea.
-danger, Paul ran back into the burning house.
-fire, smash the glass and push the button.
- Personally, I am.....banning cigarette smoking completely!
- I would like to thank you,.....everyone who was rescued.
-you, no one else knows that I have escaped.
-Steve, he believes that we should stay where we are.
- Jim managed to climb into the house.....a ladder he found
-the rain the match was postponed.
-the timetable, the next train isn't for two hours.
- Julie has nothing.....Bill. They are quite different.

12. A large black car suddenly drew up.....the house.

Exercise 2. Complete each sentence by using a suitable word from the list

<i>breath fail</i>	<i>impression</i>	<i>secret</i>	<i>strike</i>
<i>costs</i>	<i>hurry</i>	<i>return</i>	<i>stock</i>
<i>words</i>			

1. This is important. You must catch the two men at all
2. He says he's ill. Or in other....., he doesn't want to come.
3. I was under the.....that you enjoyed working here.
4. Sorry, I can't stop. I'm in a.....
5. Please hand your work in on Tuesday, without
6. We can't go by train. The train-drivers are on.....
7. Martin is supposed to have given up smoking, but he smokes in
8. I'm afraid we don't have your size, we are out of.....
9. If I give you the information, what will you give me in.....?
10. I ran for the bus, and now I'm out of.....

Exercise 3. Choose the most suitable phrase

1. I can't disturb John now. He's *at bed* / *in bed*.
2. Tony always arrives exactly *in time* / *on time* for his lesson.
3. Tow pounds for each ticket, that makes \$ 12 *in all* / *with all*.
4. I can't pick that last apple. It's *out of hand* / *out of reach*.
5. Joe and I met on the plane completely *by chance* / *by surprise*.
6. The children spend most of their time *out of doors* / *out of place*.
7. I'm sorry but Jane isn't here *at present* / *at a time*.
8. How can Sam love Lucy? They have nothing *in common* / *in general*.
9. They should be here soon. They are *in the way* / *on the way*.
10. Terry isn't here. He's always *in bed* / *on business*.

Exercise 4. Complete each sentence with a suitable word from the list. Use each word once only.

<i>average</i>	<i>force</i>	<i>particular</i>	<i>profit</i>	<i>sight</i>
<i>detail</i>		<i>himself</i>	<i>practice</i>	<i>public whole</i>

1. Harry managed to sell his house at a.....
2. What was he doing here all by.....?
3. Larry is so famous that he doesn't appear in.....very often.
4. That was a terrible shot! I'm rather out of.....
5. How many cars do you sell, on....., every week?
6. The police are coming! Stay out of.....until they leave.
7. I might be able to help you. What do you want to know in.....?
8. I suppose I enjoyed my holiday on the.....
9. Can you tell me about the plans in.....?
10. The gun had to be taken away from David by.....

Exercise 5. Complete each sentence with one of the phrases from the list. Use each phrase once only.

<i>by heart</i>	<i>in difficulties</i>	<i>in turn</i>	<i>on holiday</i>	<i>out of work</i>
<i>by sight</i>	<i>in pain</i>	<i>in two</i>	<i>on sale</i>	<i>without a doubt</i>

1. When I sat on the pencil, it broke.....
2. Most of the people in the office are.....at the moment.
3. This is.....the best washing machine on the market.
4. Graham has been.....ever since he came to London.
5. I know her....., but I don't know her name.
6. The lifeguard dived in to save a swimmer.....
7. John learned his first speech.....
8. Why don't you share the bike? You can ride it.....
9. You could tell he was.....by the way he kept groaning.
10. Cigarettes and ice-cream are.....in the foyer

Exercise 6. Complete each sentence, using the suitable preposition

1. Police officers don't have to wear uniform when they are.....duty.
A. on B. under C. out of D. off
2. I feel very tired,.....times I consider giving up work.
A. for B. at C. During D. Some
3. The children were all upset, and some were.....tears.
A. for B. at C. in D. on
4. This factory needs modernizing. Everything here is.....date.
A. in B. out C. out of D. beyond
5. Don't worry, everything is.....control.
A. under B. in C. out of D. for
6. Sorry, I seem to have taken the wrong umbrella..... mistake.
A. on B. by C. for D. with
7. Please hurry. We need these documents.....delay.
A. on B. in C. without D. no
8. That wasn't an accident! You did it.....purpose!
A. on B. of C. for D. with
9. We thought the two films were very similar.....a great extent.
A. on B. to C. with D. at
10. We decided to take a holiday in Wales.....a change.
A. with B. for C. at D. in

Exercise 7: Put *in*, *by*, *from*, *in* or *on* into the blanks to complete the following sentences.

1. There's something I want to watch.....television.
2. They've told me I can have time off, but I haven't got it.....writing.
3. I found the English to be fairly friendly people,.....the whole.
4. Why can't you look at the problem.....my point of view?
5. Would you mind moving? You're rather.....the way here.
6. I dialed the wrong number.....mistake.
7. Is it OK if I write.....pencil?
8. Are you here.....holiday or.....business?
9. I booked our seats a month.....advance and paid.....cheque.
10. Jessica fell ill while she was.....a trip to Ireland.
11. Could you be quiet for a moment, please? I'm.....the phone.

12. We've had a few nice days, butgeneral it's been a poor summer.
13. I was lucky. I found the solution.....accident.
14. It's a long journey. Let's stop somewhere.....the way and have a meal.
15. I spent ages looking for a phone box,the end I found one.

Exercise 8: Put in the correct prepositions (Eg. *on, in, by*). You may also need to use '*the*' or '*my*'.

1. Do you think we ought to book seats.....advance? ~ No, I don't think so.....the whole it's better to buy a ticket on the day.
2. Is it all right if I pay.....credit card? ~ Well, if you don't mind, I'd prefer it.....cash.
3. A lot of this information isdate. ~ I know. We do our best to keep.....date, but it's difficult.
4. Did the others lock you out of the housepurpose? ~ No, it happened quite.....chance.
5. Is there anything.....television tonight? - No, but there's something..... radio I want to listen to.
6. These flats are still sale. ~ Yes, they've beenmarket for over a year now.
7. Was it an interesting talk? ~.....opinion, it was boring, but everyone clapped.....end.

Chuyên đề 5: READING (ĐỌC HIỂU)

A. CÁC DẠNG BÀI KIỂM TRA KỸ NĂNG ĐỌC HIỂU

Sau đây là số dạng bài kiểm tra đọc hiểu phổ biến:

- Đọc đoạn văn hay đoạn hội thoại và trả lời câu hỏi.
- Đọc và tìm một từ phù hợp văn cảnh điền vào chỗ trống (gap-filling).
- Đọc các câu cho sẵn và sắp xếp chúng thành bài hội thoại hợp lý.
- Đọc và tìm ý chính của đoạn văn.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và sắp xếp các thứ tự thông tin.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và đặt câu hỏi với từ gợi ý và trả lời.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và điền thông tin còn khuyết theo bản tóm tắt.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và hoàn thành các câu cho sẵn hay xác định các câu Đúng (TRUE) hay Sai (FALSE) hay Không chứa thông tin (NO INFORMATION) từ bài đọc
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và tìm hay giải thích nghĩa của từ trong văn cảnh
- Đọc đoạn văn và chọn đáp án đúng để trả lời từng câu hỏi (multiple-choice)
- Đọc một đoạn văn dài và chú ý các thông tin chi tiết, các quan điểm, thái độ và nối các sự lựa chọn phù hợp cho từng đoạn văn ngắn (multiple-matching)

B. MỘT SỐ THỦ THUẬT LÀM BÀI THI ĐỌC HIỂU

Theo các chuyên gia ngôn ngữ, để làm tốt bài thi đọc hiểu cần đọc trước câu hỏi để định hướng nội dung cần tìm trong bài đọc hiểu: Thí sinh nên tập trung đọc những thông tin cần cho câu trả lời, chứ không nên cố gắng đọc và hiểu hết tất cả các từ trong đoạn văn, đọc mà không có định hướng gì chiếm rất nhiều thời gian và gây ra sự khó hiểu

Tùy theo các dạng bài kiểm tra đọc hiểu mà chúng ta có các cách làm khác nhau. Ví dụ:

1. Đối với bài thi Đọc và tìm một từ phù hợp văn cảnh điền vào chỗ trống (gap-filling) hay đọc đoạn văn và điền thông tin còn khuyết theo bản tóm tắt, thí sinh cần xác định vị trí cần điền là loại từ gì (danh từ, động từ, tính từ, liên từ hay mạo từ,...), sau đó có sự lựa chọn từ cho phù hợp với ý nghĩa văn bản, thông thường đọc lướt toàn bài trước, nắm ý chính của đoạn văn sẽ giúp thí sinh có đáp án dễ dàng và chính xác hơn.

Exercise 1: Read the paragraphs below and the summary which follows.

Air pollution is a cause of ill-health in human beings. In a lot of countries there are laws limiting the amount of smoke which factories can produce. Although there isn't enough information on the effects of smoke in the atmosphere, doctors have proved that air pollution causes lung diseases.

The gases from the exhausts of cars have also increased air pollution in most cities. The lead in petrol produces a poisonous gas which often collects in busy streets surrounded by high buildings. Children who live in areas where there is a lot of lead in the atmosphere can't think as quickly as other children and are clumsy when they use their hands.

There are other long-term effects of pollution. If the gases in the atmosphere continue to increase, the earth's climate may become warmer. A lot of the ice near the Poles may melt and may cause serious floods.

* Complete the summary by writing the correct word in each blank (write one word only.)

Air.....(1) can make people(2). Consequently, some countries pass.....(3) to control the quantity of.....(4) in the air. Air pollution causes particular damage to the body by harming the(5).(6) should not be used in petrol because it is bad for children's(7) and makes them clumsy in using their hands. Poisonous gas from.....(8) collects in

those parts of cities where there are tall buildings. Pollution can also have an influence on the earth's(9). The ice may melt near the North and South Poles, resulting in very bad.....(10).

Exercise 2: Read the following passage and fill in each gap with only ONE appropriate word

TELEVISION

Television is an important invention of the twentieth century. It has been.... (1). .. popular that now we can't imagine what life would be.....(2).....if there were no television. Television is a major... (3).... of communication. It brings pictures and sounds from around the world into millions of homes. Through.... (4)....., viewers can see and learn about people, places and things in faraway lands. Television. ... (5).... our knowledge by introducing to us new ideas. ... (6). ... may lead us to new hobbies and recreations. In addition...(7).... the news, television provides us with a variety of programs that can satisfy.... (8).... taste. Most people now seem to like spending their evenings.... (9).... television. It is more convenient for them to sit at home watching TV.... (10).... to go out for amusements anywhere else.

Exercise 3: Read the following passage and the decide which option A, B, C or D best fits each space.

Have you ever stopped (1).....why people give each (2).....eggs at Easter? - The Christian festival of Easter celebrates the return of Christ from the dead, but the festival is actually name (3).....the goddess of the sun. Eostre, whose name is taken from the East where she (4)..... In very ancient times, Easter was a celebration that winter was (5).....and that a new life was about to begin. The rabbit, (6).....to the number of young it produces, it the symbol of life. In some parts of the world, the rabbit leaves large (7).....of eggs (another symbol of new life) in the garden and children have to find as many as they can. This is very (8).....Christmas when Santa Claus leave presents for individual children. At Easter children have to be independent and (9) After themselves. In this (10).....the hunt for Easter eggs presents the need for young people to go out in to the world and make their own fortune.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. A. to wonder | B wondering | C. wonder | D. wander |
| 2. A. else | B. person | C. others | D. other |
| 3. A. for | B. about | C. after | D. with |
| 4. A. goes | B. sets | C. rises | D. raises |
| 5. A. finish | B. conclusion | C. up | D. over |
| 6. A. as | B. since | C. due | D. because |
| 7. A. numbers | B. sums | C. figures | D. totals |
| 8. A. like | B. unlike | C. different | D. similar |
| 9. A. take | B. get | C. look | D. carry |
| 10. A. day | B. way | C. habit | D. time |

2. Đối với bài thi Đọc và trả lời câu hỏi về chi tiết cụ thể: thí sinh nên tìm ra từ ‘định hướng’ trong câu hỏi (từ định hướng đó sẽ giúp thí sinh biết câu hỏi là về vấn đề gì và định hướng cho thí sinh phải tìm thông tin gì trong bài đọc, đọc lướt qua toàn bài, nhưng đọc kỹ phần có từ ‘định hướng’ trong đoạn văn đề tìm chính xác câu trả lời.

Exercise 4: Read the following passage and answer the questions.

The world's oceans are so vast that they can cope with the present levels of pollution. However, little is known about the long-term effects of such slow poisoning. The most serious problem of modern time is that man is destroying the earth's natural resources and transforming huge areas into waste land.

As a result, it is becoming extremely difficult to grow enough to feed the world's rapidly increasing population. A way of protecting all wild life on the earth must also be found as many species are in danger of disappearing completely from the face of the earth. The smoke in the atmosphere, for example, is increasing so much that the amount of sunlight has been reduced in many cities. Man's whole environment is being changed in a serious way.

1. What is the process of making something dirty?

.....

2. Find a word or phrase from the passage with the same meaning as the air, water and land in which we live?

.....

3. What is the air surrounding the earth called?

.....

4. What could be best replaced wealth, goods or products people can use?

.....

5. What is a difficulty which needs attention and thought?

.....

3. Đối với bài thi đọc và trả lời các câu hỏi tham chiếu: thí sinh cần xác định một từ, thường là đại từ chỉ đến một từ đã cho trước đó, hay đối với bài thi đọc tìm nghĩa của từ trong văn cảnh, thí sinh cần chú ý tới văn cảnh mà từ đó ở trong, hiểu đoạn văn chứa từ đó mà suy diễn nghĩa của từ, đừng tập trung quá vào nghĩa đen của nó vốn có.

Exercise 5: Read the following passages carefully, then choose the ONE best answer (A, B, C or D) to each question

The Winterthur Museum is a collection and a house. There are many museums devoted to the decorative arts and many house museums, but rarely in the United States is a great collection displayed in a great country house. Passing through successive generations of a single family, Winterthur has been a private estate for more than a century. Even after the extensive renovations made to it between 1929 and 1931, the house remained a family residence. This fact is of importance to the atmosphere and effect of the museum. The impression of a lived-in house is apparent to the visitor: the rooms look as if they were vacated only a short while ago whether by the original owners of the furniture or the most recent residents of the house can be a matter of personal interpretation. Winterthur remains, then, a house in which a collection of furniture and architectural elements has been assembled. Like an English country house, it is an organic structure; the house, as well as the collection and manner of displaying it to the visitor, has changed over the years. The changes have coincided with developing concepts of the American arts, increased knowledge on the part of collectors and students, and a progression toward the achievement of a historical effect in period-room displays. The rooms at Winterthur have followed this current, yet still retained the character of a private house.

The concept of a period room as a display technique has developed gradually over the years in an effort to present works of art in a context that would show them to greater effect and would give them more meaning for the viewer. Comparable to the habitat group in a natural history museum, the period room represents the decorative arts in a lively and interesting manner and provides an opportunity to assemble objects related by style, date, or place of manufacture.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?

- A. The reason that Winterthur was redesigned
 - B. Elements that make Winterthur an unusual museum
 - C. How Winterthur compares to English country houses
 - D. Historical furniture contained in Winterthur
2. The phrase "devoted to" in line 1 is closest in meaning to.....
- A. surrounded by
 - B. specializing in
 - C. successful in
 - D. sentimental about
3. What happened at Winterthur between 1929 and 1931?
- A. The owners moved out
 - B. The house was repaired
 - C. The old furniture was replaced
 - D. The estate became a museum
4. What does the author mean by stating "the impression of a lived-in house is apparent to the visitor" (lines 5-6)?
- A. Winterthur is very old.
 - B. Few people visit Winterthur.
 - C. Winterthur does not look like a typical museum.
 - D. The furniture at Winterthur looks comfortable.
5. The word "**assembled**" in line 9 is closest in meaning to.....
- A. summoned
 - B. appreciated
 - C. brought together
 - D. fundamentally changed
6. The word "**it**" in line 9 refers to.....
- A. Winterthur
 - B. collection
 - C. English country house
 - D. visitor
7. The word "**developing**" in line 11 is closest in meaning to.....
- A. traditional
 - B. exhibiting
 - C. informative
 - D. evolving
8. According to the passage, objects in a period room are related by all of the following EXCEPT
- A. date
 - B. style
 - C. place of manufacture
 - D. past ownership
9. What is the relationship between the two paragraphs in the passage?
- A. Paragraph 2 explains a term that was mentioned in Paragraph 1.
 - B. Each paragraph describes a different approach to the display of objects in a museum
 - C. Paragraph 2 explains a philosophy of art appreciation that contrasts with that explained in Paragraph 1.
 - D. Each paragraph describes a different historical period
10. Where in the passage does the author explain why displays at Winterthur have changed?
- A. lines 1-2
 - B. lines 4-5
 - C. lines 6-8
 - D. lines 10-12

4. Đối với bài thi Đọc và trả lời câu hỏi có ý tương tự: thí sinh cần hiểu các cách diễn đạt khác nhau của ý đó. (Ví dụ: Đọc đoạn văn và xác định các câu Đúng (TRUE) hay Sai (FALSE) hay Không chứa thông tin (NO INFORMATION) từ bài đọc)

Exercise 6: Read the passage below then state whether the following sentences are TRUE or FALSE:

TRADITIONS AND CUSTOMS

Every nation and every country has its own customs and traditions. In Britain, traditions play a more important part in the life of the people than in other countries.

Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up. It has been the law for about three hundred years that all the theatres are closed on Sundays. No letters are delivered, only a few Sunday papers are published.

To this day, an English family prefers a house with a garden to a flat in a modern house with central heating. English people like gardens. Sometimes the garden in front of the house is a little square covered with cement painted green in imitation of grass and a box of flowers.

Holidays are especially rich in old traditions and are different in Scotland, Ireland, Wales and England. Christmas is a great English national holiday, and in Scotland it is not kept at all, except by clerks in banks; all the shops, mills and factories are working. But six days later, on New Year's Eve the Scotch begin to enjoy themselves. All the shops, mills and factories are closed on New Year's Day. People invite their friends to their houses and "sit the Old Year out and the New Year in". When the clock begins to strike twelve, the head of the family goes to the entrance door, opens it wide and holds it until the last stroke. Then he shuts the door. He has let the Old Year out and the New Year in. Now greetings and small presents are offered.

A new national tradition was born in Britain. Every year, a large number of ancient motor-cars and motor-cycles__ sometimes described as Old Crocks__drive from London to Brighton. "Crocks" means something or someone who is "crocked up"__broken down and in bad condition. Englishmen keep up the old veterans. Veteran cars are those which were made before the year 1904. Some cars look very funny, some are steered by a bar, like a boat. Some cars are driven by steam-engines (by boiling water and not by petrol). This run from London to Brighton is a colourful demonstration. People are dressed in the clothes of those times. The cars start from Hyde Park only in the morning, the oldest cars are leading. It is not a race, and most of the cars come to Brighton, which is sixty miles from London, only in the evening. This demonstration takes place on the day of the announcement of the law in 1896 which said that a man with a red flag must walk in front of every motor-car when it moved along the streets. These were the early days of motor-cars and people were afraid of them.

TRUE or FALSE

1. In Britain, traditions are very important in the life of people.
2. Englishmen have always changed their traditions.
3. English families prefer living in modern flats to in houses with gardens.
4. Christmas is the biggest holiday in Scotland.
5. People in Britain like celebrating "sit the Old Year out and the New Year in".
6. A demonstration of ancient motor-cars and motor-cycles is held in England every year.
7. This is a national race for ancient motor-cars and motor-cycles from London to Brighton.
8. On the early days of motor-cars, drivers had to wear red clothes when driving their cars.

5. Đối với bài thi Đọc và trả lời câu hỏi suy diễn: cần phải suy diễn logic để tìm ra thông tin cái mà không được thể hiện rõ ràng mà ngụ ý đằng sau thông tin trong bài.

Exercise 7: Read the following passages carefully, then choose the ONE best answer (A, B, C or D) to each question

As trees grow old they add a new ring for each year, this discovery, it seems, was first made by Leonardo da Vinci, the famous Italian painter and scientist. It took a long time, however, before the serious study of tree rings started; this was done in Arizona by Andrew Ellicott Douglas.

Douglas developed a simple technique for dating trees called cross-dating and for a period of over twenty years continued the study of tree rings. He spent much of his time in logging camps near Flagstaff.

The Douglas method has been used by many scientists. Some of them used it to examine logs in Indian pueblo ruins; they were able to date the buildings right back to the tenth century. Others used it to date the world's oldest living trees, the bristlecone pines.

1. What can be inferred from the first paragraph?
 - A. Leonardo made many discoveries.
 - B. Leonardo was famous as a painter
 - C. Leonardo was interested in the aging process
 - D. Leonardo became famous because of his tree ring discovery.
2. What also can be inferred from the first paragraph?
 - A. Leonardo started the serious study of tree rings.
 - B. Leonardo's discovery was not developed for many years
 - C. Tree rings were studied in Arizona for a long time after Leonardo.
 - D. Douglas was a famous Arizona scientist.
3. What can be inferred from the second paragraph?
 - A. The term cross-dating was invented by Douglas.
 - B. An uncomplicated method of tree-dating was discovered by Douglas.
 - C. It took Douglas 20 years to develop a tree-dating technique.
 - D. The technique of cross-dating was developed near Flagstaff.
4. What also can be inferred from the second paragraph?
 - A. Logging camps are good places for studying tree rings.
 - B. Douglas spent 20 years near Flagstaff.
 - C. Douglas spent most of his life studying tree rings.
 - D. There are courses for studying tree rings near Flagstaff.
5. What can be inferred from the last paragraph?
 - A. The Douglas method has been used since the 10th century.
 - B. Indians used the Douglas method to examine logs.
 - C. The earliest known trees can be dated by the Douglas method.
 - D. Indians used bristlecone pines to construct their buildings
6. What can be inferred from the last paragraph?
 - A. American Indians lived in the region investigated nearly a thousand years ago.
 - B. The Douglas method can be used to date all the 10th century ruins.
 - C. Scientists dated the bristlecone pine to the 10th century.
 - D. The Indian pueblo ruins were not as old as the bristlecone pines.
7. What was involved in the passage?
 - A. Leonardo spent much of his time in logging camps near Flagstaff.
 - B. Leonardo spent much of his time in logging.
 - C. Leonardo spent much of his time in examining logs.
 - D. None is correct.

6. Đối với bài thi Đọc và trả lời câu hỏi khái quát (hỏi về ý chính hay chủ đề của bài); Thí sinh nên tìm câu trả lời ở câu đầu tiên hay câu cuối cùng của đoạn văn.
7. Đối với bài thi Đọc và chọn đáp án đúng cho mỗi câu hỏi từ các đáp án đã cho (multiple-choice): Thí sinh cần đọc toàn bộ bài đọc trước tiên để hiểu nội dung của bài đọc, sau đó bao phủ các phương án lựa chọn, và chỉ nhìn kỹ vào từng câu, từng ý, hay từng câu hỏi, và sau đó có thể tìm câu trả lời trong bài đọc bằng chính ngôn ngữ của mình. Sau đó, mới bắt đầu đọc các phương án lựa chọn, xem thử phương án nào gần với câu trả lời đầu tiên của mình nhất, và loại bỏ những phương án vô lý, hay gây nhiễu nhất. Bằng phương pháp loại trừ dần các phương án sai, chúng ta sẽ quyết định một phương án tối ưu cho đáp án của mình. Đối với dạng bài đọc hiểu này, cần chú ý các câu hỏi thường theo trật tự như các thông tin trong bài đọc. Nếu có câu hỏi về toàn thể bài đọc và câu hỏi về mục đích hay thái độ của tác giả đoạn văn sẽ thường là câu hỏi cuối cùng và nên dùng thủ thuật '*read between lines*' để suy nghĩ về thái độ và tình huống cụ thể của người viết.

Exercise 8: Read the following passages carefully, then choose the ONE best answer (A, B, C or D) to each question

THE BEATLES

In the 1960s, The Beatles were probably the most famous pop group in the whole world. Since then, there have been a great many groups that have achieved enormous fame, so it is perhaps difficult now to imagine how *sensational* The Beatles were at that time. They were four boys from the north of England and none of them had any training in music. They started by performing and recording songs by black Americans and they had some success with these songs. Then they started writing their own songs and that was when they became really popular. The Beatles changed pop music. They were the first pop group to achieve great success from songs they had written themselves. After that it became common for groups and singers to write their own songs. The Beatles did not have a long career. Their first hit record was in 1963 and they split up in 1970. They stopped doing live performances in 1966 because it had become too dangerous for them - their fans were so excited that they surrounded them and tried to take their clothes as souvenirs! However, today some of their songs remain as famous as they were when they first came out. Throughout the world many people can sing part of a Beatles song if you ask them.

1. The passage is mainly about.....
 - A. How the Beatles became more successful than other groups
 - B. Why the Beatles split up after 7 years
 - C. The Beatles' fame and success
 - D. Many people's ability to sing a Beatles song
2. The four boys of the Beatles.....
 - A. Came from the same family
 - B. Were at the same age
 - C. Came from a town in the north of England
 - D. Received good training in music
3. The word "sensational" is closest in meaning to

A. Notorious	B. Bad	C. Shocking	D. Popular
--------------	--------	-------------	------------
4. The first songs of the Beatles were.....

A. Written by themselves	B. Broadcast on the radio
C. Paid a lot of money	D. Written by black Americans
5. What is not true about the Beatles?

- A. The members had no framing in music
 - B. They had a long stable career
 - C. They became famous when they wrote their own songs
 - D. They were afraid of being hurt by fans
6. The Beatles stopped their live performances because.....
- A. They had earned enough money
 - B. They did not want to work with each other
 - C. They spent more time writing their own songs
 - D. They were afraid of being hurt by fans.
7. The year 1970 was the time when.....
- A. They split up
 - B. They changed pop music
 - C. They started their career
 - D. They stopped singing live
8. What the fans of the Beatles often did was.....
- A. Sing together with them
 - B. Take their clothes as souvenirs
 - C. Ask them to write more songs
 - D. Ask them why they should separate
9. Some songs of the Beatles now.....
- A. Are still famous as they used to be
 - B. Became too old to sing
 - C. Are sung by crazy fans
 - D. Are the most famous
10. The tone of the passage is that of.....
- A. Admiration
 - B. Criticism
 - C. Neutral
 - D. Sarcasm

8. Đối với bài thi đọc về một bài viết có nhiều đoạn nhỏ, và có khoảng 7 câu bị lược bỏ đi từ các đoạn văn nhỏ và để lại chỗ trống. Thí sinh được cung cấp khoảng 8 câu không theo trật tự nội dung (được đánh số từ A tới H) và được yêu cầu phải chọn câu nào phù hợp để điền vào chỗ trống (gap-filling). Đối với dạng này, thí sinh nên đọc lướt toàn bộ đoạn văn, hiểu ý bao quát của đoạn văn, sau đó cố gắng đoán các thông tin bị thiếu trong đoạn văn, hình dung thông tin cần điền vào các chỗ trống là gì. Tiếp theo, thí sinh nên đọc kỹ các câu đã cho để điền vào chỗ trống, cố gắng tìm ra sự nối kết giữa các câu đó và bài khóa (chú ý: câu cần được chọn để điền vào chỗ trống và đoạn văn chứa nó phải có cùng chủ đề). Sau khi đã chọn được đáp án rồi, thí sinh cũng nên đọc lại toàn bộ đoạn văn xem nó có nghĩa không, để khẳng định lại một lần nữa sự lựa chọn của mình là chính xác.

Exercise 9: Choose from sentences A-H the one which fits each gap 1-6. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use. (12 points)

- A Industries have polluted the water, fishing has destroyed sea life and divers have damaged large parts of the coral.
- B The crew were helpful and pleasant and the price was also very reasonable.
- C Altogether, it was a wonderful trip.
- D I'm not sure I would go again.
- E It stretches for 2000 kilometres and is up to 800 metres wide.
- F However, I didn't think I could take part in a dive cruise and not dive.
- G At no point were we permitted to swim away on our own.
- H I was right it was an incredible sight.

A Natural Wonder

When I was asked to visit and write about the Great Barrier Reef, I was thrilled, I had heard reports of damage done by tourism and other industries, but felt that the Reef would still be a wonderful place to see. **0....H....**

From the air, the Great Barrier Reef seems huge. **1.....** I wasn't sure how best to explore such a giant place, so after I had landed, I made enquiries and was told the best way to see the Reef IS to take a dive cruise. I booked a place on a three-day cruise, and despite warnings about the state of some of these boats, the boat I was on was comfortable and clean. **2.....** I was entitled to eight dives plus use of wet suit, flippers and other equipment, three meals a day and two nights' accommodation.

Although I have been diving before, I am not an experienced diver. **3.....** I was nervous to begin with, but soon felt completely safe. We were divided into groups according to our ability and each group was given an instructor. They had very strict rules. **4.....**

With our guides, we saw some amazing sea life including small sharks, crabs and thousands of colourful tropical fish swimming around in the coral. The other diver were friendly and the evenings on board were very pleasant. **5.....**

While I was at the Great Barrier Reef, it became perfectly clear from the conservation programmes I came across, that the damage I had heard about had been done. **5.....**Environmental groups have done much to stop this damage, but sadly it continues.

Despite this, the Great Barrier Reef is a wonderful place to go. For me at least it is one of the most significant natural wonders our earth has to offer.

9. Đối với bài thi đọc ở dạng như sau: Thí sinh được yêu cầu nối các câu hỏi hay các câu nói với các đoạn văn ngắn của một bài đọc dài. Các đoạn văn ngắn này có thể về các con người, nơi chốn, . . . khác nhau. Thông thường, thí sinh được yêu cầu nối các thông tin chi tiết hay quan điểm, thái độ được diễn tả trong bài đọc với chủ thể của từng đoạn đọc ngắn đó. Để làm tốt dạng bài thi này, thí sinh cần đọc lướt mỗi đoạn, mỗi phần của bài đọc để lấy ý tổng quan. Sau đó đọc các câu hỏi và gạch chân các từ khóa mang ý chính (key-words), khẳng định rằng mình hiểu chính xác ý của câu hỏi. Sau đó lại nhìn nhanh lại bài đọc để tìm ý trả lời cho ý chính của câu hỏi (chú ý các từ khóa trong câu hỏi chưa hẳn là có trong bài đọc mà trong bài đọc có các từ diễn đạt ý tương đương.). Nếu thí sinh tìm được các từ khóa đó ở trong đoạn văn thì hay làm tương tự cho các đoạn khác và chọn đáp án cho bài thi.

• Chú ý vì thời gian làm bài đọc có hạn nên các thí sinh không nên đọc quá kỹ và cố gắng hiểu hết các từ trong đoạn văn mà vẫn chưa có cách thức chọn câu trả lời.

Exercise 10. You are going to read an article in which four people describe their best teacher. For questions 1-15, choose from the people (A - D). The people may be chosen more than once.

Which person had a teacher who...	My best teacher
1. taught more than one member of the same family? 2. might have preferred their pupil to choose a different career?	A. Veronique Tadjó Tae Kwon Do is a martial art which has become popular as a sporting activity in recent years. I started learning it in the Ivory Coast in Africa when I was about 13, and later became the country's first black belt. My teacher, Kim Young Tae, had been sent by the Tae Kwon Do federation in Korea to open a club. It was very successful. When he arrived he didn't know a word of French so he used to demonstrate rather than explain. At

3. was popular with all the pupils? 4. had to overcome a disadvantage when teaching? 5. made contact after their pupil left school? 6. taught in an unusual physical position? 7. changed their pupils' behaviour? 8. became their teacher as a result of a personal contact? 9. developed their pupils' physical and mental skills? 10. pointed their pupil in the direction of a successful career? 11. demonstrated a sense of humour? 12. decided what to teach by responding to their pupil's interests? 13. showed what was necessary instead of talking about it? 14. was also doing another job? 15. put an emphasis on what pupils expressed, not the way they expressed it?	the time my brother and I started learning Tae Kwon Do, we were fighting like mad. But we quickly understood we had to stop fighting because we realized that fighting was about self-defence, not aggression. Tae Kwon Do teaches you to control your anger and control your body. It is very good for your memory, co-ordination and self-discipline. And you are acquiring a philosophy. Later on, Kim opened a restaurant and then moved back to Korea. We had a very friendly relationship, but somehow I feel like I was a disappointment to him. He thought I had a future in the sport. But when I was 17 I decided it was not what I wanted to do. B. Helen Mirren Everyone loved Miss Welding. She taught me between the ages of 13 and 17 and was instrumental in my becoming an actress. She knew I was interested in acting, but it just wasn't an option in my world. My father was a driving examiner and I wasn't exposed to acting as a career. It was Miss Welding who told me about the National Youth Theatre, which was an organisation I was unaware of. She suggested I look into it and think about going there. About ten years after I left school, when I was with the Royal Shakespeare Company and playing fairly high-profile parts, I got a letter from Miss Welding saying she was following my career with interest, but as far as I know, she never came to see me perform. She certainly never came to see me backstage. C. Nisha Ishtiaq My father was editor of Pakistan's largest newspaper and he knew and liked its librarian, Atif Burkhi. Atif was well-educated and when I was about 12 my father decided I should learn more about the region's history and he chose Atif as my tutor. It turned out to be an inspired move. He would come to our house once a week to teach me, from the end of school until, supper. He took me through a lot of history, but after a few lessons I got bored. 'I know you're being paid by my parents to teach me this stuff,' I said, 'but there are other things in the world.' He burst out laughing as he so often did and asked: 'What do you want to talk about then?' And so we would discuss global issues and world literature. D. Suzanne Terry Brian Earle, my English teacher was a very intense man with thick glasses, and the fact that he taught a lot of his classes standing on his head was also seen as extremely peculiar. He taught me for just one year and it was probably one of the most creative years of my life. He didn't believe in giving marks for grammar or punctuation; he implied that the mechanics of writing were not important if you had something to say. When I wrote a short story for him called 'Army', he simply wrote across the bottom: 'You've just got to keep on writing.' Those few words of support had a fantastic effect on me in terms of wanting to write and be involved in writing. Brian Earle had a love of teaching and his subject.
--	---

Chuyên đề 6: WRITING (VIẾT)

Trong các đề thi học sinh giỏi cấp PTCS, các bài thi viết thường ở các dạng sau:

- Viết một lá thư (viết lá thư cho bạn bè, người thân kể về một chuyến đi của mình hay về lớp học, tình hình học tập, sinh sống của mình, hay lá thư mời bạn tới dự sinh nhật mình, hay đi nghỉ hè cùng mình,... (write an informal letter); viết cho ông (bà) hiệu trưởng, một người đứng đầu tổ chức, câu lạc bộ nào đó đề nghị hay phản nản, yêu cầu về vấn đề gì, hay đăng ký xin học bổng, xin việc,... (write a formal letter)
- Viết một đoạn văn miêu tả về quê hương, bạn bè, người thân, nghề nghiệp yêu thích, lễ hội, kỳ nghỉ,....
- Viết một bài luận nêu quan điểm của mình, hay đưa ra lập luận để đánh giá một cái gì đó.

Sau đây là một số gợi ý, giúp các em làm tốt phần thi này:

* HOW TO WRITE A LETTER

I. How to write a formal letter. (Cách viết một lá thư trang trọng)

* **The format of the formal letter** (Hình thức của một lá thư trang trọng):

- Có một số luật lệ qui ước về cách thức trình bày một lá thư trang trọng trong tiếng Anh, nhưng chúng ta nên viết và trình bày một lá thư càng rõ ràng, ngắn gọn, trang trọng càng tốt. Sau đây, là một hình thức và một số qui luật viết lá thư trang trọng:

Receiver's address (<i>The receiver's name</i> <i>The receiver's title</i> <i>The receiver's company</i> <i>The receiver's address</i> <i>Date (ngày tháng)</i> (<i>tên, tước hiệu, công ty, địa chỉ của người nhận</i>)	Writer's address Date
Dear Sir/ Madam, (opening a letter)	
Giving the content of the letter (nội dung chính của bức thư)	
Ending the letter I look forward to your reply Yours faithfully, Your signature,	

* **Một số qui ước khi viết thư:**

- Địa chỉ của người viết ở góc bên phải của lá thư
- Tên tước hiệu, tên công ty hay địa chỉ của người nhận ở góc bên trái của lá thư, dưới địa chỉ người viết.
- Ngày tháng nên viết góc bên phải, ngay dưới địa chỉ người viết, tháng nên viết bằng chữ.
- Lời chào của lá thư, bạn nên dùng '*Dear Sir/ Madam*' nếu bạn không biết tên của người bạn đang viết tới. Nếu bạn biết tên người mình viết tới, bạn nên dùng tước hiệu và tên họ (Mr. Mrs, Miss or Ms. Dr. Pro. etc.). Đối với phụ nữ nếu mình không chắc chắn biết họ có gia đình hay chưa chúng ta dùng '*Ms + tên họ*', đối với phụ nữ đã có gia đình, chúng ta dùng '*Mrs + tên họ*', đối với phụ nữ chưa lập gia đình, chúng ta dùng '*Miss + tên họ*' đối với nam giới, chúng ta dùng '*Mr + tên họ*'.)
- Cuối lá thư, thường có câu '*I look forward to your reply*' (Tôi mong đợi sự phúc đáp từ ông/ bà)/ '*I look forward to hearing from you.*'

- Kết thúc thư bằng ‘*Yoursfaithfully*’ nếu bạn không biết tên của người gửi, kết thúc bằng ‘*Your sincerely*’ nếu bạn biết tên của người gửi.

- Viết chữ ký và tên đầy đủ của mình ở cuối cùng của lá thư

* **Bố cục của lá thư: nên có nhiều hơn 3 đoạn.**

- Đoạn đầu nên ngắn gọn chỉ mục đích của lá thư (yêu cầu hay phàn nàn cái gì)

- Đoạn giữa của lá thư nên chứa đựng các thông tin cần thiết, không viết dài dòng, chú ý viết cho logic, dễ hiểu.

- Đoạn cuối nên chỉ ra những hành động, sự hồi đáp mà người viết mong đợi từ người nhận thư,....

Chú ý: Không nên viết tắt trong các lá thư trang trọng. Ví dụ: Tránh viết (I’m... / She’s...)

For example:

<i>Mr David Choi</i> <i>Sales Manager</i> <i>Ever long Batteries</i> <i>171 Choi Hung Road Hung Hom</i> <i>Hong Kong</i> <i>Dear Mr Choi,</i> <i>I am writing to inform you that the goods we ordered from your company have not been supplied correctly.</i> <i>On 23 September 2011 we placed an order with your firm for 12,000 ultra super long-life batteries. The consignment arrived yesterday but contained only 1.200 batteries. This error put our firm in a difficult position, as we had to make some emergency purchases to fulfil our commitments to all our customers. This caused us considerable inconvenience. I am writing to ask you to please make up the shortfall immediately and to ensure that such errors do not happen again. Otherwise, we may have to look elsewhere for our supplies.</i> <i>I lookforward to hearing from you by return.</i> <i>Yours sincerely</i> <i>J. Wong</i> <i>Purchasing Officer</i>	<i>Fortune Goods</i> 317 Orchard Road Singapore <i>September 18th 2011</i>
---	--

II. How to write an informal letter.

Cách viết một lá thư mang tính bạn bè, thân mật cũng giống như cách viết một lá thư công việc, nhưng lời chào, lời kết thúc lá thư và nội dung lá thư, chúng ta sử dụng ngôn ngữ thân mật hơn và có thể viết tắt trong lá thư. Cụ thể:

- Chúng ta bắt đầu lá thư bằng ‘Dear + first name (Dear Hoa,)

- Chúng ta kết thúc lá thư bằng:

+ I’m look forward to seeing you.

+ Write to me soon.

+ Love,

+ From a lot of love.

+ Good luck

- + Best wishes.
- + See you then.
- + Take care.
- +

For example:

Dear Jack,

I just received your email and I'm too glad that you're making reality what you always wanted. You asked me in your email when it is the best time to come. I think that it would be for you to come in the summer because during the summer we have many cooking festival.

You also mention that you want to meet people cooking everyday. That's possible basically if you go to our restaurant where everyday delicious meals are prepared. Moreover, if you want to know what our traditional food is that's 'Briham' which contains many vegetables and it's very high in vitamins and carbohydrates.

Now as for your invitation I'm very sorry but that time I will be sitting my school exams.

I'd love to see you when you will come.

Take care.

Roman

III. Cách viết cụ thể một số lá thư

1. How to write a letter of invitation

Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư mời cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Phần đầu thư nên nói mục đích viết thư của mình, mình định mời ai đến dự sự kiện gì (What the event?), ở đâu (where?), khi nào (when)
- Phần nội dung chính của lá thư nên nêu lời mời (*making invitation*) và yêu cầu cho sự khẳng định lại có đến hay không của vị khách được mời (*asking for confirmation*)
- **Chú ý:** Có 2 thì được sử dụng trong lá thư mời: *Present Simple Tense* được dùng để nói về sự kiện; *Future Tense* được dùng để hỏi và khẳng định lại rằng vị khách có đến hay không.

*** Một số ngôn ngữ thường sử dụng trong lá thư mời:**

Making invitation:

*** Informal ways:**

- Would you like	to come to my birthday party next Saturday?
- I'd like you	
- Are you free	
- Why don't you	come to my birthday party next Saturday?
- Will you	
- How about	coming to my birthday party next Saturday?
- What about	
- Do you feel like	
- Shall we	go out for a picnic next Sunday?
- Let's	going out for a picnic next Sunday?

*** Informal ways:**

- It would be great / wonderful if you could come to the conference next Saturday?
- Your presence at our conference would be highly appreciated.
- It is our pleasure to invite you to the conference next Saturday?
- It is our pleasure to have your presence at our conference.

Asking for confirmation:

- Give me a call if you (can) could come.
- Let me know if you can come.
- Please let us know if you are planning to come.
- Let me know about your plan as soon as possible.
- Just let me know when you can come and where we can pick you up.
- Please reply as soon as possible.

*** Sample letter of formal letter of invitation**

<i>Lisa Greene</i> 45 South Racine Avenue, Chicago, IL United States -(312) 996-8700 <i>Karen White</i> 4550 Kennedy Drive. East Moline, IL, United States (309) 792-2500 <i>December 20, 2011</i> <i>Dear Karen.</i> <i>I have got <u>the news</u> that you are coming down <u>to Chicago</u> for the Christmas this year. It is a great opportunity to meet. I have invited all <u>my friends</u> and acquaintances for a party on Christmas Eve. The party is organizes at my home and will begin at 7.00 pm.</i> <i>It is indeed a pleasure to invite your family and you for the party. This will be fun and we can enjoy together with all the friends. It has been quite a long time that you have been away from home due to your work. This is the perfect chance to meet after a long gap. We will try to bring hack the Christmas memories that ire shared at our school and college time.</i> <i>Our children will get to know each other and the relationship that we share will strengthen as it will pass on to next generation. I hope you will be able to make it to the party. I am looking forward for your positive reply.</i> <i>Please let me know in advance so that I can make the necessary arrangements. Let's make this Christmas memorable with get together of friends.</i> <i>Yours sincerely,</i> <i>Lisa Greene</i>
--

*** Sample letter of informal letter of invitation**

<i>Dear Mai,</i> <i>I'm having a birthday party next Saturday. Would you like to come. The party starts at 7.30 p.m and ends at 11.00 p.m. I'm going to invite some of our old classmates, too. You'll meet some of your old</i>
--

friends whom you haven't seen for so long. You can also enjoy games, singing and dancing as well as many kinds of delicious cakes and fruits. Please come and share the happiness with me.
Please let me know if you come.
Call me soon.
Love,
Nga

2. How to write a letter of acceptance or refusal

Cũng như boóc cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư chấp nhận hay từ chối việc gì cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Đoạn đầu của lá thư cần nói rõ mình rất cảm ơn lời mời hay lá thư mời (Saying thanks for the invitation)
- Đoạn hai của lá thư cần thể hiện rõ sự tiếc nuối cần phải từ chối và lý do hay sự vui lòng chấp nhận lời mời.
- Đoạn ba, nếu chấp nhận lời mời, mình sẽ nêu thời gian tới, hỏi xem có cần yêu cầu mang gì hay nói mình tự nguyện mang gì đến (nếu cần thiết) và nếu từ chối lời mời thì có thể nói lời cảm ơn lại một lần nữa và hẹn một dịp khác.

*** Một số ngôn ngữ thường sử dụng trong ‘a letter of acceptance or refusal’:**

Acceptance:

- Thank you very much for your invitation. I'd love to/ I'd be delighted to. . .
- Sure!/ Great! That would be fun/ wonderful.
- That sounds like fun.
- Great. Let's plan for it.
- That's a good (great) idea!

Refusal:

- Thank you very much but I'm afraid I'm busy then.
- I wish I could but I'm busy. Maybe another time. Thanks/ thanks anyways. / What about next Saturday,....

Saying thanks again and suggesting another time:

- I hope we can get together on other occasions.
- Maybe some other time.
- Could we make it another time?
- Maybe next Sunday or the other after that.
- What about next Sunday?

Sample letter of informal letter of refusal

Dear Jack and Betty,
Thank you very much for your invitation to have a holiday with you in your hometown. I must first apologize for the delay in responding to you so late to which I regret and promise that I will not do this to you again.
I also regret that I am unable to come due to previous commitment but hope that we will be able to meet up soon to catch up on our news on other occasion. You see that I will be attending a summer course at that time.
Once again please accept my apologizes for my tardiness
With best regards.

Jenny

Sample letter of informal letter of acceptance

Dear Jack and Betty,

Thank you very much for your invitation to have a holiday with you in your hometown. I'd love to come and that's a great idea to have a relaxing holiday in such peaceful and romantic place as your hometown after a hard working time.

I'll travel there by train and take some of your favorite things from the biggest supermarkets.

See you then.

Love,

Jenny

Sample letter of formal letter of refusal

543 Pine Valley
Great Falls. IL 59991

Doug Peterson
Executive Director
Software company
122 Main Street
South Town, MO 76890

April 24, 2011

Dear Thomas,

We appreciate that you took the time to apply for the position of sales manager with our company. We received applications from many people. After reviewing your submitted application materials, we have decided that we will not offer you an interview. We appreciate that you are interested in our company.

Please do apply again in the future when you see a job posting for which you qualify.

Again, thank you for applying. We wish you all the best.

Regards,

Doug Peterson

Sample letter of formal letter of acceptance

507 Shore Drive
Hampton, VA 23501

Mr. Jack Krebs, Division Manager
Data International Corporation
1212 Corporation Lane
Richmond. TA 23312

April 24, 2011

Dear Mr. Krebs:

I write to confirm my acceptance of your employment offer of April 20 and to tell you how delighted I am to be joining Data International in Richmond. The work is exactly what I have prepared for and hoped to do. I feel confident that I can make a significant contribution to the corporation, and I am grateful for the opportunity you have given me.

As we discussed, I will report to work at 8:00 a.m. on May 22 and will have completed the medical examination and drug testing by the start date. I understand that my starting salary will be 835,000 annually with health and dental coverage provided. Additionally, I shall complete all employment and insurance forms for the new employee orientation on May 23.

I look forward to working with you and your fine team. I appreciate your confidence in me and am very happy to be joining your staff.

Sincerely,

Jack Brown

3. How to write a thank-you letter.

Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư cảm ơn cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Nội dung chính của lá thư phải diễn tả được sự biết ơn hay sự đánh giá cao của mình về những thử thách mình nhận được hay sự giúp đỡ từ người khác, . . . và diễn tả được mình thích thú đó như thế nào hay nhờ sự giúp đỡ đó mà công việc của mình tiến triển như thế nào.
- Đoạn cuối của lá thư nên diễn tả lòng biết ơn và cảm ơn của mình một lần nữa.

* Một số ngôn ngữ thường sử dụng trong ‘a thank-you letter’

Expressing gratitude/ thanks - Thank you very much for your help/ helping with my work. - Many thanks to you for. ... - It was very kind of to help me with my work. - It was extremely good of you to... - I'm very much obliged to you for... - I'm really grateful to you for... - We would like to express our thanks/ gratitude to you for helping... - We are extremely thankful for your special help (assistance) and donation.	But for your great help (assistance), we couldn't have finished our work on time. My work couldn't have been successful without your great help.
---	---

<i>Professor: Van Hung. Pham</i> <i>The Director of Vietnam national University.</i> <i>Xuan Thuy St, Hanoi</i>	<i>73 Nguyen Bieu</i> <i>Hanoi, Vietnam</i> <i>04 4567889</i>
<i>September 15th.2011</i>	
<i>Dear Mr Hung.</i> <i>Thank you for all the help you have given me with my job search.</i> <i>I especially appreciate the information and advice you have provided, and the contacts you have shared with me. Your assistance has been invaluable to me during this process.</i> <i>Again, thank you so much. I greatly appreciate your generosity.</i>	

*Best Regards,
Yours,
Nguyen Minh Hieu*

4. How to write a letter of complaint

Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư phàn nàn cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Nêu được mục đích và lý do cho bạn viết lá thư phàn nàn về vấn đề gì.
- Chỉ ra được sự phức tạp hay khó khăn của vấn đề.
- Đề nghị cách giải quyết vấn đề.
- Đề cập tới hành động tương lai của việc giải quyết đó
- Cuối cùng kết thúc với sự lịch sự và mong đợi sự phúc đáp.

Chú ý:

- Lá thư phàn nàn nên ngắn gọn, súc tích.
- Lời lẽ và thái độ của người viết nên lịch sự vì sự thô lỗ, tức giận hay mỉa mai, chế nhạo không thể giúp bạn giải quyết được vấn đề.
- Người viết luôn thể hiện mình tha thiết được giải quyết vấn đề nhanh.
- Chú ý luôn đề nghị thời gian hợp lý cho hành động giải quyết vấn đề trước khi mình có thể có những sự lựa chọn khác.

*** Một số ngôn ngữ thường sử dụng trong ‘a letter of complaint’**

Expressing complaints

- I am writing to you	in connection with regarding with to complain about about	the radio I bought from your shop the rubbish you make around your restaurant.
- I feel/I must	complain about protest about	your making out so much rubbish around your restaurant.

Give suggestions for solving the problems

- I would suggest that you should collect the rubbish as soon as your restaurant closes.
- It would be better if you could send me a refund.
- Why don't you collect the rubbish as soon as your restaurant closes?
- Will you send me a refund soon?

Ways of ending a letter of complaint.

- I hope we will deal with it successfully.
- I trust this situation will not occur again.
- I would be very grateful if you would send me a refund.
- I would be very grateful if you could solve the problem soon.
- Your solution would be highly appreciated.

Sample letter of complaint.

Thư phàn nàn về lỗi của sản phẩm (complaints letter example about faulty product)

Sales Manager

85 Minh Khai, Hanoi

Electricity shop
75 Hang Bai street
Hanoi

April 24. 2011

Dear Sirs/ Madams,

On May 10th, I bought a CD player, model JVC 204 at your electronic shop at 75 Hang Bai Street. I am disappointed because your product has not performed as it should. Its volume is too small even though I maximize it. Furthermore, the sound of CD is not good. Sometimes, it has a buzz when I am playing a music CD. Therefore this product is not of satisfactory quality.

To resolve the problem I would like to require you to replace another one with high- quality or give me a refund. Enclosed are copies of the receipt and the contract.

I look forward to hearing from you and to a resolution of this problem. I will wait for you for three days before seeking help from the leader of the consumer group.

Please contact me at the email address nguyenhieu@gmail.com or by phone number 0913459977.

I really appreciate your help.

Yours sincerely,

Minh Hieu

5. How to write an application letter

Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư thỉnh cầu hay đơn xin cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Thông thường lá thư xin việc hay đơn xin học yêu cầu lối viết trang trọng, chúng ta thường bắt đầu lá thư bằng: *Dear Mr/ Mrs/ Ms + surname* hoặc *Dear sir/ madam*.
- Đoạn đầu của lá thư, người viết nên nêu rõ mục đích viết lá thư của mình, mình quan tâm đến công việc gì, trường học gì, và mình biết về công việc, vị trí hay trường học đó như thế nào.

For examples:

I am writing	to you	with reference to	the position of working as a secretary in your company
		in response	
		with regard to	
		in reply to	
		to reply	
		in connection with	
	to apply for		the advertisement for a tourist guide in The Morning Times.
			the post of tourist guide advertised in The Morning Times.
	to enroll for	summer activities held by your English Club.	
	to apply for	a scholarship to study in your college.	

- Đoạn thứ hai nên miêu tả ngắn gọn công việc hiện tại bạn đang làm (*For examples: I am currently working for. . . / working as a receptionist in. . . / studying in. . .*) và nói đầy thuyết phục bạn có khả năng làm công việc được quảng cáo đó, hay đủ năng lực để tham gia trường học, các hoạt động, . . và nêu một số dẫn chứng để chứng minh điều đó. (*For examples: I believe that I can meet all requirements of the*

job because.../I am sure that I have the appropriate qualifications, experience and personality for this post/ position because.../I feel that I would be suitable for the post/ position because I am hard-working, patient and honest.)

- Đoạn tiếp theo, người viết nên hỏi cụ thể về thời gian khi nào mình có thể tham gia cuộc phỏng vấn cho công việc và khi nào mình có thể đảm nhận công việc đó.

(For examples: I am available for an interview at anytime at your convenience. /I will be willing to start work from the beginning of September.)

- Đoạn cuối của lá thư người viết nên nói về sự hứng thú và mong đợi được tuyển dụng vào làm việc hay được chấp nhận là một thành viên của câu lạc bộ,...

- Kết thúc lá thư một cách trang trọng và lịch sự.

Sample letter of a job application.

*Mr. George Gilhooley
XYZ Company
87 Delaware Road*

*Hatfield, CA 08065
(909) 555-555
george. gillhooley@email.*

com

September 10th 2011.

Dear Mr. Gilhooley,

I am writing to apply for the programmer position advertised in the Times Union. As requested, I am enclosing a completed job application, my certification, my resume and three references.

The opportunity presented in this listing is very interesting, and I believe that my strong technical experience and education will make me a very, competitive candidate for this position. The key strengths that I possess for success in this position include:

- I have successfully designed, developed, and supported live use applications*
- I strive for continued excellence*
- I provide exceptional contributions to customer service for all customers*

With a Bachelor of Science degree in Computer Programming, I have a full understanding of the full life cycle of a software development project. I also have experience in learning and excelling at new technologies as needed.

Please see my resume for additional information on my experience.

I can be reached anytime via email at george. gillhooley(a)email. com or my cell phone. 909-555-5555.

Thank you for your time and consideration. I look forward to speaking with you about this employment opportunity.

Sincerely,

Hatfield

6. How to write a letter of request

Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư yêu cầu cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Đoạn đầu lá thư, người viết cần nêu rõ mục đích viết thư của mình là yêu cầu về một vấn đề gì đó.

- Đoạn tiếp theo, người viết nên cung cấp một ít thông tin về mình để người nhận thư nhận ra người viết là ai. Sau đó, người viết mới viết ngắn gọn về các yêu cầu của mình.
- Đoạn tiếp theo người viết cũng có thể trợ giúp thêm một số thông tin hay chia sẻ thông tin để đối tác có thể đáp ứng được yêu cầu của mình và cũng chỉ rõ thời gian mình cần nhận được sự phúc đáp lại cho những yêu cầu của mình
- Đoạn cuối thư người viết nên cung cấp tên, địa chỉ, email, số điện thoại để liên lạc lại và nếu cần hỏi xem đối tác có cần yêu cầu gì lại không.
- Cuối lá thư nên có sự cảm ơn về sự trợ giúp từ đối tác.
- Kết thúc lá thư một cách trang trọng và lịch sự.
- **Một số ngôn ngữ thường sử dụng trong ‘a letter of request’**

Making a request

Can you	send me some information about the fee, the time, the course book for the course.
Could you please	
Would you mind	
Could you possibly	
Would it be possible for you to	
I would be grateful if you could	
I would highly appreciate if you could	
I am wondering if you could	
I wonder if you could	

Sample letter of request

<i>The Director of New Sun Language Institute</i> <i>Le Duan St. Hanoi</i>		<i>75 Nguyen Trai</i> <i>Hanoi, Vietnam</i> <i>04 66778809</i>
<i>Dear Sir/ Madam,</i> <i>I saw your Institute's advertisement on today's TV program. I am very interested in learning English and I would like some more information about your Institute.</i> <i>I can speak a little English, but I read it very slowly and my writing is bad. So I want to improve my reading and writing.</i> <i>Could you please provide more information about the length of the courses and fees for beginners? I can supply my record of English study if necessary.</i> <i>I look forward to hearing from you soon.</i> <i>Yours faithfully,</i>		<i>September 25th, 2011</i>

7. How to write a letter of confirmation

‘**A letter of confirmation**’ là lá thư đáp lại một cách khẳng định rằng mình chấp nhận lời mời hoặc sự nhờ làm gì đó qua thư của ai đó. Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư khẳng định cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Đáp lại lá thư mời của đối tác

+ I am very happy/glad to hear that you are going to have a party. ...

+ It is very kind/ nice/ sweet of you to invite me. ...

Khẳng định lại rằng mình có tham dự được và thời gian, địa điểm, phương tiện gì bạn đến

+ I am sure I'll come. / Certainly, I will come. . . .

+ Certainly, I'll help you....

+ I am so happy to help you. I'll come at 4. 00 on Monday. . . .

Luôn thể hiện rằng bạn mong đợi đến ngày đó, việc đó

+ I am looking forward to it/ to help you.

+ I can't wait for it any longer.

+ I'll come and I'll be waiting for you at the airport at 5.00 p.m. See you then.

Sample letter of confirmation

September 25th. 2011

Dear Hoa.

I'm happy to hear that you are going to have a birthday party next Saturday.

Certainly, I'm willing to help you to organize the party. I'll be free tomorrow so I'll go shopping with you to buy everything necessary for the party. I will also help you to send the invitation cards to your friends.

I'll be at your house at 7. 00 a. m tomorrow.

Love,

Mai

Jacky Brown

Green Grass Company

Hongkong

Billy Bo

Miracle Grow Fertilizer

Shanghai, China

August 12th.2011

Dear Billy,

We would just like to confirm the agreement made during a phone conversation on Friday, July 22nd.

As per our conversation, our company, Green Grass Company, agrees to deliver a 5-ton amount of Green Grass pesticide to your location in Shanghai every week for the duration of 10 weeks. Upon completion of this task, we will receive the sum of \$5 million dollars. If we fail to meet our obligations, all terms of the contract will be terminated and we will receive no compensation for our work.

Please respond to verify that all the above information is correct and to confirm your obligation in this agreement.

Yours sincerely,

8. How to write a letter of recommendation

‘A letter of recommendation’ là lá thư giới thiệu về một thể mạnh, vẻ đẹp của nơi nào đó, hay ưu điểm của một ai đó, thường là để giới thiệu nơi đó với khách du lịch hay giới thiệu người nào đó với người khác, hay một tổ chức nào đó để họ có thể xin được việc làm, xin được học bổng hay tham gia một

tổ chức nào đó. Cũng như bố cục của một lá thư thông thường, lá thư giới thiệu cần có đầy đủ lời chào và kết thúc của lá thư, nhưng nó cần đảm bảo được nội dung sau:

- Mở đầu lá thư luôn nói rõ mình muốn giới thiệu ai, nơi nào cho ai.
- Nội dung chính của lá thư luôn nói rõ về những thế mạnh, ưu điểm của nơi hay người mà mình muốn giới thiệu.
- Đoạn cuối của lá thư cũng cần nêu một số lợi ích mà người nhận thư sẽ được hưởng và kết thúc với sự mong đợi một kết quả tốt.

Ví dụ 1: nếu viết lá thư giới thiệu về một điểm đến của du khách thì cần theo sườn ý sau:

A letter of recommending a place

Outline:

- **Introduction:** Name and location of the place.
- **Body:** Most important good features (Food and drinks; local people; travel; accommodation; weather; entertainment,...)
- **Conclusion:** make sure that the tourist will have a good holiday (a great time) there and have polite letter endings.

Ví dụ 2: nếu viết lá thư giới thiệu về một ai đó thì cần theo sườn ý sau:

A letter of recommending a person

Outline:

- **Introduction:** Name of the person and the reason why you recommend him/ her.
- **Body:** Most important good features (family background: education background: appearance & personality; experiences...)
- **Conclusion:** make sure that the receiver will be satisfied with him/ her and have polite letter endings.

Sample letter of recommendation

Dear Jenny,

I am very happy to hear that you are going to spend your summer holiday in Vietnam. I would like to recommend a well-known place in Vietnam to you. It's Nha Trang Beach.

Nha Trang Beach is located in the South coastline of Vietnam, in Khanh Hoa Province. Nha Trang Beach attracts millions of tourists every year. Most tourists are impressed by a clean, well-serviced seaside resort. It has a long white sand beaches. The sea water is very blue and clean. You can go swimming, go surfing, go boating in the sea. In addition to the long stretch of beach, many different attractions and activities are available. Vacationer often visit Ponagar Tower, Dien Khanh Citadel, Tomb of Yersin, Husband Island, Mother Island, Van Phong Bay, Due My Hot- Water Spring Mud Bath and Lo River, Oceanic Institute. Tri Nguyen Aquarium; Giant Buddha; and many fishing offshore islands. The weather in Nha Trang Beach is mostly sunny all year around with an average temperature of 26 degree Celsius. People here are very friendly. At night, you can have a city tour on a very unique, nice pedicab. You can enjoy many delicious kinds of seafood at reasonable prices. There is also a big selection of hotels and mini-hotels in Nha Trang. Furthermore, there are daily flight from Ho Chi Minh city to Nha Trang so it is very convenient to travel to Nha Trang.

I think you should come and see Nha Trang. I am sure you will have a very wonderful holiday there.

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Your sincerely,

Minh Hieu

Sales Manager
Software company
098672345

Executive Manager
Electronic Company
87 London St

July 26th. 2011

Dear sir/ madam,

I have had the pleasure of working with Alicia Jones during the past two years while she has served as an Assistant in my office. Alicia has shown the ability to establish an excellent rapport with many different constituents including students, administrators, and staff. Alicia is genuinely interested in helping others and provides service in a consistently positive and helpful manner. Alicia is self-assured and calmly handles the stress associated with busy times in the office.

Alicia is exceptionally responsible and volunteers to jump in and help out with any tasks. She blends a well organized, task oriented style with the aforementioned sensitivity to the needs of our clientele. I have rarely met a student employee over the past ten years upon whom I can rely as much as Alicia. As you can tell, I think very highly of this young woman and recommend Alicia without reservations for employment or any other endeavors she chooses to pursue. Please let me know if you have any further questions about this outstanding young woman.

Your faithfully,
David Brown

* HOW TO WRITE AN ESSAY

1. Làm thế nào để viết một bài luận tiếng Anh hiệu quả

Trước khi bắt đầu viết bài luận Tiếng Anh, bạn cần phải xác định 3 điều quan trọng: viết gì, viết cho ai và viết như thế nào. Sau đây là một số lời khuyên giúp bạn viết tốt bài luận Tiếng Anh.

1. Hiểu rõ chủ đề

Phân tích và hiểu rõ yêu cầu của chủ đề. Một phương pháp hiệu quả là bạn nên gạch dưới những từ ngữ quan trọng trong chủ đề nhằm xác định những ý chính mà chủ đề đang đề cập đến.

2. Trả lời chính xác câu hỏi

Đây là lời khuyên quan trọng bạn nên lưu ý. Trả lời câu hỏi sai là một sai lầm phổ biến của học sinh. Hãy chắc chắn hiểu rõ những gì giám khảo nêu ra trong chủ đề và bạn sẽ được đánh giá cao nếu câu trả lời thật sự xoáy vào câu hỏi đó.

3. Mở bài tốt

Mở bài nên ngắn gọn súc tích và những điểm chính được nhấn mạnh. Bạn nên làm rõ một số khái niệm trong bài viết của mình. Mở bài sẽ bị mất điểm nếu quá đi sâu vào chi tiết, rồi sau đó lặp lại những lập luận này trong phần thân bài. Bạn nên bắt đầu trong phần mở bài với những câu văn có cấu trúc đơn giản vì điều này giúp bài luận trở nên rõ ràng hơn.

4. Lập dàn ý

Một dàn bài cụ thể giúp bạn tập hợp được suy nghĩ của mình cũng như không quên đề cập đến những lập luận chính. Đây là cơ hội cho bạn vận dụng trí tuệ về những gì bạn biết liên quan đến chủ đề. Đừng nên đi vào chi tiết quá nhiều, hãy viết các ý chính rồi sau đó triển khai thành câu văn hoàn chỉnh trong bài luận.

5. Ba bước quan trọng trong lập luận

- Bước 1: trình bày nhận định và ý kiến của bạn.
- Bước 2: giải thích nhận định và ý kiến ấy. Đừng quên là điều bạn giải thích phải liên quan đến chủ đề
- Bước 3: xem xét và cân nhắc lại tranh luận của bạn. Đây là cơ hội để bạn thể hiện những lý lẽ trong tranh luận này là do chính bạn nghĩ ra chứ không phải sao chép hoặc ghi nhớ từ những nguồn tài liệu khác. Bước cuối này còn được gọi là “Phân tích đánh giá”, là phần khó khăn nhất nhưng cũng chính là phần cần thiết nhất để ghi điểm.

Sau đây là cách trình bày một mặt vấn đề. Nó được sử dụng nhằm thuyết phục người đọc tin hoặc làm một việc gì đó. Một vấn đề nên có:

	Tổ chức	Ngôn ngữ
Phần giới thiệu	cho người đọc biết quan điểm của tác giả	Quan điểm của tôi là.. Tôi nghĩ...
Hàng loạt các lý lẽ	trình bày các lý lẽ một cách hợp lý (mỗi đoạn một ý), đưa ra ví dụ khi cần thiết	Đầu tiên là,... Thứ hai là,... Cuối cùng là...
Kết luận	Tổng hợp lý lẽ	Do đó,... Kết luận,...

6. Kết luận

Nên nêu ra một cách tóm tắt các lập luận trong bài cũng như nhấn mạnh câu trả lời chính của bạn. Kết luận nên cố gắng thêm vào một số ý mới và không hoàn toàn phải lập lại những ý đã có sẵn trong bài.

7. Suy nghĩ rõ ràng và dùng từ hiệu quả

Điều quan trọng nhất là viết những gì có liên quan đến chủ đề. Mặc dù chất lượng quan trọng hơn số lượng, nhưng cũng đừng nên lúc nào cũng theo phong cách tối giản và viết càng ít càng tốt. Viết văn súc tích đòi hỏi ở bạn một suy nghĩ rõ ràng. Kể từ khi ngôn ngữ trở thành một công cụ thể hiện suy nghĩ, sự cầu thả trong sử dụng ngôn ngữ có thể bị đánh giá như cầu thả trong suy nghĩ. Ở một số trường hợp, học sinh thường cố gắng nghĩ đến các từ ngữ phức tạp nhằm tạo nên một bài luận tốt, nhưng hãy lưu ý sử dụng chúng trong ngữ cảnh phù hợp.

8. Cách trình bày

Điểm đánh giá của bài luận có thể bị giảm chỉ vì những lỗi nhỏ liên quan đến chính tả, dấu câu, . . . hay cách canh lề và nên trình bày một luận điểm trên một đoạn văn.

9. Viết có tính thuyết phục

- Để trình bày một lý lẽ trong một đoạn văn cho có tính thuyết phục, các em nhớ phải biết cách viết một đoạn văn, cấu trúc của một đoạn văn như sau:

A PARAGRAPH (1 đoạn văn)

- * **Topic sentence** (câu chủ đề, nêu ý tưởng chính của đoạn văn)
- * **Supporting sentence 1, 2, 3, 4, . . .** (các câu phát triển ý là câu chứng minh cho câu chủ đề, nó có thể là ý giải thích, hay nói rõ hơn ý cho câu chủ đề bằng cách đưa ra dẫn chứng minh họa, số liệu, sự kiện,...)
- * **Concluding sentence** (câu kết luận của đoạn văn là câu khẳng định lại câu chủ đề, tóm tắt lại các ý của đoạn văn)

Để các đoạn văn có thể liên kết với nhau, và được thống nhất trong một mạch chảy của bài viết, các em phải biết cách sử dụng các từ nối câu cho hợp lý. Sau đây là bảng các từ/ cụm từ nối. Chú ý, sau các từ/ cụm từ nối này, chúng ta sử dụng một mệnh đề, trừ những cụm từ có dấu (*) trên đầu thì theo sau là cụm danh từ, danh từ.

Sequencing/ listing (từ nối chỉ sự liệt kê)	<i>First of all = first(ly)</i> (Trước hết là, = initially = To begin with; <i>Second (ly)</i> : Thứ 2 là; <i>Third (ly)</i> ; thứ 3 là; <i>First, Next, Then, After that (this), Following this (that), Finally.</i> * <i>The first reason is ... / * The second is. . .</i> * <i>Last but not least. . .</i> (điều cuối cùng nhưng không kém quan trọng hơn những cái khác là...)
Adding to what we have said (Từ nối để chúng ta có thể thêm ý vào điều chúng ta đã nói)	- <i>Also</i> (cũng vậy); <i>Furthermore</i> (Hơn nữa là) = <i>In addition = Additionally = Moreover; Besides</i> (Ngoài ra) - <i>and, similarly, likewise, as well as</i> - <i>not only... but also ...; even beside this/that</i>
Contrasting (từ nối để diễn tả ý tương phản)	<i>In contrast to this= On the contrary = In contrast</i> (tương phản với); <i>Conversely</i> (Đổi lập với); <i>On the other hand</i> (Mặt khác là...); <i>While</i> (trong khi đó); <i>Whereas</i> (Trong khi); <i>However</i> (Tuy nhiên) <i>Despite/ in spite of/though/ although/ even though</i> (mặc dầu); <i>otherwise</i> (mặt khác thì); <i>nonetheless</i> (tuy nhiên, dù sao)
Expressing similarity (từ nối để diễn tả ý tương tự)	<i>Similarly</i> (tương tự); <i>Likewise</i> (Như thế, tương tự như vậy); <i>In the same way</i> (trong một cách như vậy)
Showing results (từ nối để diễn tả kết quả)	<i>As a result</i> (như một kết quả thu được)= <i>As a consequence = Consequently; Hence</i> (vì thế, vì lý do đó cho nên; do vậy) = <i>Thus = Therefore = So</i>
Giving examples (từ nối để đưa ví dụ minh họa)	<i>For example = For instance</i> (ví dụ như là); <i>in particular = particularly</i> (cụ thể là..); * <i>such as</i> (như là, theo sau là một loạt danh từ liệt kê; <i>that is/ that is to say/ namely, ...)</i>
Conceding (từ nối để diễn tả sự nhượng bộ)	<i>Although = Even though = Though</i> (mặc dầu)= <i>In spite of this/ the fact that... = Despite this/ that/ the fact that; * In spite of... = * despite. . . however</i> (tuy nhiên); <i>nonetheless</i> (tuy nhiên, dù sao); <i>still</i> (mặc dù vậy, ấy thế mà); <i>yet</i> (song, vậy mà, tuy nhiên)
Restating (từ nối để diễn tả sự giải thích lại, diễn đạt lại ý)	<i>In other words</i> (nói một cách khác); <i>that is to say</i> (điều đó nói rằng..); <i>to put it simply</i> (để nói một cách đơn giản rằng...)
Infering (từ nối để diễn tả sự suy luận)	<i>In other words; in that case</i> (trong trường hợp đó thì...); <i>(or) else</i> (kẻo không thì..); <i>otherwise</i> (nếu không thì. . .)
Summarizing (từ nối để diễn tả sự tổng kết lại, tóm tắt lại..)	<i>In summary = To sum up = To conclude = To recapitulate=</i> <i>In conclusion = In short = In brief...</i> (nói tóm lại rằng/ để tóm tắt lại, để cô đọng lại,); <i>In a nutshell, lastly, finally</i>

10. Trả lời câu hỏi chính của chủ đề.

Cuối cùng, đọc lại bài viết thật nhiều lần để xác định bạn đã tập trung và trả lời câu hỏi mà chủ đề nêu ra hay chưa.

Sample paragraph: Should students wear school uniform? State your opinion in a short paragraph.

My opinion is that secondary school students should wear casual clothes. Firstly, casual clothes make students feel comfortable because they don't feel constrained to wear uniforms that they don't like. Secondly, wearing casual clothes gives students freedom of choice. They have rights to choose size, colors and fashions of clothes that they love. Thirdly, casual clothes make students feel self-confident when they are in their favorite clothes. Finally, casual clothes make school more colourful and lively. In conclusion, secondary school students should wear casual clothes. Wearing casual clothes is convenient, comfortable and fun.

Sample Essay: Write an essay about the importance of TV.

Outline	Essay
Introduction Introduce general topic (TV) Narrow down topic (household without TV?) Focus on thesis (TV important) Reasons and reader guide (valuable programmes, content, purposes)	<i>Today it is very common in industrialised countries for a household to have at least one television. In fact, it is so common that it is difficult to imagine a household without TV. This shows just how significant television is to us, but we can see that its importance is far greater than just being an object we own if we look at the variety of programmes and valuable content it offers and the purposes it serves in daily life.</i>
Body: developmental paragraph 1 (Variety of programmes) Topic sentence (topic and controlling idea: many programme types) Supporting ideas (list some types) Details (function)	<i>First of all, there are many different types of programmes on television that are useful. The viewer can watch a weather report to prepare for the day. Cartoons and sport provide relaxation and fun. School programmes, documentaries and the news teach us about the world. And advertisements inform us about products and new ideas.</i>
Bods : developmental paragraph 2 (Informative character of content) Topic sentence (topic and controlling idea: what makes content attractive) Supporting ideas (realistic, etc.) Details (value for viewers)	<i>Secondly, the content is relevant because it is realistic and up to date. As TV is a medium that combines moving, colour images and sound, it resembles real life, so the viewers can identify with what they see. Furthermore, modern technology' means that the content is up to date, for example, news reports can be broadcast live and from all over the world. This means that information is available almost anywhere at any time.</i>
Body: developmental paragraph 3 (serves many beneficial purposes in daily life)	<i>Finally, TV can be used to enhance many important aspects of everyday life. People seek entertainment and distraction, and TV can give us</i>

Topic sentence (topic and controlling idea: how does TV meet peoples needs) Supporting ideas (people's needs) Details (specific functions)	<i>that in the form of films or cartoons. People want education, information and instruction because they are inquisitive and like to learn. TV gives us these in documentaries or educational programmes, in reports or cultural magazines. People enjoy creativity, and TV gives us that in the work of all the people involved in creating clever film scripts, effective scenery, witty dialogues or magnificent camera shots. TV gives us the world, other cultures, other people, languages and ideas. It introduces us to knowledge.</i>
Conclusion	<i>In conclusion, TV serves our life. TV is a very essential appliance and our life would be dull and boring without it.</i>

B. BÀI TẬP TỰ ÔN LUYỆN

* Write a letter.

A. Guided writing: Make all the changes and additions necessary to produce from the following sets of words and phrases that together make a complete letter.

Exercise 1

Dear Madam/sir

1. I / like / express / concern / increasing number / karaoke bars / city//

.....

2. There / be / lot / reason /I object / places//

.....

3. Firstly / owners / take / much money / those / come / sing

.....

4. Secondly / they cause / much noise / neighborhood

.....

5. Thirdly / there / number / pupils / play truant / just/ go / those places / sing

.....

6. Last / least / these bars / do harm / appearance / city / because / their / ugly / flashing light//

.....

7. I / want / say /I / not / old fashioned person//

.....

8. I/ hope / authority / take / matter / careful consideration//

.....

9. I / not mean / ban them / but / there should / effective way / control / this kind / entertainment places//

.....

10. I/ look / see / city council / do / this master

.....
Your truly,
Jon Brown

Exercise 2

Dear Hoa,

1. I / write/ introduce/ you/ language school/ you/ can improve/ English. //
-
2. Instead of/ learn/ your own/ as/ you/ do/ now/ you/ should learn/ speak/ English/ others. //
-
3. The Academy of Language/ offer/ you / good and friendly environment/ practice/ English//
-
4. They/ also/ have/ well-qualified teachers. //
-
5. There/ classes/ different levels/ the afternoon/ evening/ and/ courses/ begin/ first week/ this November//
-
6. If you/ interested/ you/ can phone /38765432/ further information//
-

Best of luck!
Mai

Exercise 3

Dear Mom and Dad,

1. I/ arrive/ Hanoi/ 5 o'clock yesterday morning//
-
2. I/ staying/ nice hotel//
-
3. It/ not/ far/ city center//
-
4. I/ already see/ Uncle Ho's Mausoleum/ some places/ interest here//
-
5. Tomorrow/ going on a trip/ Ha Long Bay//
-
6. I/ never/ be/ there before//
-
7. I/ be excited/ trip/ not sleep//
-
8. I/ be back/ Sunday, Nov 10th//
-
9. I/ tell you/ more/ trip/ when/be/ in Hue//
-
10. I hope/ you well//
-

A lot of love.
Mai

Exercise 4

Dear Mary,

1. It / be / long / time / since / I / last hear / you//

2. How are you getting on?

3. you / like / come / stay / me / my cottage / countryside?//

4. You / your family / welcomed / if / want / visit / us//

5. What about / come / the end / next month?//

6. Write / let / me / know / if/ you/ come. //

A lot of love.

Daisy.

Exercise 5

Dear Marry,

1. I/ be/ very happy/ get/ letter//

2. I/ not know/ you/ arrive back/ Vietnam//

3. You/ have/ good time/ London?//

4. I/ look forward/ hear/all about it. //

5. Thank you/ invite/ me/ dinner/ next Saturday//

6. I/ afraid/ not able/ come. //

7. Because I/ attend/ my aunt's/ wedding party//

8. What about/ next Sunday//

9. If possible/I come over/ your house/ dinner next Sunday//

10. Write/ me/soon//

From love,

Tom

Exercise 6

Dear Sir or Madam,

1. I/ see/ your Foreign Language Center/ advertisement/ Vietnam's News//

.....
2. I/ interested/ improve/ my English speaking/ your Language Center. //

.....
3. I/ would like/ have/ some/ more information" the course/ English speaking skill.

.....
4. you/ tell/ me/ the schedule/ fee/ the courses?//

.....
5. Will/I/ tested/ before/join/ the classes?//

.....
6. I/ looking/ forward/ hear/ you. //

.....
Yours sincerely,

Minh Hoa

Exercise 7

Dear Sir/ Madam,

1. I/ write/ you/ the fans in my room/I/ ask/ your company/ install. //

.....
2. I/ not satisfied/ because of/ the poor quality/ the fans/ provide/ your company.//

.....
3. The fans/ not work/ well/ because/ when/ they/ run/ high speed/ they/ make/ a lot of noise. //

.....
4. This/ really/ make/ me/ difficult/ sleep/night. //

.....
5. Furthermore/ they/ not/ electricity-saving fans/I/ need/ buy. //

.....
6. I/ would like/ your company/ responsible/ all the repair work. //

.....
7. If possible/I/ would like/ have/ other new electricity-saving fans/ high quality. //

.....
8. I/ look forward/ hear/ you/ and/ get/ quick resolution/ these problems. //

.....
Yours faithfully,

Minh Tri.

Exercise 8

Dear Mai,

1. I/ write/ tell/ how sorry/I/ be/ hear / you/ fail/ that examination. //

.....
2. I/ know/ you/ try/ best/ work/ very hard/ but/ that examination be/ too difficult.

.....
3. I/ think/ you/ not be/ too disappointed/ now. //

.....
4. There/ be/ many other examinations/ come/ and/ many new challenges/ come you/ too//

5. I/ hope/ you/ succeed/ the next year's examination. //

6. You/have / 2 weeks off/you?

7. Why/ you/ not visit/ us/ the countryside?

8. We/ have/ a lot of fun/ here/ and/ you/ refresh/ that hard examination. //

9. Please/ write/ me/ phone/ if/ you/ come. //

10. We/ look forward/ see/ you/ soon. //

Exercise 9

Dear Mrs. Jenny,

1. On behalf/ our class/ I/ would like/ express/ great/ gratitude/ you/ help/ us/ organize/ English Speaking Club.

2. You see our English Speaking Club wouldn't have been held successfully but for your great help.

3. The English Club/ stimulate/ English learning/ among us//

4. All of us had a lot of fun and learned a lot from each other in the Club.

5. I/ hope/ get/ more/ assistance/ you/ the future/ hold/ activities/ the Club/ regular//

6. I/ look-forward/ hear/ you/ soon//

Yours sincerely,

Mai

Exercise 10

Dear Sir/ Madam,

1. I write/ you/ apply/ part-time job/ you/ advertise/ Labor News. //

2. You/ say/ you/ need/ tutor/ help/ your daughter/ Math/ Chemistry/ Grade 9.

3. I/ be/ grade 11/ now/ and/ I/ be/ very good/ Math/ Chemistry. //

4. I/ be/ really interested/ work/ tutor/ free time/ in order to/ earn/ some more money/ my study. //

5. Because I would like/ become/ teacher/ in the future/ so/ work/ tutor/ give/ experience.

6. Furthermore/I be/ gentle/ patient/ hardworking. //

7. I/ think / I/ meet/ your demands/ and/ help/ your daughter/ study/ these subjects/ good. //

8. I/ go to school/ the morning/ but/ I be/ free/ other afternoons/ except/ Tuesday/ Thursday afternoons. //
9. I/ would prefer/ work/ Monday, Wednesday and Friday afternoons/ 2 p. m/ 4 p. m. //
10. I/ look forward/ receive/ reply. //

Yours faithfully,
Nguyen Minh Hieu

B. Free writing

Question 1

You have received the following letter from your English-speaking friend.

Thanks for inviting me to stay with you when I visit your country next month.
I'm not sure how to get to your apartment from the airport. Could you write back giving me some basic instructions? What would be the best method of transport for me? I'd prefer one that isn't *too* expensive!
Just one other thing - what will the weather be like when I get there? (Just so I'll know what clothes to pack!)...

Write your **letter** of reply to your friend (around 120-180 words).

Question 2

You have seen the following job advertisement in your local youth centre.

ACTIVITY	CO-ORDINATOR	WANTED!
(Weekends only)		
Would you like to work with young children aged 5-11?		
Do you have lots of energy?		
Are you an excellent swimmer?		
If the answer to these questions is 'yes' then we want to hear from you. Our Children's Club is looking for someone to be in charge of a group of 10 children to teach them swimming and to do a range of other activities. Please send a letter to Mr Hung saying why you are suitable for the job.		

Write your **letter of application** to Mr. Hung, (around 120-180 words)

Question 3

You have received the following letter from your English penfriend.

I'm really pleased you're planning to attend an English language summer course in England to study.
Let me know what type of course you're interested in and I'll call some language centers and institutes to ask for some more details. The more information you can give me the better!

Write your **letter** of reply to your penfriend (around 120-180 words).

Question 4

You have seen the following job advertisement on the noticeboard of your local language school:

CLUB ORGANISER NEEDED!
(Monday and Wednesday evenings only)
Our language school is looking for a person to help organise a Film Club for students of English. Our Film Club will meet twice a week to watch a film in English followed by a discussion of the film.
Do you have some knowledge of English?

Do you like working with groups of people?

Are you interested in films?

If you think you would be a suitable person to organise our Film Club then we would like to hear from you. Please send a letter to the school owner saying why you are suitable for the job

Write your **letter of application** to the school owner, (around 120-180 words)

Question 5

You are reading an English language magazine and you see details of a language school that you are interested in.

LEARN ENGLISH AT YOUR OWN PACE!

If you would like to study English on a course that has been specially designed to meet your needs and interests, then contact the Principal of the Effective Learning School giving details of your:

Motivation for studying English; length of time studying English; strengths and weaknesses in the language

Preferred start date and length of course

Hobbies and interests

We will contact you once we have received your details in order to arrange a programme of study for you

Write your **letter** to the Principal of the school, (around 120-180 words)

* Write an essay

Exercise 1: Should dangerous sports such as boxing or motor-racing be banned? Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 2: How do you think society will be affected by the growth of telecommuting? Write an essay to give your opinion.

(*Definition: Telecommuting: workers doing all or part of their work from home and communicating with their office by computer.*)

Exercise 3: Should rich countries help poorer ones? Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 4: Do children learn more quickly than adults? Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 5: Should Smoking be banned? Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 6: Do you think that only study in college or university can give you success in life? (Is a third-level education necessary for success?). Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 7: Should children be educated at home or in school? Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 8: Should parents use corporal punishment to discipline children? Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 9: Why do many students drop out school? Write an essay about the reasons and solution for this problem. (School Drop-Outs: Problems and Solutions). Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 10: In your English class you have been discussing different ways of studying English. Your teacher has asked you to write a composition with the following title: **The advantages and disadvantages of learning English abroad compared to learning in your own country.**

Write your **composition** for your teacher (around 120-180 words).

Exercise 11: 'Why are examinations important?' Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 12: 'Why are family important to everyone?' Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 13: 'Is the friendship important to you?' Write an essay to give your opinion.

Exercise 14: ‘Environment pollution is a pressing issue for every nation?’ Write an essay about causes and solution to this problem.

Question 15: Write a short passage of argument (about 100- 120 words) to persuade your friends to go to school by bicycle, (while some students like going to school by motor-cycle)

Question 16: Your classmates are having a discussion on “What should we do to protect the environment?”. Rewrite the conversation in about 15- 20 conversational exchanges.

GIỚI THIỆU MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI ANH VĂN

MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI TỈNH PTCS

SỞ GD ĐÀO TẠO
TỈNH NGHỆ AN
ĐỀ THI CHÍNH THỨC

KỲ THI CHÍNH THỨC HỌC SINH GIỎI TỈNH LỚP 9

Năm học 2009 - 2010

MÔN: TIẾNG ANH - BẢNG A

Thời gian làm bài: 150 phút

SECTION A: PHONETICS

I. Pick out the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------------|----------------|----|
| 1. A. legal | B. legend | C. energetic | D. manager | |
| 2. A. whisper | B. waste | C. husband | D. inspiration | |
| 3. A. discuss | B. butcher | C. hungry | D. butter | |
| 4. A. technique | B. chemical | C. characteristic | D. attach | |
| 5. A. onion | B. author | C. walk | D. taught | |
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. |

II. Identify the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the other words.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----|
| 1. A. include | B. improve | C. prepare | D. answer | |
| 2. A. independent | B. inexpensive | C. informative | D. interactive | |
| 3. A. decorate | B. remember | C. consider | D. encourage | |
| 4. A. purpose | B. machine | C. surface | D. greenhouse | |
| 5. A. majority | B. development | C. experiment | D. literature | |
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. |

SECTION B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR.

I. Choose the best answer from A, B, C or D.

1. Nam: Please.....Ba to lock the door carefully if he goes out tomorrow. – Lan: OK
A. say B. talk C. remember D. remind
2. You can borrow my books you bring them back by Monday.
A. unless B. as long as C. so D. while
3. The harder you try,
A. the most success you achieve B. you achieve the more success
C. the more success you achieve D. the better you achieve success
4. I am sure he didn't break your vase.....purpose.
A. in B. with C. for D. on
5. Put on this screen toyourself from the sun.
A. protect B. prevent C. avoid D. divert
6. She didn't find anything.....for a vegetarian, so she left the restaurant.
A. suits B. suitable C. suitability D. suitably
7. Hung: Would you mind if I smoked in here?- Hoa:
A. Yes. I'd love to B. Thanks. I don't smoke
C. I'd rather you didn't D. I'm sorry

8. Lan: Let's go to Cua Lo beach after the exam.?- Hai: Yes. that sounds good.
 A. should we B. shall we C. shan't we D. shouldn't we
9. Some people.....sports in order to keep fit, not because they like them.
 A. train B. practice C. make D. do
10. It is usually impossible to tell the difference between.....twins.
 A. same B. similar C. identical D. alike
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

II. Supply the correct verb forms to complete the sentences.

1. In the history of Nobel Prizes, she was the first woman (award).....the Economics.
2. A: It's time we (do).....something to protect our environment.
 B: Yes. OK. I think it (destroy).....seriously in the last ten years.
3. Miss White: Peter! You (always talk).....in class.
 Peter: I'm sorry. I won't talk more.
4. John: I really regret (buy).....this second-hand motorbike.
 Tom: I had told you before!
5. He (not visit).....his grandparents since he (leave).....his hometown.
6. Hoa: Do you know the man (sit).....next to Miss Le? - Ha: No, I don't.

1.	4.
2.	5.
3.	6.

III. Supply the correct word forms to complete the passage.

NOISE POLLUTION

The families in our streets are slowly being driven mad by the (1)..... of the inhabitants of N° 13 to have any form of (2).....with them. The trouble started over what is known as noise pollution. Every evening, the (3).....neighbors used to turn up the volume on the TV so loud that no one in the (4)..... was able to hear anything else. Not (5)..... what action to take, local residents held a meeting to see if anyone had any suggestions as to how to deal with the problem. A (6).....was made to send a number of people to talk to the family in N° 13 and ask them (7).....to turn their music down after six in the evening. (8)....., the visit did not turn out to be (9)....., as the inhabitants of N° 13 refused to talk to them. So on the (10)).....of the local police, the matter snow in the hands of the court.	1-REUSE 2-COMMUNICATE 3-THINK 4-NEIGHBOR 5-KNOW 6-DECIDE 7-POLITE 8-FORTUNE 9-SUCCEED 10-ADVISE
---	--

1.	6.
2.	7.
3.	8.
4.	9.
5.	10.

IV. IDENTIFY and CORRECT 8 mistakes in the following passage.

SAVING ENERGY

1	Many people still believe that natural resources will never be used up. Actual.
2	the world's energy resources are limited. Nobody know exactly how much
3	fuel is left. However, we also should use them economically and try finding
4	out alternative sources of power.
5	According for Professor Marvin Burnham of the New England Institute of
6	Technology, we have to start conserving coal, oil and gas before it is very late;
7	“and nuclear power is the only alternative. However, many people do not
8	approve of using nuclear power because of It's very dangerous. What would
	happen whether there were a serious nuclear accident? Radioactivity causes
	cancer and may bad affect the future generations. The most effective thing is
	that we should use natural resources as economically as possible.

Line	Mistake	Correction	Line	Mistake	Correction
1			5		
2			6		
3			7		
4			8		

SECTION C: READING

I. Read the passage and choose the best answer from A, B, C or D.

A RICH TEENAGER

Computer programmer David Jones earns £35,000 a year designing new computer games, yet he cannot find a bank prepared to let him have a cheque card. Instead he has been told to wait another two years, until he is 18. The 16- year- old works for a small company in Liverpool, where the problem of most people of his age is finding a job. David's company releases two new games for the expanding home computer market each month.

But David's biggest headache is what to do with his money. Despite his salary, earned by inventing new programs within tight schedules with bonus payment and profit-sharing, he cannot drive a car, take out a mortgage, or obtain credit cards. He lives with his parents in their council house in Liverpool, where his father is a bus driver. His company has to pay £150 a month in taxi fares to get him five miles to work and back everyday because David cannot drive.

David got his job with the Liverpool - based company four months ago, a year after leaving school with six O- levels and working for a time in a computer shop. “I got the job because the people who run the company knew I had already written some programmes,” he said. I suppose £35,000 sounds a lot but in fact that is being pessimistic.

I hope it will come to records and clothes and he gives his mother \$20 a week. But most of his free time is spent working. "Unluckily, computing was not a part of our studies at school," he said. “But I had been studying it in books and magazines for four years in my free time. I knew what I wanted to do and never considered staying on at school. Most people in this business are fairly young anyway.”

David added. "I would like to earn a million and I suppose early retirement is it possibility. You never knew when the market might disappear.

1. What is David different from other young people of his age? - He
 - A. earns an extremely high salary
 - B. is unemployed
 - C. doesn't go out much
 - D. lives at home with his parents
2. David's greatest problem is.....
 - A. making the banks treat him as an adult
 - B. inventing computer games
 - C. spending his salary
 - D. learning to drive
3. He was employed by the company because he.....
 - A. had worked in a computer shop
 - B. had written some computer programmes
 - C. works very hard
 - D. had learned how to use computers at school
4. He left school after taking O- levels because he.....
 - A. did not enjoy school
 - B. was afraid of getting too old to start computing
 - C. wanted to work with computers and staying at school did not help him
 - D. wanted to earn a lot of money
5. Why does David think he might retire early?
 - A. He thinks he is too young to write computer programmes.
 - B. He wants to stop working when he is a millionaire.
 - C. He thinks his company might go bankrupt.
 - D. He thinks computer games might not always sell well.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

II. Fill in each numbered blank with ONE suitable word.

A DOCTOR

A doctor who worked in a village was very annoyed because many people (1).....to stop him in the street and ask (2).....his advice. In this way, he was never paid for his services, and he never managed to earn much (3).....He made up (4).....mind to put an end to do this. One day, he (5).....stopped by a young man (6).....said to him, "Oh, doctor. I'm so happy to see you. I've got a severe pain in my left side". The doctor pretended to be interested (7).....said, "Shut your eyes and stick your tongue (8).....of your mouth". Then he went away, leaving the man standing in the (9).....with his tongue hanging out and a large crowd of people laughing (10).....him.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.
6. 7. 8. 9. 10.

SECTION D: WRITING

1. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first one.

1. The last time I wrote to him was three months ago.
I haven't.....
2. That restaurant is so dirty that no one wants to eat there.
It is such.....

3. The hurricane blew off the roof of his house.

The roof.....

4. How many competitors were there in the game yesterday?

How many people.....?

5. Pay the money back to me or I will call the police.

If you.....

6. "If I were you, I would try my best to learn English". John said to Jane.

John advised.....

7. I was not surprised that you did very well in your exam.

It came as.....

II. COMPOSITION:

What benefits does English Speaking Club bring about to secondary students? Write a composition to express your ideas. (You should write within 140-160 words)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

THE END.

Môn thi: **TIẾNG ANH**

Thời gian thi: 90 phút (không kể thời gian giao đề)

Ngày thi: 01/04/2010

Part 1 Phonetics (1 mark)

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently (0,5 mark)

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>sure</u> | B. <u>shore</u> | C. sea <u>side</u> | D. <u>shell</u> |
| 2. A. <u>boot</u> | B. <u>book</u> | C. <u>hook</u> | D. <u>foot</u> |
| 3. A. <u>key</u> | B. <u>mean</u> | C. <u>quay</u> | D. <u>great</u> |
| 4. A. <u>think</u> | B. <u>there</u> | C. <u>theme</u> | D. <u>thumb</u> |
| 5. A. <u>hat</u> | B. <u>dangerous</u> | C. <u>battle</u> | D. <u>calculate</u> |

II. Choose the word whose stress is different. (0,5 mark)

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. accurate | B. customer | C. computer | D. exercise |
| 2. A. initial | B. inherit | C. occurrence | D. occupied |
| 3. A. affect | B. effect | C. defeat | D. decent |
| 4. A. interfere | B. referee | C. intolerant | D. introduce |
| 5. A. definite | B. belonging | C. organic | D. alternative |

Part 2. Vocabulary and Grammar (6 marks)

I. Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences. (2 marks)

- One of the major causes.....heart disease is lack of exercise.
A. for B. to C. of D. by
- On March 27, a lot of firework is.....off in Danang city.
A. set B. gone C. placed D. burned
- He.....an overdose of heroin and died.
A. used to B. used C. was used to D. was used
- Can you give me the.....for tomato soup?
A. formula B. recipe C. order D. method
- I must go to the dentist and.....
A. get my teeth to take care of B. take care of my teeth
C. my teeth be taken care of D. get my teeth taken care of
- The two cars for sales were in poor condition, so I didn't buy
A. either of them B. both of them
C. neither of them D. each of them
-his financial problem, Mark bought a new motorbike.
A. Although B. Because C. Despite D. Instead of
- The first time I noticed something was wrong was.....I got home.
A. since B. when C. for D. until
- I told her the instruction again.....do it wrong.
A. so that she will B. in order for her not to
C. in order not to D. so as to
- The woman.....lives next door to you.

- A. I bought my car B. whom I bought my car
C. I bought my car from D. from that I bought my car

II. Error Recognition: Identify the error in each sentence (2marks)

1. Liquid takes the shape of any container which it is in placed.
A B C D
2. If you need to get into the flat, there's a key below the doormat.
A B C D
3. Wendy sat down near to Jeff and whispered something in his ear.
A B C D
4. There aren't a few sunny days at this time of the year, so let's go to the beach today.
A B C D
5. Your briefcase is in the kitchen, darling. Don't forget to take laptop.
A B C D
6. Billy! Stop behaving as a clown and sit down.
A B C D
7. There's a coffee shop in the hotel and it as well has a restaurant.
A B C D
8. "My parents stopped me to get married to the man I love." says Alice.
A B C D
9. Jane ran over to me and breathless informed the failure of our team.
A B C D
10. Neither of the boys had ever been out of town before, so they were really exciting.
A B C D

III. Complete each sentence with a word made from the word given (1 mark)

1. Actually I found Tony's book was.....interesting. (**surprise**)
2. Ann has left home and is.....of her parents. (**depend**)
3. Not being chosen for the team was a great.....(**appoint**)
4. Mike tried.....to phone Cathy several times. (**success**)
- 5.....is a serious matter, and you have to think about it. (**marry**)

Part 3 Writing (4marks)

7. Rewrite each sentence so that it has a similar meaning and contains the word given. Make any other necessary changes. (2 marks)

1. I'm afraid that we haven't got any eggs. (**run**)
.....
2. Our new house makes me feel excited. (**about**)
.....
3. Ellen didn't have enough money for the ticket. (**afford**)
.....
4. Why don't you search for this word in the dictionary? (**look**)
.....
5. The last film we saw was more frightening than this one. (**as**)
.....
6. This chair is not comfortable, and nor is the other one. (**neither**)
.....

7. It was such a good play that the audience cheered. (**so**)

8. They have just painted Ann's portrait. (**had**)

9. Ugh! This cake has a rubbery taste. (**rubber**)

10. Jane is very similar to her father. (**takes**)

II. Use the following sets or words and phrases to write a complete letter. (2 marks)

Dear Sally.

Thank you / your last letter. /Be/good/hear/you.

1.....

My/big news/be/I/decide/change/jobs.

2.....

I/finish/work/VietcomBank/next month/and/start/new company, HA Gia Lai, week after.

3.....

VietcomBank/not want /me/leave/but/HA Gia Lai/more money/more opportunities.

4.....

I/hope/be/manager/there/two years.

5.....

I/have/party/the 25th/ and/love/see you.

6.....

Perhaps/you/could/persuade/brother/come/you/as well.

7.....

I/really enjoy/dance/him/at your party.

8.....

My neighbors/promise/go out/ for the evening,/so/we can/play/music/as/loud/want.

9.....

I/must/stop/write/now and/do/some work.

10.....

See you on the 25th, I hope.

Love

Claire

Part 4: Reading (6 marks)

Passage 1 Cloze test: Put ONE suitable word into each gap. (1mark)

Approximately 350 million people speak English as their first language. About the same (1)..... use it as a second language. It is the language of aviation, international sport and world trade. It is an official language in 44 countries. In many (2).....it is the language of business, commerce and technology. There are many varieties of English, but Scottish, Texan, Australian, Indian, Jamaican (3).....of English despite the (4).....in pronunciation, structure, and vocabulary, would recognize that they are all speaking the (5).....basic language.

Passage 2 Read the passage and choose the correct answers (1 mark)

A Robotic Astronaut

Robots are replacing people in many jobs. They are used in the car industry. People complain that they take needed jobs away from people. But there is one place where robots are welcome to do work.

A robot astronaut was developed by NASA. It is called Robonaut. Robonauts look like humans. However, they have more flexible arms and hands than humans. They can do some of the more difficult work in space. Robonauts are expected to work with human astronauts in future missions. They need no spacesuits, oxygen and meals to survive in space. Humans need air to breathe and protection from **extreme** temperature changes. Most importantly, Robonauts will be sent where astronauts cannot go yet because the risks are too high.

1. How do people feel about robots?
 - A. They do not like how robots take jobs.
 - B. They do not want robots to hurt astronauts.
 - C. They think robots are of great help.
 - D. They want robots to replace astronauts.
2. The word **extreme** in the passage is closest in meaning to.....
 - A. various
 - B. distant
 - C. radical
 - D. unreasonable
3. According to the passage, where is the one place robots are welcome to do work?
 - A. At NASA
 - B. In space
 - C. On the sun
 - D. On Earth
4. According to the passage, what is one advantage of Robonauts?
 - A. They do not need food or oxygen to survive in space.
 - B. They do not need extra fuel to keep working in space.
 - C. They resemble humans in appearance.
 - D. They were developed by NASA, which ensures their quality.

The end!

Question 1:

Part a- Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest:

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>sensitive</u> | B. <u>benefit</u> | C. <u>pretty</u> | D. <u>remedy</u> |
| 2. A. <u>oranges</u> | B. <u>figures</u> | C. <u>classes</u> | D. <u>watches</u> |
| 3. A. <u>garbage</u> | B. <u>garage</u> | C. <u>sewage</u> | D. <u>carriage</u> |
| 4. A. <u>now</u> | B. <u>flow</u> | C. <u>row</u> | D. <u>know</u> |
| 5. A. <u>complain</u> | B. <u>ascertain</u> | C. <u>campaign</u> | D. <u>bargain</u> |

Part b- Choose the word that has the different stress from the others:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. dormitory | B. category | C. priority | D. ordinary |
| 2. A. pesticide | B. separate | C. slavery | D. efficient |
| 3. A. appliance | B. activity | C. adventure | D. average |

Question 2: Supply the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. I'd rather you (not wear).....jeans to the office.
2. When I first (come).....to this village, it was a quiet place. But since then population (double)and a lot of leisure facilities (build).....
3. The teller was made (lie).....down on the floor.
4. The money (steal).....in the robbery was never found.
5. This building (be).....finished by the end of 2015.
6. Can't you see that I'm busy (write).....?
7. There's nothing (do).....about it now, except tell the police the truth.
8. My boss is angry with me. I didn't do all the work that I (do).....last week.

Question 3: Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition:

1. Lan's alarm clock didn't go.....this morning, so she got up late.
2. She was laid.....for weeks.....a slipped disk.
3. Don't make up your mind at once, talk.....with your lawyer first.
4. There is no cure.....baldness except a wig.
5. He grew.....a very good player.
6. That tie doesn't go.....that suit.
7. Get.....the bus at Third Street and get.....at Broadway.
8. He looked down.....his less fortunate neighbors.

Question 4: Give the correct forms of the words in brackets.

1. Chatting has become more and more.....with young Internet users (**people**)
2. Advertisements account for three fourths of the.....of the newspaper. (**come**)
3. These workers got a bonus because they did their jobs..... (**effect**)
4. What do you.....do in the afternoon? (**use**)
5. You can buy electrical.....at the shop over there (**apply**)
6. He has been one of the most effective.....in the "Keep Our City Clean" campaign. (**activity**)
7. The President's New Year Speech is going to broadcast..... (**nation**)

8. Some people believe strongly in the.....of life on the other planets (**exist**)
 9. His lawyer speaks more.....than yours. (**persuade**)
 10. The weather in Britain is.....we don't whether it's sunny or rainy after five minutes. (**predict**)

Question 5: Choose the word or phrase to complete the sentence:

1. The smaller the room is, the.....furniture It needs.
 A. fewer B. smaller C. more D. less
2. How can I know.....book is yours? They are so alike.
 A. what B. which C. this D. the
3. The secretary to.....I talked didn't know where the meeting was.
 A. which B. who C. that D. whom
4. Nobody knows what the.....of the explosion was.
 A. source B. cause C. reaction D. reason
5. It looks.....it's going to rain.
 A. as B. as like C. as if D. if
6. Babies have to learn how to.....before they can walk.
 A. crawl B. creep C. strike D. stroll
7. What are the main of this illness?
 A. traces B. symptoms C. emblems D. tokens
8. My sister is very.....of spiders.
 A. terror B. terrify C. terrified D. terrifying
9. Stop now, you've done.....work for one day.
 A. too many B. plenty C. quite more D. quite enough
10. If you take a train or a bus, you must pay a.....
 A. fare B. tip C. fee D. commission

Question 6:

Part a: Fill in each numbered blank with a suitable word.

An increasing (1).....of people are now going on (2).....to Egypt. The population of Egypt is about 50 million and the (3).....is EL Qahira (Cairo), a busy city of just under 9 million people. Although the climate is hot and dry, (4)..... of the country is desert, the average temperature (5).....October to March is not too high.

The most (6).....sights are the pyramids at Giza. However, it's also pleasant to visit Alexandria, Port Said and several (7).....places and do as much (8).....as possible.

A (9).....to Luxor is very interesting, and there are frequent (10).....there from Rario.

Part b: Read the following passage. Then answer the questions below.

Traditions and Customs in Great Britain

Every nation and every country has its own customs and traditions. In Britain traditions play a more important part in the life of the people than in other countries. Englishmen are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up.

It has been a law for about 300 years that all theaters are closed on Sundays. No letters are delivered, only a few Sunday papers are pulished.

To this day an English family prefers a house with a garden to a flat in a modern house with central heating. English people like gardens. Sometimes the garden in front of the house is a little square covered with cement painted green in imitation of grass and a box of flowers.

Holidays are especially rich in old traditions and are different in Scotland, Ireland and England. Christmas is a great English national holiday, and in Scotland it is not kept, except by clerks in banks and all shops and factories are working.

Questions:

1. How important are traditions in Britain?
.....
2. What do Englishmen do to their traditions?
.....
3. Which does an English family prefer, a house with a garden or a flat?
.....
4. Find a sentence in the passage which shows that the English people like garden very much?
.....
5. How Christmas is kept in Scotland?
.....

Question 7:

Part a-There is a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence. Find and correct it.

1. Not put your clothes on the bed
A B C D
2. They normally caught the early bus but today they came to visit us with a car
A B C D
3. What do you often have for the lunch?
A B C D
4. Your brother hardly goes to work by bus, doesn't he?
A B C D
5. Kangaroo, that can be seen everywhere in Australia, have long tails
A B C D

Part b- Use the given words to make meaningful sentences.

1. It / be/ such / cold day / we / decide / not / go out.
2. please / tell / if / you / take / books / my room.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Question 8: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meanings stay the same as the ones given.

1. If you saw a UFO, what would you do?
If a UFO.....
2. I can't sing beautifully, so I can't join them now.
I wish.....
3. She couldn't come to class because of her illness.

- As.....
4. He got down to writing the letter as soon as he returned from his walk.
No sooner.....
5. I have never read such a romantic story.
This is.....
6. Even though I admire his courage, I think he is foolish.
Much.....
7. The sea was so rough that the ferry couldn't sail.
The rough sea.....
8. Their chances of success are small
It is not.....
9. Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test.
As long as.....
10. The train journey from London to Bristol takes two hours.
It is a.....

The end!

**UBND TỈNH PHÚ THỌ
SỞ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO
ĐỀ THI CHÍNH THỨC**

**KỲ THI CHỌN HỌC SINH GIỎI TỈNH LỚP
9**

NĂM HỌC 2009 - 2010

Môn: Tiếng Anh

Thời gian làm bài 150 phút (Không kể thời gian phát đề)

Ngày thi: 30-03-2010

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the rest by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (20 points)

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>ou</u> ght | B. <u>thou</u> ght | C. <u>br</u> ought | D. <u>thou</u> gh |
| 2. A. <u>thi</u> ck | B. <u>thi</u> nk | C. <u>th</u> us | D. <u>thi</u> n |
| 3. A. <u>fo</u> ot | B. <u>sch</u> ool | C. <u>bo</u> ok | D. <u>go</u> od |
| 4. A. <u>kn</u> ew | B. <u>gre</u> w | C. <u>thr</u> ew | D. <u>fl</u> ew |
| 5. A. <u>l</u> ose | B. <u>cl</u> ose | C. <u>ch</u> ose | D. <u>r</u> ose |
| 6. A. <u>dos</u> age | B. <u>mass</u> age | C. <u>carri</u> age | D. <u>vo</u> yage |
| 7. A. <u>h</u> igh | B. <u>h</u> ome | C. <u>h</u> our | D. <u>h</u> orn |
| 8. A. <u>pass</u> ed | B. <u>forc</u> ed | C. <u>threat</u> ened | D. <u>walk</u> ed |
| 9. A. <u>br</u> ea | B. <u>ste</u> a | C. <u>gr</u> ea | D. <u>br</u> ea |
| 10. A. <u>confu</u> sion | B. <u>tens</u> ion | C. <u>seiz</u> ure | D. <u>meas</u> ure |

II. Choose the one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (40 points)

- What's your birthday, Ann? - It's
A. on the thirty-one of July
B. on July the thirty-one
C. on the thirty-first of July
D. in July the thirty-first
- The sun.....in the west. Look ! It
A. set/ is setting
B. sets/ is setting
C. setting/ set
D. set/ set
- All the boys are good at cooking, but.....is as good as the girls.
A. either
B. neither
C. none
D. every
- The weather.....fine so far this week.
A. is
B. was
C. has been
D. had been
- I have so many routines that sometimes I feel.....I am an automatic robot.
A. as if
B. even if
C. even though
D. like
- The walls of the house are covered.....a coat of paint.
A. with
B. in
C. by
D. under
- That was a.....ceremony.
A. prepared-well
B. prepare-well
C. well-prepared
D. well-prepare
- That novel was written by a well-known writer. It is worth.....
A. to read
B. reading
C. read
D. have read
- Is this the address to.....you want the package sent?
A. where
B. which
C. that
D. whom
- The father sat by his.....child's bedside all night as he was sick.
A. sleep
B. asleep
C. oversleep
D. sleeping
- He has adopted three orphans.....his own six children so that, all together, he has nine children to provide for.

- A. except B. beside C. besides D. in place of
12. You should take regular exercise.....sitting in front of the television all day.
A. in spite of B. instead of C. without D. even
13. I don't want to go out tonight.....Anna phones.
A. so that B. even though C. when D. in case
14. I object to.....like this.
A. be treating B. treating
C. being treated D. have been treated
15. Since.....to a warmer and less humid climate, I've had no trouble with my asthma.
A. I move B. I moving C. upon moving D. moving
16. Shy people often find it difficult to.....group discussions.
A. take place in B. take part in
C. get on with D. get in touch with
17. Our soccer team lost.....three goals to nil.
A. with B. by C. to D. in
18. Don't forget to.....the alarm clock for six o'clock tomorrow morning.
A. set B. put C. ring D. wind
19. Not only did he lose the keys, but he also forgot the tickets.
A. He forgot the pair of tickets to the concert.
B. He didn't know he had to have tickets.
C. He got the tickets after he found his keys.
D. He lost his keys and forgot the tickets as well.
20. "Do not write on the walls", said the teacher to the boy.
A. The teacher told the boys do not write on the walls.
B. The teacher told the boys not to write on the walls.
C. The teacher said to the boys not write on the walls.
D. The teacher said to the boys do not write on the walls.

III. There is a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (20 points)

1. Jason's professor had him to write his thesis many times before allowing him to
A B C
present it to the committee.
D
2. I think Helen is accustomed to work eight hours a day.
A B C D
3. The more frequent you exercise, the greater physical endurance you will have.
A B C D
4. Only when you have had a chance to know various occupations you will decide on your career.
A B C D
5. I tried to do everything to contact John two weeks ago but so far I don't receive his reply.
A B C D
6. Most students were able of finding good jobs three to six months after graduation.
A B C D

7. The letter was sent by special delivery must be important.

A B C D

8. Because the torrential rains that had devastated the area, the governor sent the National

A B C

Guard to assist in the clean-up operation.

D

9. My brother attends an university in the Midwest which specializes in astrology.

A B C D

10. Although Mark has been cooking for many years, he still doesn't know to prepare French

A B C D

foods in the traditional manner.

IV. Give the correct form of the words in brackets to complete the sentences. (20 points)

1. Vietnam declared its.....on September 2nd, 1945.

(DEPEND)

2. The phone doesn't work. It's been

(CONNECT)

3. It was a complete.....due to poor planning.

(FAIL)

4. He cycled.....and had an accident.

(CARE)

5. He is thinking of taking early.....next year.

(RETIRE)

6. I am afraid you have.....me because that is not what I meant. (UNDERSTAND)

7. It is said that the.....of a Swiss watch is perfect.

(PRECISE)

8. Television can make things more.....because it brings both sounds and pictures.(MEMORY)

9. A famous pianist was.....for seven years.

(PRISON)

10. He's an expert in technology. We call him a.....

(TECHNIQUE)

V. Read this passage carefully and then choose the best answers to the questions below by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (10 points)

A recent investigation by scientists at the US Geological Survey shows that strange animal behavior might help predict future earthquake.

Investigators found such occurrences in a ten-kilometer radius of the centre of a fairly recent quake. Some birds screeched and flew about wildly. Dogs yelped and ran uncontrollably.

Scientists believe that animals can perceive these environmental changes as early as several days before the disaster.

In 1976 after observing animal behavior, the Chinese were able to predict a terrible quake. Although hundreds of thousands of people were killed, the government was able to *evacuate* millions of people and thus keep the death toll at a lower rate

1. What prediction may be made by observing animal behavior?

A. the number of people who will die.

B. environmental changes.

C. a coming earthquake.

D. the ten-kilometer radius of an earthquake.

2. Why can animals perceive these changes when humans can not?

A. Animals are more intelligent than humans.

B. Humans don't know where to look.

C. By running around, they can feel the vibrations.

D. Animals have certain instincts that humans don't possess.

3. If scientists can accurately predict earthquakes, there will be.....
- a lower death rate.
 - fewer animals going crazy.
 - fewer people evacuated.
 - fewer environmental changes.
4. Which of the following statements is **not** true?
- Some animals may be able to sense an approaching earthquake.
 - All birds and dogs in the ten-kilometer radius of an earthquake center become wild before the quake.
 - The Chinese have successfully predict an earthquake and saved many lives.
 - By observing animal behavior scientists perhaps can predict earthquake.
5. In the passage, the word "**evacuate**" most means.....
- save
 - exile
 - destroy
 - remove

VI. Read, then choose the best answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (20 points)

Radar is an electronic device that can "see" great distances (1).....fog, rain, snow, cloud, and darkness. It can find and (2).....locate missiles, aircraft, ships, cities, rainstorms, and mountains. Radar uses radio waves, (3).....light waves, which the human eye uses in seeing. This makes it (4).....for radar to locate many kinds of objects at (5).....greater distances than the eye can see. Radar became an important military device during World War II. Today, networks of radar lookout stations guard the United States and Canada 24 hours a day against (6).....missiles and airplanes. Patrol planes and ships (7).....the oceans with radar for hostile ships and aircraft. Airports use radar to (8).....planes safety to earth in fog or storms. Ships use it to steer clear of other (9).....or icebergs. Radar helps weathermen warn of (10).....hurricanes or tornadoes.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. in spite | B. despite | C. though | D. although |
| 2. A. cure | B. exact | C. accurately | D. accurate |
| 3. A. instead of | B. in addition | C. instead | D. in addition to |
| 4. A. possibility | B. possible | C. impossible | D. can |
| 5. A. near | B. farther | C. far | D. further |
| 6. A. long range | B. near range | C. ranged | D. length range |
| 7. A. use | B. find | C. seek | D. search |
| 8. A. find | B. take | C. guide | D. guidance |
| 9. A. vessel | B. vessels | C. sail | D. sails |
| 10. A. to approach | B. approaches | C. approach | D. approaching |

VII. Finish the second sentence in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. (20 points)

- The furniture was too old for us to keep.
→ It was.....
- Nobody has cleaned the streets this week.
→ The streets.....
- While mending the road, they accidentally blocked our water pipes.
→ They accidentally cut.....
- He brought the umbrella along but it didn't rain.

- He needn't.....
- 5 While I strongly disapprove of your behavior, I will help you this time.
- Despite.....
6. The underground is quick and cheap.
- The underground is.....
7. He was annoyed because his secretary came late to work.
- He objected to
8. Neil regrets having sold his car.
- Neil wishes.....
9. The child ran out because of the strange noise.
- The strange noise.....
10. Immediately after his arrival, things went wrong.
- No sooner.....

VIII. Use the word given in brackets and make any necessary additions to write a new sentence in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Do not change the form of the given word. (10 points)

1. "Do you realize what the time is, Steve?" asked Chris. (**what**)
2. I met her while I was staying in Paris last summer. (**stay**)
3. Susan was too excited to sleep. (**that**)
4. Sandra said that she was willing to work late. (**mind**)
5. The coins are believed to be buried for safe-keeping. (**It**)

IX. Look at the following sets of words and phrases. Make all the changes and additions necessary to produce sentences which together make a complete letter of complaint from Jane to Mr. Pike Smith. (20 points)

Dear Mr. Smith,

1. I write / complain / dirt / smoke / come / your factory / chimneys.
2. Two days ago /I / decide / do / my washing.
3. I wash / sheets / put them out to dry / it / be / nice sunny day/ there / be / breeze.
4. When I take / washing in /I / be / horrified / discover / it / covered / in dirty marks.
5. I / assume / breeze I mention / carry / dirt / your chimneys.
6. Until this accident /I think / your chimneys / be safe and clean.
7. I / suggest / your factory / fit / new filters to its chimneys / as tile dirt and smoke / dangerous.
8. I look / receive your reply.

Yours sincerely,

Mrs. Jane Hunter

THE END

SECTION ONE: LISTENING (2.0 pts)

Question 1. Jun has just returned from South Africa and he is telling a friend about his trip. Listen to the tape and tick (✓) 4 topics he talks about in the “Answer column”. There are 10 topics given. One has been done as an example. You have to listen to the tape twice. (1.0 pt)

Number	Topics	Answers
1.	The length of the trip	
2.	<i>Who he traveled with</i>	✓
3.	Things he saw	
4.	Other trips he has taken	
5.	Whether he enjoyed the trip	
6.	His study plans for next semester	
7.	Whether he complained about the bus	
8.	Whether he would recommend the trip to other people	
9.	The foods he ate	
10.	The forests in the South Africa	

Question 2. (1.0 pt)

Part a. Listen to the interview with graffiti artist Howard Burns and answer the questions below. You have to listen to the tape twice. (0.5pt)

1. Where is Howard Burns from?

.....

2. When did he first start doing graffiti?

.....

3. Why did he want to be a graffiti artist?

.....

4. Where does he show his art these days?

.....

Part b. Listen to the tape again and fill in each blank with one word. You have to listen twice. (0.5pt)

1. A “piece” is a finished painting that’s both colourful and.....

2. Howard always wrote.....on his art.

3. He thinks people shouldn't draw on monuments,.....or houses.

4. In.....graffiti artists often go out in groups.

SECTION TWO: GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY (6.0pts)

Question 1. Circle the best option A, B, C or D to finish each of the following sentences (2.0 pts).

1. He completely.....with what I said.

- A. agreed B. argued C. accepted D. complained
2. Helen was the last applicant to.....
A. interview B. be interviewing
C. be interviewed D. have interviewed
3. I can't find my purse anywhere; I must.....it at the cinema.
A. leave B. have left
C. be leaving D. have been leaving
4. Hoi An is famous.....its old streets.
A. of B. with C. about D. for
5. The sheet of paper slipped.....his hand falling.....the ground.
A. off / onto B. from / down C. from / upon D. off / upon
6. I.....she will agree about giving you a pay rise.
A. hard think B. think hard C. hardly think D. think hardly
7. Do you know the man.....over there?
A. stands B. standing
C. who stand D. whose standing
8. I'm afraid I have to leave.....a few days' time.
A. in B. for C. on D. by
9. Do you think we'll find a solution.....this problem?
A. about B. to C. of D. with
10. From the hotel, there is a good.....of the mountains.
A. vision B. picture C. view D. sight
11. Why don't we take Lisa.....with us on our next trip?
A. on B. in C. to D. along
12. When I was younger, I.....to smoke or drink.
A. never used B. didn't used C. not used D. wasn't used
13. When I questioned him, he finally.....stealing my pen.
A. accused B. admitted C. confessed D. accepted
14. Her written work is excellent. She puts her ideas.....so well.
A. across B. forward C. on D. out
15. If we.....to the footpath, we won't get lost.
A. follow B. keep C. stay D. remain
16. "Could I just do it right now?" - "....."
A. Yes, you could B. Not for me
C. Yes, let's D. Why not? Go ahead

Question 2. Match a line in column A with a line in column B to make a new meaningful sentence. There are two extra lines in column B that you do not need to use. 0 is an example (1.0 pt).

A	B
....C... 0. It's difficult to keep them	A. about which game to play next.
.....1. She couldn't decide which to choose	B. it would be the favourite to win.
.....2. I can hear someone	C. working all the time.
.....3. Were the government to be forced into another election,	D. she eventually managed to speak to the director.

.....4. The children couldn't agree	E. in order to prevent a cold.
.....5. By telephoning every hour	F. because all the cakes looked good.
.....6. You mustn't drink alcohol	G. when you go into a pub.
.....7. Although the injury was serious	H. shouting in the distance.
.....8. Trees were planted along the streets	I. so as to reduce traffic noise.
	J. it didn't keep her out of the game.
	K. when you drive a car.

Question 3. Read the text below and look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct but some have a word which should not be there. If a line is correct, put a tick (✓) at the end of the line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word at the end of the line. Some lines have been done as examples (1,0 pt).

PROBLEMS WITH A FRIEND	Lines	Answers
Susie Williams has been my best friend ever since we were being at primary school together, and last week she told me some good news. She had decided not to marry with her boyfriend. They had been going out together for about two years, and got engaged last Christmas. I was never happy about their relationship, as I thought so that lie was not the right partner for her, I always felt that if they had of got married, she would have completely lost her independence because he would have to made her give up her studies and stay at home all the day. Susie would have hated that, as I know' that she is a very ambitious person, but when I was mentioned it to her she became quite angry, saying that I was jealous her, and wanted him for myself. Sometimes it isn't easy being a best friend.	0	<i>being</i>
	00	✓
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
	7	
	8	
	9	✓

Question 4: Complete the following passage with an appropriate form of the word in BLOCK CAPITAL. (0) has been done as an example (2.0 pts)

The Acongagua is a challenge to any mountaineer, yet it is (0) appealing to amateurs and professionals alike. Bolivia welcomes anyone whose (1).....it is to test their stamina and (2).....making the arduous journey to the summit of this beautiful mountain. (3)....., this four-day trek can prove more of a challenge than first expected. The initial stretch seems (4)....., a gentle stroll through the lush valleys of the Andes, where the climbers can enjoy the stunning (5)..... of the Acongagua in the lake. However, it soon becomes (6)..... challenging for even the fittest of mountaineers. Many have to be treated for (7)..... or altitude sickness in their attempt to reach the summit. (8).....though, more and more climbers are making it to the top. The secret? To be cautious and take a much slower pace.	APPEAL INTEND STRONG APPARENT EFFORT REFLECT SIGNIFY EXHAUST INCREASE
--	--

SECTION THREE: READING (6.0pts)

Question 1: Read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C, or D best fits each space. (0) has been done as an example (2.0pts.)

Soon (0)the call, Sherlock Holmes (1).....to the address he had been given. He looked at the house (2).....every detail; the garden, the driveway, the main entrance. The main entrance was still locked and there were no footprints on the ground so the murderer (3).....have entered the house from there. However, one of the top windows was half open and the tall tree right next to it W'as easy to climb so he (4).....have come in this way. Holmes went near one of the ground floor windows and peered inside. It was obvious that whoever had broken into the house had no intention of (5).....anything. Priceless vases and paintings were still in place but someone had moved the furniture. Why? It was then he (6)that opening on the wooden floor. He (7).....to see anything else. He swung round to the police inspector behind him. 'This (8).....has been solved' he announced.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 0. (A)after | B. when | C. enough | D. time |
| 1. A. arrived | B. reached | C. called | D. got |
| 2. A. examining | B. looking | C. testing | D. prosecuting |
| 3. A. could | B. couldn't | C. needn't | D. mustn't |
| 4. A. should | B. must | C. need | D. had |
| 5. A. robbing | B. picking | C. committing | D. stealing |
| 6. A. noticed | B. noted | C. remarked | D. pointed |
| 7. A. needn't | B. needn't have | C. didn't need | D. couldn't |
| 8. A. incident | B. case | C. event | D. occasion |

Question 2. You are going to read an article in a magazine about shopping. Six sentences have been removed from the article. Choose from the sentences A-H the one which fits each gap (1- 6). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use. (0) is an example (1.5 pts).

- A. If I spent more than five minutes in this environment, I'd have a nervous breakdown!

B. They'd rather wait to be given a pair for Christmas, even if it's only July.

C. Press some buttons and the shopping is delivered to your door.

D. I do all my shopping locally and I still hate it.

E. There's nothing worse than enthusiastic shop assistants.

F. They become depressed if they haven't been shopping for a week.

G. Big supermarkets make huge profits, destroy small shops and spoil the community.

H. It bores me stiff and I can't stand it.

SHOPPING - A PERSONAL VIEW

There are many different types of shops - department stores, supermarkets, market stalls, traditional shops, the list is endless. But whether I'm in a huge modern shopping centre, a cosy village shop or an outdoor market in Morocco, it's all the same to me. It's shopping. (0) **H**

There are three types of people. Those who love shopping, those who don't have an opinion, and those who hate it. Those who love it are '**shopaholics**'. They buy anything, anytime, anywhere, and at any price. (1).....Those who don't have an opinion will usually do enough shopping for a comfortable life. They know how to say no to a bargain and when their credit card is reaching its limit.

Those who hate it will try anything to get out of doing it. They ask their family, they ask their friends. They happily go without milk or sugar in their coffee rather than go to buy some more. They wear socks with holes in them and don't buy new ones.(2).....

I, of course, am one of the 'haters', but when I'm absolutely forced to go because I have nothing left to eat, drink or wear in the house, I like to be left alone. (3)..... They try to make you think they're interested. They try to make you feel special. They tell you that a pair of green trousers with red spots really suit you, but you know they only want your cash. Give me a bored, rude or disinterested shop assistant any day!

The sales? You won't see me there. Think of those pushing crowds rushing about looking for bargains, lines of people queuing up waving their credit cards. (4).....

Of course there are also serious reasons why I dislike some shops. (5)..... Their prices are too high and they sell perfectly shaped, perfectly coloured fruit and vegetables which make you wonder what is done to them when they are being grown.

Shopping by computer, that's the answer. (6)..... It probably wouldn't affect the serious problems I have mentioned, but it would certainly get rid of the crowds and avoid the 'helpful' assistant.

Question 3. Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space.

Use only ONE word in each space (2.5 pts).

As soon as my father had booked his flight to Cairo he had a (0) funny feeling, a kind of foreboding. It was not his first business trip to Cairo but it was certainly his (1).....eventful. To begin with, his (2).....was delayed for two hours due to mechanical failure and when it finally arrived, the plane door wouldn't open. When he got his suitcase from the baggage area it had (3).....torn down one side, and then the first taxi he took ran (4)..... of petrol. Feeling a little annoyed, he caught another taxi and made it (5).....his usual hotel.

At the reception he was told that his reservation could not be found and there was no chance of finding a (6).....for him as they were fully booked, so he had to settle (7).....another hotel. When he finally got to his room, the lights (8).....off as he walked in. By now he was very upset. He called Mr. Fekesh, wanting to have a (9).....with him about their meeting and they told him he had had to leave on urgent business. Hurriedly, my father went back to the (10)..... and caught the first flight home just hoping the plane wouldn't crash on the way back.

SECTION' FOUR: WRITING. (6.0 pts)

Question 1. Make any changes and addition to build the sentences from the cues given (2.0pts).

1.I/ tired / that / able / go out / tonight.

.....

2. Some / our electricity / now / come / nuclear power.

.....

3. We / lucky / catch / last bus / arrive / home / very late / last night.

.....

4. Football / said / be / good / games / play.

.....

5. Students / spend / much time / learn / English / a day's time.

.....

6. Paul / not / tall / reach / top / cupboard.

.....

7. We / often / have / difficulty / finish / work / weekend.

8. Of all / hotels / town / the Royal Hotel / expensive.

Question 2. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one. Use the word given in brackets and other words to complete each sentence. Don't change the form of the given words. (0) has been done as an example (2.0 pts).

0. "Do you know how to get to the town center?" she asked me. (WAY)

=> She asked me *If I knew the way to the town centre*

1. We haven't got enough money, so we can't buy a new cooker. (SHORT)

=> We

2. I gave back my blue shirt and got a white one. (EXCHANGED)

=>

3. The only one person who was not at the party was Tom. (APART)

=> Everyon.....

4. If there is one thing I hate doing, it's the ironing. (STAND)

=> If

5. Mr. David is employed by a big construction firm. (FOR)

=> Mr. David.....

6. We haven't received confirmation of hotel booking yet. (BEEN)

=> Our hotel booking.....

7. "In my opinion, you shouldn't stay up so late", Lan said to Nam. (ADVISED)

=> Lan.....

8. It is necessary to finish this homework tonight. (GOT)

=>I

Question 3. Write a paragraph (120-150 words) to express your opinion about "The advantages and disadvantages of watching television " (2.0 pts).

===== The end =====

UBND TỈNH BẮC NINH
SỞ GIÁO DỤC - ĐÀO TẠO
ĐỀ CHÍNH THỨC

ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI CẤP TỈNH

Năm học 2009 - 2010
Thời gian làm bài: 150 phút
Ngày thi 14/4/2010

PART I. PRONUNCIATION - Vocabulary - GRAMMAR (10 pts)

I. Circle the word whose underlined part is differently pronounced from the others (1.pt)

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. har <u>ass</u> ment | B. st <u>at</u> ement | C. p <u>ap</u> erwork | D. vac <u>a</u> ting |
| 2. A. acc <u>ou</u> nt | B. adj <u>ou</u> rn | C. ann <u>ou</u> ncement | D. v <u>ou</u> cher |
| 3. A. p <u>en</u> sion | B. comp <u>en</u> sate | C. s <u>ec</u> urity | D. s <u>ec</u> retary |
| 4. A. p <u>in</u> s | B. ringb <u>in</u> ders | C. f <u>i</u> les | D. st <u>am</u> ps |
| 5. A. t <u>ech</u> nology | B. p <u>un</u> cher | C. p <u>it</u> ching | D. dispat <u>ch</u> |
| 6. A. v <u>is</u> ion | B. miss <u>i</u> on | C. fus <u>i</u> on | D. confus <u>i</u> on |
| 7. A. head <u>a</u> che | B. stom <u>a</u> ch | C. moust <u>a</u> che | D. chemist |
| 8. A. danc <u>e</u> d | B. liv <u>e</u> d | C. arriv <u>e</u> d | D. lov <u>e</u> d |
| 9. A. g <u>e</u> rm | B. g <u>a</u> s | C. g <u>a</u> in | D. g <u>o</u> ods |
| 10. A. f <u>a</u> ith | B. fail <u>u</u> re | C. f <u>a</u> inted | D. f <u>a</u> irly |

II. Choose the word or phrase which best completes each sentence. Circle A, B, C or D. (3.0 pts)

- The weather has turned.....
A. coldy and windily B. coldly and windy
C. cold and windy D. cold and windily
- Nobody is ready,?
A. is he B. isn't he C. are they D. aren't they
- He was pleased to have the..... to hear such a fine musician play his favourite piece of music.
A. occasion B. possibility C. opportunity D. fate
-I had met him twice before, I didn't recognise him.
A. Although B. However C. If D. But
- I wish you'd stop chatting and.....with some work.
A. get down B. get on C. come on D. come back
- He won \$ 200.000,he gave his parents.
A. half of which B. half of that C. half of them D. half of it
- The bus company has.....the fare by 50%.
A. raised B. arisen C. rose D. risen
- It's time you.....back to your work
A. go B. went C. have gone D. shall go
- There was no in waiting longer than half an hour so we left.
A. good B. point C. worth D. use
- If we built more hospitals, we could.....better care of people.
A. get B. do C. give D. take
- Twenty-five dollarstoo much to pay for that shirt.
A. is B. are C. were D. been
- The kidnappers have been caught, and the child is no longer.....danger.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| A. on | B. in | C. at | D. of |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
13. Jim's parents wouldn't..... him go to the demonstration.
- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------|
| A. agree | B. allow | C. permit | D. let |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------|
14. Tony always goes to work his car.
- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|---------|
| A. on | B. by | C. in | D. with |
|-------|-------|-------|---------|
15. Hoa is very good atEnglish
- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| A. speak | B. to speak | C. speaking | D. speaks |
|----------|-------------|-------------|-----------|

III. Choose the best word or phrase with the same meaning as the underlined part. Circle A, B, C or D. (1.0pt)

1. What would happen if the water resources were made dirty?
- | | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
| A. run out | B. restricted | C. polluted | D. destroyed |
|------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|
2. Most people who live in apartments are urban dwellers.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
| A. of a village | B. of a city | C. wealthy | D. famous |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|-----------|
3. He was proud of his son's accomplishment.
- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| A. first attempt | B. endurance | C. determination | D. achievement |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
4. They extended the road for ten more miles.
- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|------------|----------------|
| A. lengthened | B. repaired | C. planned | D. constructed |
|---------------|-------------|------------|----------------|
5. It is risky to climb to the top of that tree.
- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|--------------|----------|
| A. unusual | B. normal | C. dangerous | D. brave |
|------------|-----------|--------------|----------|

IV. Each of these sentences contains 1 mistake. Find and correct them. (1.0pt)

1. The police is now investigating the robbery that took place in our neighborhood last night.
.....
2. There was a slight disagreement between committee members of the Club, regarding their trip next month.
.....
3. My pen has very few ink in it; so could you give me some?
.....
4. Either William or his brother have to do this.
.....
5. It is hoped that the develop countries will be less selfish in their economic policies and help the poorer nations.
.....

V. Give the correct form of the words in bold in the same line. Write your answers on the numbered blanks. (2.0 pt)

1. My teacher.....me to take this exam. (**courage**)
2. He has the.....to become a professional football player. (**able**)
3. Give me something to drink please! I'm dying of..... (**thirsty**)
4. We try to bring our work to..... (**satisfy**)
5. The.....of the question was requested. (**repeat**)
6. The teacher checks for regular..... (**attend**)
7. The roads are rough in.....areas, so it's hard to travel by car. (**mountain**)
8. The people whose houses are to be demolishes when the new road is rebuild will be.....
outside the city. (**house**)

9. My mother wants me to have this photograph..... (large)

10. Who is the.....of this wonderful work of art? (create)

VI. Supply the correct tenses of the VERBS in bracket in either active or passive voice (2 pts)

Every ten minutes, one species of animal, plant, or insect (1).....(die) out for ever. If nothing is done about it, one million species that are alive today (2)..... (become) extinct twenty years from now.

Fortunately, somebody is trying to do something about it. In 1961, the World Wildlife Fund (3)..... (found) - a small group of people who (4).....(want) to raise money to save animals and plants from extinction. Today, the World Wildlife Fund is a large international organization. It (5).....(raise) over 35 million pounds for conservation projects, and has given support to National Parks in six continents. It (6).....(help) 30 mammals and birds - including the tiger - to survive. Perhaps this is not much, but it is a start.

If more people (7)..... (give) more money - and if more governments wake up to what (8) (happen) - perhaps the World Wildlife Fund (9) (be) able to help us avoid the disaster that (10).....(threaten) the natural world, and all of us with it.

PART II. READING (6.0 pts)

I. Choose the word that best fits each of the blanks in the following passage. Circle A, B, C or D to indicate your answers. (2.0pts)

Are you one of the thousands of people who eagerly follow every new (1).....that appears? Or are you one of those who go to the shops and just buy (2).....they can find in their size that (3).....them? Or perhaps you order from a mail-order catalogue, and then have to send everything back because nothing fits? Whatever kind of shopper you are, one thing is certain. Every one finds clothes important. (4).....a recent survey, people spend more time (5)..... buying clothes or thinking about buying them, or looking at them in shop windows, than they do on most other products, apart from food. And the reason is obvious. Clothes are an important part of our appearance. At work, you may need to impress a customer, or persuade the boss that you know what you are doing, and clothes certainly help. Well dressed people, so they say, get on in the world. And as far as attracting the opposite sex is concerned, clothes also play a vital role. (6).....a friend who has been wearing the same old jacket or the same old dress suddenly appears in the (7).....fashion, you can be sure that romance is in the air. And apart from work and romance, there are the (8).....of sport, music and leisure on the way we dress. So excuse me while I (9).....on my tracksuit and training shoes. I'm just dashing off (10).....some fast window-shopping.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. appearance | B. fashion | C. uniform | D. dress |
| 2. A. whatever | B. whoever | C. whichever | D. however |
| 3. A. matches | B. suits | C. takes | D. couples |
| 4. A. On account of | B. Because of | C. According to | D. Due to |
| 5. A. but | B. either | C. or | D. nor |
| 6. A. If | B. Because | C. Although | D. Unless |
| 7. A. last | B. minute | C. latest | D. complete |
| 8. A. affects | B. benefits | C. conveniences | D. influences |
| 9. A. have | B. dress | C. wear | D. put |
| 10. A. in | B. for | C. to | D. toward |

II. Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow. Circle A, B, C or D to indicate your answers. (1.0 pt)

The search for alternative sources of energy has led in various directions. Many communities are burning garbage and other biological waste products to produce electricity. Converting waste products to gases or oil is also an efficient way to dispose of waste.

Experimental work is being done to derive **synthetic fuels** from coal, oil shale and coal tars. But to date, the process has proven expensive. Other experiments are underway to harness power with giant windmills. Geothermal power, heat from earth, is also being tested.

Some experts expect utility companies to revive hydroelectric power derived from streams and rivers. Fifty years ago hydroelectric power provided one third of the electricity used in the United States, but today it supplies only four percent. The oceans are another potential source of energy. Scientists are studying ways to convert the energy of ocean currents, tides and waves to electricity. Experiments are also underway to make use of the temperature differences in ocean water to produce energy.

1. Which is the best title of the passage?
 - A. The Use of Water Productions for Energy.
 - B. The Search for Alternative Sources of Energy.
 - C. Efficient Ways of Disposing of Waste.
 - D. New Discoveries in Geothermal Power.
2. Fifty years ago one third of the electricity in the United States was provided by
 - A. wind
 - B. waste products
 - C. water
 - D. oil
3. In the second paragraph, the phrase "**synthetic fuels**" could best be replaced by which of the following?
 - A. Biological fuels
 - B. Low burning fuels
 - C. Fast burning fuels
 - D. Artificial made fuels
4. Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the passage as an alternative source of energy?
 - A. Electricity
 - B. Geothermal power
 - C. Synthetic Fuels
 - D. Burning of garbage
5. According to the author, the impracticality of using coal, oil shale and coal tars as sources of energy is due to
 - A. their being time consuming
 - B. their being money consuming
 - C. the scarcity of sources
 - D. the lack of technology

III. Read the following passage. Choose from the sentences (A-G) below which best fits in each numbered gap(1-5). There is one extra sentence which you do not need to use. There is an example at the beginning(0). (1.0pt)

Carnival is definitely not a spectator sport. It's very difficult to get carried away by the atmosphere unless (0)...G...and by that I mean wearing a disguise of some kind, even if it's nothing more than a mask or a funny hat. In fact, the number of people (1).....is usually fairly small, so you will almost certainly be conspicuous out of fancy dress. You are bound to regret not having gone to a bit of trouble when (2)having the time of their lives. Ask a friend to lend you a costume if (3) You may even find that (4) If all else fails, you can always improvise with old streets and clothes, after all, you don't have to look spectacular, elegant or beautiful, but you should try to enter into the spirit of the festivities if (5)

- A. you do not have one
- D. they are available for hire somewhere

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| B. who do not bother to dress up | E. you want to enjoy them |
| C. who don't want to make trouble | F. you see every body else |
| G. you are taking part yourself | |

IV. Fill in each numbered space with one suitable word. (2.0 pt)

I'd like to talk about some of the problems that students face (1).....they follow a course of study through the medium of English (2)English is not their mother tongue. The problems can be (3)into three broad categories: psychological, cultural and linguistic. The first two categories mainly affect those (4)come to study in Britain. I'll comment only briefly on these two categories and then spend most of the time looking at linguistic difficulties apply to everyone. Some of the common psychological problems really involve fear of the unknown: for (5), whether one's academic studies will be too difficult. Looking at the cultural problems, we can see that some of them are of a very practical nature, e.g arranging satisfactory accommodation. Others are less easy to define. (6)..... largest category seems to be linguistic. Let's look at this (7) some detail. Most students, in their (8)countries, will have little opportunity to practise using (9)When foreign learners first have the opportunity to speak to an English-speaking person they may have a shock: they often have great (10)in understanding.

PART III. WRITING: (4.0 pts)

I. Finish the second sentence in each pair in such a way that it means the same as the sentence before it. (2.0 pts)

- He has never been on board a ship before.
This is the first.....
- David finds it easy to make friends.
David has.....
- Finish eating first, then you can watch TV.
You can't watch TV.....
- In spite of her tiredness, she managed to finish her work.
Although.....
- No messages have come for me, have they?
There have.....
- When he drinks a lot, he gets very bad.
The more.....
- I regret not buying any tickets for the concert.
I wish.....
- My advice to you is to go to the doctor's.
If I.....
- A doctor is taking his temperature
He is having.....
- I was not familiar with that kind of computer.
It was a.....

II. Write the second sentence in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence. Use the word given in brackets and other words as necessary. Do not change the form of the given word. (1.0 pt)

- He drove so carelessly that he had an accident last month. (such)

.....
2. Dicken's last novel was unfinished when he died. (**without**)
.....

3. Mark is too young to see the horror film. (**enough**)
.....

4. Everyone but Jane failed to produce the correct answer. (**succeeded**)
.....

5. "How about going to the concert?" said John. (**suggested**)
.....

III. Write meaningful sentences using suggested words. (1.0 pts).

1. train/ already leave/ before/I/ get/ station
.....

2. what/ happen/ if/ there/ no plants/ earth?
.....

3. we/ now/ face/ problem/ overpopulation
.....

4. if/ you/ not help/I/ not meet/ my brother/ last month
.....

5. you/ never/ will/ regret/ do/such/ kind action
.....

The end

MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI VÀO TRƯỜNG CHUYÊN
SỞ GD&ĐT NGHỆ AN **KỲ THI TUYỂN SINH VÀO LỚP 10**
ĐỀ CHÍNH THỨC **TRƯỜNG THPT CHUYÊN PHAN BỘI**
CHÂU
NĂM HỌC 2011 - 2012

Môn thi: TIẾNG ANH

Thời gian: 120 phút (không kể thời gian giao đề)

SECTION 1: PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. p <u>re</u> cious | B. p <u>re</u> paration | C. p <u>re</u> tty | D. r <u>e</u> petition |
| 2. A. a <u>rch</u> itect | B. pa <u>rch</u> ute | C. <u>ch</u> oir | D. ps <u>ych</u> ology |
| 3. A. t <u>re</u> ason | B. r <u>ea</u> son | C. s <u>ea</u> son | D. j <u>ea</u> lous |
| 4. A. a <u>gg</u> ressive | B. s <u>ugg</u> est | C. e <u>n</u> ergy | D. ga <u>rb</u> age |
| 5. A. m <u>ea</u> sure | B. v <u>is</u> ion | C. p <u>le</u> asure | D. p <u>en</u> sion |

Your answers:

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

II. Identify the word whose stressed pattern is different from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. official | B. literacy | C. inventory | D. stationery |
| 2. A. diversity | B. severe | C. ecosystem | D. courageous |
| 3. A. prediction | B. compulsory | C. intelligent | D. judgement |
| 4. A. valuable | B. entertain | C. honesty | D. mountain. |
| 5. A. realize | B. product | C. mechanic | D. separate |

SECTION II: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer from A, B, C or D to fill in the blanks.

- It is recommended that he.....this course
 A. took B. takes C. take D. taking
- Various societies define.....in many rather complEg ways.
 A. that is successful B. what success is
 C. that success is D. what is success
- I could not turn in my paper on time because my word processor.....
 A. fell down B. turned down C. tore down D. broke down
- "You must always..... us the truth" the judge said to the man.
 A. tell B. confess C. speak D. say
- Her father is a.....drinker. He is always drinking.
 A. strong B. heavy C. addictive D. capable
- Don't set off fireworks too closely to your house,?
 A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you
- Trains stop here in order to..... passengers only.
 A. pick up B. get off C. pull up D. pull in
- In recent years, more and more people..... for things with credit cards.
 A. pay B. are paid

- C. are paying D. have been paying
9. He was the first person.....the fire.
A. discover B. to discover C. discovering D. discovered
10. "Who was the man with you yesterday?" - "He was....."
A. the next door man B. the man next to the door
C. the man next by the door D. the man next door
11. **John:** "I didn't pass my driving test." -**Anna:** ".....!"
A. Better luck next time B. So poor
C. Congratulations D. That was nice of them
12. You can.....your sister to our party tonight.
A. bring B. carry C. take D. get
13. You need more exercise, so you should.....golf.
A. carry out B. take in C. turn up D. take up
14. I like that photo very much. Could you make an.....for me?
A. increase B. enlargement C. expansion D. extension
15. His roses won the first.....in the local flower competition.
A. prize B. award C. cup D. reward

II. There are TEN mistakes in the passage. Find and correct them.

Everyone wants to reduce pollution. But the pollution problem is as complicated as it is serious. It is complicated because of much pollution is caused by things that benefit people. For example, exhaust of automobiles causes a large percent of all air pollution. However, the automobile provides transportation for million of people. Factories discharge much of material that pollutes air and water, but factories give employment to the large number of people. Thus, to end or great reduce pollution immediately, people would have to stop using many things that benefit them. Most the people do not want to do that, of course. Nevertheless, pollution can be gradual reduced in several ways. Scientists and engineers can work to find ways to less the way of pollution that such things like automobiles and factories cause. Governments can pass and enforce laws that request businesses and traffic to stop, or to cut down on certain polluting activities.	Your answer: (1)..... (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)
--	--

III. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the given word.

1. He feels sad about his.....result in the examination. SATISFY
2. The.....of this factory are widely consumed in this country. PRODUCE
3. You must keep on working with him no matter how much you AGREE
4. Film festivals are.....divided into categories like drama, TYPICAL
documentary or animation.
5. He enjoyed.....with friends and it cost nothing. SOCIAL
6. I have just bought a replacement for one of my favorites which.....
disappeared. MYSTERY
7. Gift exchange is.....expression of social relations. SIGNIFY

8. I try not to remember this.....experience that only leaves me with unhappy thoughts.

RIGHTEN

9. The boy.....asked for permission to go out with his friends.

REPEAT

10. British Rail apologized for the.....of the 4.20 to Bath.

CANCEL

SECTION III: READING COMPREHENSION

I. Choose the best answer from A, B, C or D to fill in each numbered blank in the following passage.

NEW HUNT FOR LIFE IN SPACE

British space scientists are planning to join the American in the race to find evidence of life on (1).....planets. Alan Penny and his team at the Rutherford Appleton Laboratory have designed a telescope that is 40 times more powerful than Hubble. Known as 'Darwin', his telescope could tell if planets 50 (2).....years away have any kind of life on them. Two days (3)....., NASA scientists had shown a proof that one of Jupiter's moons could support life, Penny announced that his telescope may be included in a European Space Agency mission. The Darwin project, with a (4) of 500 million, is on a short list of two proposals. If approved it will probably be (5).....around 2015, its destination somewhere between Mars and Jupiter. The blueprint is actually for five telescopes positioned 50 meters apart in space, slowly circling a (6).....processing station. The combined data from these telescopes would build up a full picture of a planet, picking out faint images that have never been seen before. Darwin would not be able to take detailed photographs of the planets it (7)....., but Penny believes a second- generation telescope could be sent up to do this. He claims it is worthwhile mapping the universe around our (8).....galaxy, even though these planets lie (9).....our reach for the moment. The European Space Agency will make its decision (10).....Darwin within three years.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. another | B. other | C. others | D. the other |
| 2. A. light | B. lighten | C. lightening | D. lighting |
| 3. A. following | B. after | C. next | D. later |
| 4. A. price | B. schedule | C. charge | D. budget |
| 5. A. driven | B. fetched | C. launched | D. taken |
| 6. A. central | B. centre | C. middle | D. heart |
| 7. A. invents | B. searches | C. discovers | D. looks |
| 8. A. alone | B. same | C. one | D. own |
| 9. A. out | B. toward | C. beyond | D. over |
| 10. A. of | B. on | C. about | D. with |

II. Read the following passage and choose the best answer from A, B, C or D to the questions.

A pilot cannot fly by sight alone. In many conditions, such as flying at night and landing in dense fog, a pilot must use radar, an alternative way of navigating. Since human eyes are not very good at determining speeds of approaching objects, radar can show a pilot how fast nearby planes are moving. The basic principle of radar is exemplified by what happens when one shouts in a cave. The echo of the sounds against the walls helps a person determine the size of the cave. With radar, however, the waves are radio waves instead of sound waves. Radio waves travel at the speed of light, about 300,000 kilometers in one second. A radar set sends out a short burst of the radio waves. Then it receives the echoes produced when the waves bounce off objects. By determining the time it takes for the echoes to return to the radar set, a trained technician can determine the distance between the radar set and other objects. The word "radar", in fact, gets its name from the term "radio detection and ranging". "Ranging" is the term for

detection of the distance between an object and the radar set. Besides being of critical importance to pilots, radar is essential for air traffic control, **tracking** ships at sea, and for tracking weather systems and storms.

1. What is the main topic of this passage?
 A. The nature of radar. B. History of radar.
 C. Alternatives to radar. D. Types of ranging.
2. According to the passage, what can radar detect besides locations of objects?
 A. Shape B. Speed C. Size D. Weight
3. Which type of waves does radar use?
 A. tidal B. heat C. sound D. radio
4. The word **tracking** in the passage most closely means.....
 A. sending B. repairing C. ranging D. searching for
5. What might be inferred from the passage about radar?
 A. It has improved navigational safety.
 B. It was developed from a study of sound waves.
 C. It takes the place of a radio.
 D. It gave birth to the invention of the airplane.

III. Fill in each numbered blank with a suitable word in the following passage.

The idea that a blind person could drive a car sounds crazy. And the concept of someone who can't see driving a car at almost 150 miles per hour sounds even (1)..... Miranda Naylor, a blind accountant from Southport, has done exactly that in an attempt to (2).....money for charity. Mrs. Naylor drove (3).....sports car for two miles in a straight line along the runway of a disused airfield. She was in radio contact with her husband Pete Naylor, (4).....was able to give her directions and advice in this way. Her amazing achievement is expected to raise about £50,000, which will be donated (5).....a company that trains dogs for the blind. Mrs. Naylor has been blind (6).....she was six years old and she still has some visual memories of the world (7).....her. She admits that not having her sight makes her life awkward at times. She believes that if you are disabled in any way, you shouldn't waste time (8).....sorry for yourself. "It makes a lot of sense to keep busy" she says. "Achieving (9).....can be a great source of self confidence". Miranda is now looking for a new challenge and (10).....like to ride a motorbike.

SECTION IV: WRITING

I. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one.

1. I find his handwriting very hard to read.
 I have.....
2. He got down to writing a letter as soon as he returned from his work.
 No sooner.....
3. Success depends on your hard work.
 The harder.....
4. "If I were you, I wouldn't accept Ins marriage proposal", said Nam to Lan.
 Nam.....
5. No matter how hard I tried, I could not open the window.
 Try.....

II. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first one, using the given word.

Do not change the given word.

1. The fridge is completely empty.

LEFT

.....

2. It is pointless to have that old typewriter repaired.

WORTH

.....

3. Frank never pays any attention to my advice.

NOTICE

.....

4. John only understood very little of what the teacher said.

HARDLY

.....

5. Her ability to run a company really impresses me.

IMPRESSED

.....

III. Write a composition on the following topic (about 150-200 words) Do you agree or disagree with the following statement?

It is better for children to grow up in the countryside than in a big city.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

SỞ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO PHÚ THỌ

KỶ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 TRƯỜNG THPT CHUYÊN HÙNG VƯƠNG

ĐỀ CHÍNH THỨC

Năm học: 2011 - 2012

Môn: **TIẾNG ANH** (chuyên)

Thời gian làm bài: 120 phút (không kể thời gian giao đề)

PART I. PHONETICS (1.0 point)

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others. There is an example at the beginning (0). (0.5 pt)

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 0. A. <u>th</u> ick | B. <u>th</u> ink | C. <u>th</u> ey | D. <u>th</u> rough |
| 1. A. <u>ch</u> ange | B. <u>h</u> ungry | C. <u>str</u> onger | D. <u>s</u> ingle |
| 2. A. <u>int</u> ention | B. <u>ma</u> terial | C. <u>ma</u> ture | D. <u>int</u> ensity |
| 3. A. <u>ri</u> ses | B. <u>hou</u> ses | C. <u>rai</u> ses | D. <u>promi</u> ses |
| 4. A. <u>h</u> and | B. <u>ba</u> nk | C. <u>s</u> and | D. <u>ba</u> nd |
| 5. A. <u>b</u> attle | B. <u>m</u> agic | C. <u>n</u> ag | D. <u>dism</u> ayed |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others. There is an example at the beginning (0). (0.5 pt)

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 0. A. active | B. section | C. appoint | D. happy |
| 1. A. national | B. engineer | C. interesting | D. scientist |
| 2. A. responsible | B. environment | C. importance | D. residential |
| 3. A. provide | B. combine | C. service | D. account |
| 4. A. difference | B. difficult | C. supporting | D. beautiful |
| 5. A. social | B. reply | C. contain | D. appear |

PART II. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY (4.0 points)

1. Choose the best word or phrase to complete the following sentences. (2.0 pt)

-is normally used to refer to the treatment and training of the child within the home.
A. Feeding B. Mothering C. Upbringing D. Educating
- Several important methods were..... for preserving food in the nineteenth century.
A. seen B. covered C. prepared D. invented
- A man is walking towards me.man is carrying.....parcel.
A. A/the B. The/a C. Ø/the D. The/ Ø
- A few years after you buy it, a house is usually.....much more than it originally costs you.
A. expensive B. worth C. worthy D. valueless
- I will do anything but.....the dishes.
A. wash B. washed C. washing D. will wash
- I am so tired that I can't make.....what you are saying.
A. up B. in C. out D. on
- I remember.....the letter some time ago but I can't remember exactly when.
A. to post B. posted C. posting D. post
- They warned us.....to the seaside in that month.
A. to not go B. not to go C. not to going D. not go
- "I really like your new shoes." - "And they cost less than I....."
A. expect B. was expected C. had expected D. am expecting
- Those kids are always.....trouble.

- A. looking up to B. getting into C. finding about D. putting with
11. It is essential that he.....that contract.
A. refuse B. refuses C. refusing D. is refusing
12. Either of these buses.....past the university.
A. go B. goes C. have gone D. going
13.the flight's delay, they did not attend the conference.
A. Because B. Although C. Because of D. As
14. It.....that many people are homeless after the floods.
A. were reported B. reports C. is reported D. reporting
15. This shirt is much prettier, but it costs.....the other one.
A. so much as B. as many as C. twice as much as D. twice as many
16. Don't worry about her
A. complaintment B. complaination C. complanation D. complaint
17. Please forgive me. I didn't want.....you.
A. to upset B. upsetting C. to be upset D. being upset
18. Vitamin C.....by the human body, it gets into the blood stream quickly
A. absorbs easily B. is easily absorbed
C. is being absorbed easily D. absorbed easily
19. What would you like to eat for lunch? -....., I don't mind.
A. Nothing B. Something C. Everything D. Anything
20. 3/4 means.....
A. third quarters B. three quarters C. three fourth D. thirth fourth

II. Give the correct form of the words in capital letters. (1.0 pt)

GETTING AHEAD IN BUSINESS

Your chances of success can be greatly increased if you follow a few simple rules in your working life. First of all, remember that your (1) EMPLOY.....wants you to do well- that's what you are being paid for. Many companies choose (2) AMBITION.....young people to work for them and provide a lot of (3) ENCOURAGE.....for their workers. Working for a large, international company may provide job (4) SECURE.....On the other hand, a smaller company might give you the chance to use your (5) IMAGINE more. Secondly, remember that any experience you gain will always (6) STRONG.....your position in the company. The company wants (7) PROVE.....that you want to get to the top. Take any opportunity you get to go on (8) TRAINcourses related to your work. The more (9) QUALIFY.....you are, the better chance you have of being promoted. Finally, don't give up, even when you are (10) SUCCESS..... Stick with it and you'll get there in the end.

III. The passage below contains 10 errors. UNDERLINE and CORRECT them. Write your answers in the numbered blanks provided. There is an example at the beginning. (1.0 pt)

After an absence <u>in</u> thirty years, I decided visiting my old school again. I had expected to find changes, but no a completely different building. As I walked up the school ground, I wondered for a moment if I had come at the right address. The grimy, red brick fortress with their tall windows that had looked up grimly on the playground and playing fields had swept away. In its place stood a bright, modern block risen from the ground on great concrete stilts. A huge expanse of	0.....for.....
	1.....
	2.....

glass extending across the face of the building, and in front, there was a well-kept lawn where previous there had been untidy gravel yard.	3.....
	4.....
	5.....
	6.....
	7.....
	8.....
	9.....
	10.....

PART III. READING (3.0 points)

I. Read the passage below and fill each blank with ONE suitable word. (1.0 pt)

Speech is one of the most important (1).....of communicating. It consists of far more than just making noises. To talk and also to be (2).....by other people, we have to speak a language, that is, we have to use combinations of (3)that everyone agrees stand for particular object or idea. Communication would be impossible if everyone made up their own language.

(4).....a language properly is very important. The basic (5).....of English is not very large, and only about 2000 words are needed to (6).....it quite well. But the more words you know, the more ideas you can (7).....and the more precise you can be about their exact meaning.

Words are the (8).....thing we use in communicating what we want to say. The (9).....we say the words is also very' important. Our tone of voice can express many emotions and (10).....whether we are pleased or angry, for instance.

II. Read the text and decide which answer best fits each space given. (1.0 pt)

THE BAT

The bat may seem an ordinary creature, but in fact it is an amazing animal. The bat has wings and is the only animal (1).....of true flight. There are many (2).....species of bat. In Britain (3).....there are fourteen types of bat, which ranges in sizes from a few inches to (4).....feet in wingspan.

Bats are nocturnal animals (5).....become active only at dusk. Many species (6).....on a “radar” system to find their way around. The bat emits squeaks and then measures the echoes to “see” how far away any (7).....

The (8).....of bats survive on a diet of insects while others eat fruit. There are two species which eat fish and there are even some bats which eat meat! Some vampire bats take blood (9).....their sleeping victims. These bats may carry the deadly disease rabies.

Bats are sociable creatures and form large colonies. Most bats (10).....throughout the winter months. Many people are afraid of bats without even seeing one. Perhaps if we learn more about these wonderful creatures, we will no longer fear them.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. capable | B. able | C. possible | D. probable |
| 2. A. differing | B. contrast | C. different | D. conflicting |
| 3. A. all | B. alone | C. lonely | D. lonesome |
| 4. A. various | B. few | C. little | D. several |
| 5. A. whose | B. who | C. which | D. they |
| 6. A. put | B. rely | C. stand | D. confide |
| 7. A. hindrance | B. barrier | C. obstacle | D. blockage |
| 8. A. majority | B. population | C. amount | D. number |
| 9. A. out | B. off | C. of | D. from |
| 10. A. hibernate | B. sleep | C. hide | D. rest |

III. Read the following passage and choose the best answer. (1.0 pt)

Reading to oneself is a modern activity which was almost unknown to the scholars of the classical and medieval worlds, while during the fifteenth century the term “reading” undoubtedly meant reading aloud. Only during the nineteenth century did silent reading become **commonplace**.

One should be wary, however, of assuming that silent reading came about simply because reading aloud was a distraction to others. Examinations of factors related to the historical development of silent reading have revealed that it became the usual mode of reading for most adults mainly because the tasks themselves changed in character.

The last century saw a steady gradual increase in literacy and thus in the number of readers. As the number of readers increased, the number of potential listeners declined and thus there was some education in the need to read aloud. As reading for the benefit of listeners grew less common, so came the flourishing of reading as a private activity in such public places as libraries, railway carriages and offices, where reading aloud would cause distraction to other readers.

Towards the end of the century, there was still considerable argument over whether books should be used for information or treated respectfully and over whether the reading of materials such as newspapers was in some way mentally weakening. Indeed, this argument remains with us still in education. However, whatever its virtues, the old shared literacy culture had gone and was replaced by the printed mass media on the one hand and by books and periodicals for **a specialized readership** on the other.

By the end of the twentieth century, students were being recommended to adopt attitudes to books and to use reading skills which were inappropriate, if not impossible, for the **oral reader**. The social, cultural and technological changes in the century had greatly altered what the term “reading” implied.

1. Reading aloud was more common in the medieval world because.....

- A. there were few places available for private reading
 - B. people relied on reading for entertainment
 - C. few people could read to themselves
 - D. silent reading had not been discovered
2. The word “**commonplace**” in the first paragraph mostly means “.....”.
- A. most preferable
 - B. widely used
 - C. for everybody’s use
 - D. attracting attention
3. The development of silent reading during the last century indicated.....

- A. an increase in the number of books
 - B. a change in the nature of reading
 - C. a change in the status of literate people
 - D. an increase in the average age of readers
4. Silent reading, especially in public places, flourished mainly because of.....
- A. the decreasing number of listeners
 - B. the decreasing need to read aloud
 - C. the development of libraries
 - D. the increase in literacy
5. It can be inferred that the emergence of the mass media and specialized reading materials was an indication of.....
- A. a change in the readers' interest
 - B. a decline of standards of literacy
 - C. an improvement of printing techniques
 - D. an alteration in educationalists' attitudes
6. The phrase "a specialized readership" in paragraph 4 mostly means "....."
- A. a limited number of readers in a particular area of knowledge
 - B. a reading volume for particular professionals
 - C. a status for readers specialized in mass media
 - D. a requirement for readers in a particular area of knowledge
7. The phrase "**oral reader**" in the last paragraph mostly means "a person who....."
- A. is good at public speaking
 - B. practices reading to an audience
 - C. takes part in an audition
 - D. is interested in spoken language
8. All of the following might be the factors that affected the continuation of the old shared literacy culture EXCEPT.....
- A. the printed mass media
 - B. the diversity of reading materials
 - C. the specialized readership
 - D. the inappropriate reading skills
9. Which of the following statements is NOT TRUE according to the passage?
- A. Reading aloud was more common in the past than it is today.
 - B. The change in reading habits was partly due to the social, cultural and technological changes.
 - C. The decline of reading aloud was wholly due to its distracting effect.
 - D. Not all printed mass media was appropriate for reading about.
10. The writer of this passage is attempting to.....
- A. encourage the growth of reading
 - B. explain how reading habits have developed
 - C. show how reading methods have improved
 - D. change people's attitudes

PART IV. WRITING (2.0 points)

I. For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, using the words in brackets. These words MUST NOT be altered in any way. There is an example at the beginning (0). (1.0pt)

0. I haven't phoned her since she left for Paris. (LAST)

→ *The last time I phoned her was when she left for Paris.*

1. I thought she bore a strong resemblance to her grandmother. (REMIND)

→ She.....

2. Sarah wore dark glasses so that no one would recognize her. (**AVOID**)
→ Sarah.....
3. She intended to find out who is responsible for the accident. (**INTENTION**)
→ She.....
4. I haven't decided yet whether to move or not. (**MIND**)
→ I haven't
5. I don't normally go into town by car. (**USED**)
→ I.....
6. She started working as a secretary five years ago. (**BEEN**)
→ She has.....
7. You might fall if you're not careful. (**OR**)
→ Be careful
8. "I've seen the films three times, Mary" said George. (**TOLD**)
→ George.....
9. I haven't eaten this kind of food before. (**TIME**)
→ This is the.....
10. When I get home, I'm going to have a shower straight away. (**SOON**)
→ I'm going to

II. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it. Write your answers in the spaces provided. There is an example at the beginning (0). (1.0 pt)

0. We are looking forward to going abroad this summer.
→ We are excited about going abroad this summer.
1. That meal was excellent.
→ What.....
2. I don't really want to visit the museum.
→ I'd rather.....
3. Please don't smoke in this area of the restaurant.
→ Customers are requested.....
4. Although he took a taxi, Peter arrived late for the concert.
→ In spite of
5. I left without saying goodbye as I didn't want to disturb the meeting.
→ Rather.....
6. The cost of living has fallen considerably in the past week.
→ There has.....
7. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day.
→ Only by
8. "Could you guard against my handbag while I go to the toilet?"
→ Could you keep an.....?
9. He regrets having invited her to the party.
→ He wishes
10. "I admit that I forgot to turn on the alarm system." said Robert.
→ Robert confessed to

**SỞ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO
TẠO
ĐỀ CHÍNH THỨC**

**KÌ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 CHUYÊN QUỐC HỌC
THỪATHIÊN HUẾ
Khoá ngày 24.6.2011
Môn: TIẾNG ANH
Thời gian làm bài: 120 phút**

1. PRONUNCIATION (10 points)

Part 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others. (5 points)

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>double</u> | B. blouse | C. <u>ground</u> | D. <u>ounce</u> |
| 2. A. <u>service</u> | B. <u>decision</u> | C. <u>scientist</u> | D. <u>bride</u> |
| 3. A. <u>dosage</u> | B. <u>massage</u> | C. <u>carriage</u> | D. <u>voyage</u> |
| 4. A. <u>good</u> | B. <u>mood</u> | C. <u>noon</u> | D. <u>pool</u> |
| 5. A. <u>advance</u> | B. <u>access</u> | C. <u>appliance</u> | D. <u>acquaintance</u> |

Part 2: Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others. (5 points)

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. vacancy | B. calculate | C. delicious | D. furniture |
| 2. A. collection | B. occasion | C. government | D. religion |
| 3. A. explain | B. reverse | C. divide | D. travel |
| 4. A. atmosphere | B. employment | C. insurance | D. interpreter |
| 5. A. construction | B. description | C. television | D. temptation |

II. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR (40 points)

Part 1: Choose the best answer from A, B, C or D to complete the following sentences: (10 points)

- She burst into.....when she opened the letter.
A. crying B. sadness C. misery D. tears
- I felt extremely.....when I couldn't remember my neighbour's name.
A. embarrassed B. embarrassment C. embarrassing D. embarrass
- There is always.....traffic in the city centre in the rush-hour.
A. full B. heavy C. strong D. big
- My dad was.....with me when I told him I had lost the camera he bought me
A. scared B. guilty C. worried D. furious
- I've.....down on salt and fat in my diet because they're not good for me.
A. cut B. put C. got D. gone
- We had a perfect view from the aeroplane because the sky was.....
A. dull B. sullen C. dark D. clear
- The path was very.....because of the wet weather.
A. stony B. muddy C. sandy D. dusty
- When a tropical storm.....120 kilometers per hour, it can damage a lot of things.
A. reaches B. comes C. arrives D. runs
- We listened.....while the examiner gave us the directions.
A. attention B. attentively C. attentive D. attentiveness
- Can you give me the.....for tomato soup?
A. formula B. recipe C. order D. method

Part 2: Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space

in the same line. (10 points)

Jealousy is a confusing emotion and it can make people behave in totally (1).....ways. It can of course have a wide (2) .....of causes and some people feel jealous more easily than others. It could be that you are (3).....that your team didn't win the (4).....and you can't bear to watch the other team receive the cup. The acceptable response is to offer them your (5).....and not to show your jealous feelings. Jealousy may also have its origins in other more (6).....circumstances such as a friend getting a job you wanted yourself. You should not show your (7).....as this can make you look (8) .....small-minded. If you do express your view, it will be (9) for the other person, who can't do anything about their success, and you may even lose a friend unless you (10) immediately.	1. EXPECT 2. VARY 3. DISAPPOINT 4. CHAMPION 5. CONGRATULATION 6. PERSON 7. ANNOY 8. REAL 9. EMBARRASS 10. APOLOGY
---	--

Part 3: Complete each sentence with a word from the box. Make any other necessary changes. (10 points)

let	turn	break	get	give	come	take	set	go (x2)
-----	------	-------	-----	------	------	------	-----	---------

1. Is Peter at the party? No, but I'm sure he.....up soon.
2. My father still hasn't really.....over the death of my mother.
3. It's not easy to.....up smoking. I've tried to do it lots of times without being successful.
4. You can rely on her. She won't.....you down.
5. Don't eat that sausage. I think it's.....off.
6. I'm sorry I'm late, but my car.....down on the way here, so I had to phone for a taxi.
7. When they were cleaning out the attic, they.....across their grandmother's old school books.
8. After she had finished loading the car, she.....off on her holiday.
9. Sorry, I don't mean to interrupt you. Please.....on and finish what you are saying.
10. What a lovely baby! He certainly.....after his father, doesn't he?

Part 4: Fill the gap in each of these sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets. (10 points)

1. On their next anniversary, Doris and Fred (be)married for twenty years.
2. He always talks as though he (address)a public meeting.
3. I'm sure the letter won't arrived on time unless it (send)by air.
4. The news about the storm (already broadcast)on radio several times so far.
5. I don't really like my maths teacher because he (always pick)on me.
6. He thanked me for what I (do)for him.
7. She is accustomed to (train)for long hours.
8. By the time I arrived, the football match (already start)
9. I'd rather you (not tell)her the truth.
10. She (sleep)for 10 hours! You must wake her up.

III. READING COMPREHENSION (25 points)

Part 1: Read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only one word in each space (10 points)

The Benefits of Physical Activity

The pace of modern life is very fast, and most people have busy and demanding lives. So eating a balanced diet and doing physical activity can (1).....a big difference to overall health. Regular physical activity is good (2).....your whole body, from your brain to your bones. Yet many people do not get (3).....exercise. The good news is that (4).....is easier than you may think to fit physical activity (5)your day because you can do it at (6).....time and almost anywhere. No matter (7).....your age and stage of life there are plenty of ways to take exercise.

Your feet were made for walking, so use them (8).....you get the chance. Walk around town. Ignore lifts and escalators and build up your leg muscles by climbing stairs. Next, get out and play. Kicking a ball is fun and it is also a great way to spend time together (9)..... a family. Finally, try doing two things at once! While you talk on the phone or watch television, stretch, lift weights or (10)..... household chores.

Part 2: Read the passage and choose the correct answers: (5 points)

Some people believe that soon schools will no longer be necessary. These people say that because of the Internet and other new technology, there is no longer any need for school buildings, formal classes, or teachers. Perhaps this will be true one day, but it is hard for me to imagine a world without schools. In fact, we need to look at how we can use new technology to make schools better not to eliminate them. We should invent a new kind of school that is linked to libraries, museums, science centers, laboratories, and even corporations.

Corporations ought to create learning programs for schools in their area of expertise. Independent experts could give talks on video or over the Internet TV networks and local stations could develop programming about things students are actually studying in schools. Laboratories could set up websites to demonstrate new technology so students could view it on the Internet.

Is this just a dream? No, Already there are several towns where this is beginning to happen. Blacksburg, Virginia, is one of them. Here the entire city is linked to the Internet, and learning can take place at home, at school, and in the office. Businesses provide programs for the schools and the community. The schools provide computer labs for people at home. Because everyone has Internet access, older people participate as much as younger ones, and everyone can visit distant libraries and museums as easily as nearby ones.

How will this new kind of school change learning? It is too early to be sure, but it is very exciting to think about. Technology will change the way we learn; schools will change as well; and we will all learn something in the process.

1. It can be inferred from passage that
 - A. schools are not necessary.
 - B. schools are still necessary.
 - C. new technology will replace schools.
 - D. A and C
2. According to the author, the statements below are possible about schools except
 - A. corporations should get involved.
 - B. everyone can visit distant libraries as easily as nearby ones.
 - C. new technology will replace teachers completely.
 - D. new technology will change the way we learn.

3. The future schools should be
 - A. linked to all the capital cities the world over.
 - B. linked to libraries, museums, science centers, laboratories and even corporations.
 - C. for all young international people.
 - D. for old people only.
4. Which of the following statements is true about Blacksburg?
 - A. It's the biggest library.
 - B. It's the school with new technology.
 - C. It's the city where there are no teachers.
 - D. It's a city in Virginia where learning can take place at home, at school and in offices.
5. How does the author feel about the change of schools in the future?
 - A. Pessimistic.
 - B. Positive
 - C. Depressed
 - D. Indifferent

Part 3: Read the following passage and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best Fits each space. (10 points)

NEW YORK CITY

New York city has grown into the second largest city in North America. It is now a major business, cultural and shopping centre (1).....millions of visitors each year. Most tourists stay in the (2).....of the city, in Manhattan. It is easy to see the sights of Manhattan on foot or you can take a tourbus. There are cycle (3).....in the city if you want to hire a bicycle but you need to be brave! The subway is the quickest means of public transport but you will want to avoid the (4)..... hour. And, of course, there are the famous yellow taxis. There are few taxis (5)- just wave your arm at a taxi with its light on. You will certainly want to visit Central Park, a huge open (6) which is ideal for relaxing on a hot summer day. The city is rich in restaurants but remember that smoking is (7)One of the many boat trips goes to Ellis Island where you may want to stop for a (8)to read about the history of immigration. The main residential areas are in the (9) of the city where, as in all large cities, some districts are quite run down. Many tourists visit Queens which is the location of some interesting art galleries and Brooklyn for cafes, shops and (10) nightlife.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. appealing | B. advancing | C. arriving | D. attracting |
| 2. A. heart | B. interior | C. focus | D. eye |
| 3. A. roads | B. streets | C. lanes | D. ways |
| 4. A. busy | B. rush | C. crowded | D. hurry |
| 5. A. ranks | B. stalls | C. kiosks | D. stations |
| 6. A. surface | B. region | C. space | D. estate |
| 7. A. banned | B. excluded | C. refused | D. dismissed |
| 8. A. period | B. while | C. length | D. piece |
| 9. A. outdoors | B. outskirts | C. outsides | D. outlines |
| 10. A. alive | B. lifelike | C. live | D. lively |

IV. WRITING (25 points)

Part 1: Finish the second sentence in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. (5 points)

1. People always laugh at his face, and he dislikes it.
He hates.....
2. It is said that the thief stole everything in the house.

- Everything.....
3. Despite her injured ankle, Esther still won the tennis match.
Although.....
4. Most student can work very hard when they feel like it.
Most students are capable.....
5. Scientists have tried very hard to find a cure for this disease.
A lot of effort.....

Part 2: Read the text below and look carefully at each numbered line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. If the line is correct, put a (✓) by the number. If the line has a word which should not be there, write that word by the number. (10 point)

A HOLIDAY DISAPPOINTMENT	
Things started to go wrong as soon as we got to the hotel. We were all	0. ✓
being completely exhausted after our long journey and looking forward to	00. being
have a shower and a rest. However, we found that our room was not ready,	1
which was very much annoying, although the manager was extremely	2.....
apologetic, while we were waiting, we asked about the excursions to places	3.....
of an interest which we had read about in the brochure. Imagine how we	4.....
felt when we were told they had all been cancelled away! Apparently, the	5.....
person responsible for organising them had left suddenly and had not been	6.....
replaced. Then Sally saw a notice that pinned to the door of the restaurant,	7.....
saying it was been closed for redecoration, and Peter discovered that the	8.....
swimming pool was empty. When we eventually got to our room we were	9.....
horrified to so find that it was at the back of the hotel, and we had a view	10.....
out of a car park, which seemed to be used as a rubbish dump. We	
seriously began to wonder whether or not to stay.	

Part 3: Within 250 words, write a composition on ONE of the following topics: (10 points)

Topic 1: It is better for children to grow up in the countryside than in a big city.

Do you agree or disagree? Use specific reasons and examples to support your opinion.

Topic 2: What career would you like to choose after leaving school?

**SỞ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO
HÀ TĨNH
ĐỀ CHÍNH THỨC**

ĐỀ TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 THPT CHUYÊN HÀ TĨNH

Năm học: 2009 - 2010

Môn: Tiếng Anh

Ngày thi: 26/.27-06-2009

Thời gian gian: 120 phút (không kể thời gian phát đề)

Part 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the rest

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> ope | B. <u>s</u> top | C. <u>s</u> lope | D. <u>c</u> ope |
| 2. A. <u>t</u> echnical | B. att <u>e</u> nction | C. <u>e</u> vent | D. tal <u>e</u> nt |
| 3. A. <u>e</u> ncounter | B. <u>e</u> nter | C. <u>e</u> nlarge | D. <u>e</u> ntrust |
| 4. A. call | B. count | C. centre | D. cable |
| 5. A. pure | B. durable | C. cure | D. pursue |

Part 2: Pick out the word whose syllable is stressed differently from the others:

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. passage | B. enjoyable | C. moment | D. matches |
| 2. A. associate | B. together | C. traveler | D. protected |
| 3. A. weather | B. Electric | C. absorb | D. potential |
| 4. A. preference | B. attraction | C. advantage | D. discover |
| 5. A. escaping | B. eruption | C. delicate | D. explain |

Part 3: Choose the correct word or phrase underlined to complete the sentence

- What.....your sister like? She is funny and intelligent.
A. is B. does C. was D. did
- If I knew you.....busy, I wouldn't disturb you.
A. were B. had been C. are D. would be
- The man.....towards us is an engineer.
A. coming B. comes C. is coming D. to come
- If you had come to the party, you.....her.
A. would meet B. would have met C. had met D. met
- The company.....employees are on strike is closing down soon.
A. which B. whose C. that D. where
- Water boil/ is boiling/ boils/ was boling at 100°C.
- Sunday is a holiday.....most people rest.
A. which B. that C. where D. when
- When she was cooking dinner, she.....her finger.
A. cuts B. cut C. was cutting D. is cutting
- I have lived here since I.....10.
A. am B. have been C. will be D. was
- They would be angry if you.....them.
A. aren't B. don't C. won't D. didn't visit
- What will you do if you.....a million dollars?
A. win B. won C. had won D. will win
- If you stay up late, you.....sleepy the next morning.
A. feel B. felt C. would feel D. will feel
-which attract so many visitors as Venice, Italy.
A. Fewer B. As few C. There are few D. Few places

14. He was.....of all his money.
 A. stolen B. robbed C. removed D. taken
15. I.....him to arrive in a fortnight.
 A. expect B. wait C. hope D. suspect
16. The question was difficult therefore.....of students could answer it.
 A. few B. a lot of C. a few D. a bit
17. The people in the theatre are the.....
 A. audience B. lookers C. observers D. watchers
18. If you live in a house which is not yours you have to pay.....
 A. a fee B. rent C. fare D. charge
19. The person who designs a house is the.....
 A. engineer B. architect C. painter D. builder
20. Can you.....a pound note? I need some coins for the telephone box.
 A. exchange B. change C. give D. offer
21. What.....advice she gave us !
 A. so good B. such good C. a good D. good
22. My dog as well as my cats.....twice a day.
 A. eat B. eats C. has eaten D. have eaten
23. When I came into the class, I realized I knew.....
 A. them all B. all them C. they all D. all of they
24. Do it right now,?
 A. do you B. aren't you C. will you D. don't you
25. We.....for her for ten minutes.
 A. wait B. waited
 C. are waiting D. have been waiting
26. His father is not interested in tennis and
 A. he doesn't, either B. so doesn't he C. neither does he D. neither is he
27. The little girl wasted half an hour.....for her picture book.
 A. look B. looking C. to look D. looked
28.does it take you to do the washing?
 A. How fast B. What time C. How long D. How often
29. Your hair is long. Are you going to.....?
 A. have it cut B. have cut it C. be cutting it D. have it cutting
30. Would you like tea or coffee? - I.....drink tea than coffee.
 A. would like B. would prefer C. would rather D. would wish
31. It is high time you.....more attentive in class.
 A. are B. were C. must be D. have been
32. He was.....that we turned off the TV set immediately.
 A. so bad singer B. such bad singer
 C. such bad a singer D. so bad a singer
33. I wish you..... that! It's really annoying habit.
 A. won't do B. couldn't do C. wouldn't do D. don't do
34. "I'm sorry about that!" - "....."

- A. That's right B. Of course
C. It's OK D. You're welcome
35. Not until 2008.....across the river.
A. the first bridge was built B. the first building of a bridge was
C. built the first bridge D. was the first bridge built
36. Excuse me! I'm learning my lesson. turning down your stereo a bit?
A. Would you please B. Would you mind
C. Could you D. Would you like
37. I was just..... to go out when Peter phoned.
A. used B. planned C. about D. around
38. The book provides students.....useful tips to pass the coming exam.
A. of B. about C. on D. with
39.he practised hard, he didn't pass the driving test.
A. As long as B. Even though C. In spite of D. If
40. I felt disappointed because I was.....by the company I applied to.
A. criticized B. rejected C. blamed D. forgotten
41. If I were you, I.....harder to pass the examination.
A. would work B. will work C. worked D. work
42. We were all hungry, so she suggested.....dinner early.
A. to have B. having C. had D. have
43. I wish I.....in London with my friends now.
A. am B. was C. were D. will be
44. I find it difficult to make a good.....on this problem.
A. want B. decision C. thought D. view
45. We didn't.....to the station in time to catch the train.
A. reach B. arrive C. get D. lead
46. My mother is one of the women whomoney.
A. enjoys to spend B. enjoys spending C. enjoy spending D. enjoy to spend
47. Their exports are just.....ours.
A. similar B. like C. as D. same
48. You may put money in a small coin bank,a piggy bank at home to keep it safe.
A. as such B. such C. such as D. so
49. It is time you.....hard for the exam.
A. to revise B. revise C. revised D. revising
50. I live in Dalat ,.....is one of the most beautiful cities of Vietnam.
A. who B. where C. which D. that

Part 4: Give the correct form of the words in brackets to complete the following sentences

1. Nowadays laser beams can be used to treat..... **DEAF**
2. Thousands of are working hard to find out remedies to swine flu. **SCIENCE**
3. Only five.....were shortlisted for the interview. **APPLY**
4. Peter drives very.....He's hardly had a minor accident. **CARE**
5. My father has lately.....in giving up smoking. **SUCCESS**
6. After the earthquake, very few people were found to be..... **LIVE**

7. Your son is very naughty. He has cut himself again, and it is.....badly.

BLOOD

8. The doctor tried to.....the soldier's wound in a fierce battle. **HEALTH**

9. She is a studious pupil. She always listensto her teachers' lessons.

ATTENTION

10. Whenever there are food.....people immediately

SHORT

Part 5: There is a mistake in each of following sentence find and correct it

1. He spent two hours to translate this text into English yesterday morning.	.....
2. We are going on a trip to a countryside with our classmates next month.	.
3. Many of the peoples in my home village have lived in their village all their lives.	.....
4. First the examiner asked me what my name was, and where I come from.	.
5. Could you send me some information about a possibly course that I can take?	.....
6. They who arrive early will get the best selection of seats.	.
7. Fertilize farmland is one of the biggest natural resources in the Central.States.	.....
8. There are many different ways of comparing the economy of one nation with those of another.	.
9. Drug addition has resulted of many destroyed careers and expulsions from school or college.	.....
10. The company did not want to hire a man that his experiment was so limited.	.
11. I have a very interested job because as a journalist I meet many people.	.....
12. My boss watches me closely and lets me know how I am doing and tells me if I am doing bad.	.
13. You probably have never heard of my country where I live because it's very far of your home.	.
14. I would like you see some pictures of my country and I will attach them to my next report.	.....
15.I am trying since I was at school to learn a foreign language but it was difficult for me.	.
16. On their very first evening he told his wife he was just going out for a short walking but it was really to buy her some Howers.	.....
17. He found a shop quickly and brought the Howers but he couldn't get back to the hotel.	.
18. I have eaten too many of those greasy bacon pies, and now feel sickly.	.....
19. He was upset last Monday morning by her bad altitudes.	.
20. My brother is not old enough for driving a car.	.....
	.
	
	.
	
	.

	
	.
	
	.
	
	.
	
	.
	
	.

Bart 6: Choose the best answer to fill in each of the gaps in the text below

There's now increasing concern about the world's energy resources, particularly about those involving fossil (1)..... In less than a hundred years we shall probably (2)all the present (3)of oil and gas. The world's coal (4)should last longer but, once used, these can not be (5)

It is important, therefore, that we should develop such (6)sources of energy as solar energy and nuclear energy as well as water and wind (7) (classed as (8) energy).Until these energy (9)are widely used. It is important for the developed countries to reduce energy (10)as much as possible.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. fuels | B. powers | C. forms | D. energies |
| 2. A. end | B. complete | C. total | D. exhaust |
| 3. A. findings | B. productions | C. amounts | D. sources |
| 4. A. reserves | B. stores | C. mines | D. contents |
| 5. A. updated | B. repeated | C. renewed | D. produced |
| 6. A. traditional | B. alternative | C. surprising | D. revolutions |
| 7. A. force | B. strength | C. power | D. motion |
| 8. A. repeatable | B. continual | C. renewable | D. continuous |
| 9. A. goods | B. supplies | C. provisions | D. materials |
| 10.A. exhaustion | B. destruction | C. waste | D. consumption |

Part 7: Fill in each numbered blank with one suitable word

George Washington was born on February 22nd, 1732 in Virginia. His (1).....were Augustine and Mary Washington. George (2)up on a farm in Virginia. Little is (3) of his early childhood. He attended (4)irregularly from his 7th to his 15th year. His (5) subject was mathematics. He learned to be a surveyor of land when he grew up. He (6)the army and was a leader during the American Revolution. He later became the first (7)of the United States.

George Washington is (8)by his people the "Father of our country". The Americans (9)his birthday on Presidents' Day in February. His (10)is on the one-dollar bill.

Part 8: Read the following passage and then put a circle round the letter of the correct words to complete each sentence which follows:

Keeping our teeth healthy

It's very important to have healthy teeth. Good teeth help us to chew our food. They also help us to look nice. How does a tooth go bad? The decay begins in a little crack in the enamel covering of the tooth. This happens after germs and bits of food have collected there. Then the decay slowly spreads inside the tooth. Eventually, poison goes into the blood, and we may feel quite ill.

How can we keep our teeth healthy? Firstly, we ought to visit our dentist twice a year. He can fill the small holes in our teeth before they destroy the teeth. He can examine our teeth to check that they are growing in the right way. Unfortunately, many people wait until they have toothache before they see a dentist. Secondly, we should brush our teeth with a toothbrush and fluoride toothpaste at least twice a day once after breakfast and once before we go to bed. We can also use wooden toothpicks to clean between our teeth after a meal. Thirdly, we should eat food that is good for our teeth and our body: milk, cheese, fish, brown bread, potatoes, red rice, raw vegetables and fresh fruit. Chocolate, sweets, biscuits and cakes are bad, especially when we eat them between meals. They are harmful because they stick to our teeth and cause decay.

- 1) Good teeth help us.....
 - a) be nice
 - b) have good eyesight
 - c) chew our food
 - d) be important
- 2) When food and germs collect in a small crack, our teeth
 - a) become hard
 - b) begin to decay
 - c) send poison into the blood
 - d) make us feel quite ill
- 3) A lot of people visit a dentist only when.....
 - a) their teeth grow properly
 - b) they have holes in their teeth
 - c) they have toothache
 - d) they have brushed their teeth
- 4) We ought to try to clean our teeth.....
 - a) once a day
 - b) at least twice a day
 - c) between meals
 - d) before breakfast
- 5) We shouldn't eat a lot of
 - a) red rice
 - b) fresh fruit
 - c) fish
 - d) chocolate
- 6) Sweets are harmful because they make our teeth.....
 - a) black
 - b) ache
 - c) bad
 - d) cracked

Part 9: Rewrite the following sentences, begin as shown and keep the meaning unchanged

1. The flight from Bangkok to London lasted for more than twelve hours.
It took.....
2. No decision on the issue has been made yet.
Nothing.....
3. It was such a boring film that she felt asleep.
The film.....
4. One of my favourite pastimes is watching plays.
Going.....
5. You can borrow the car but you've got to fill it up with petrol.
Provided.....
6. It's quite pointless to complain about the situation.
There is no.....
7. She spends too much money on clothing.
If.....

8. You are the worst footballer in the world.

No one.....

9. Susan finds it easy to make friends at her new school.

Susan has no.....

10. There are a lot of vehicles on the road today.

There is.....

Part 10: Use the words given to make meaningful sentences so as to complete a story

1. man/ holiday/ London/ first time

.....

2. after/ arrive/ hotel/ he/ send/ wife/ telegram

.....

3. in/ telegram/ he/ inform/ wife/ of/ safe/ arrival

.....

4. he/ also/ give/ her/ name/ address/ hotel

.....

5. next day/ he/ go/ sightseeing/ round/ London

.....

6. he/ satisfy/ enjoy/ visit/ much/ as/ it/ one/ most beautiful cities/ world

.....

7. he/ go/ restaurant/ have/ dinner/ after/ tour

.....

8. he/ tired/ want/ go back/ hotel/ get/ some sleep

.....

9. unfortunately/ he/ not remember/ name/ address/ hotel

.....

10. late that night/ wife/ receive/ strange/ telegram/ say/ "please/send /name/address/ hotel/at once".

.....

- THE END-

I. CHOOSE THE CORRECT ANSWER TO FILL IN THE BLANK. (20 points)

1. They seemed to be.....to the criticism and just carried on as before.
A. disinterested B. indifferent C. sensitive D. uncaring
2. He spoke.....all the families who had lost relatives in the disaster.
A. with a view to B. in respect of C. on behalf of D. in aid of
3. They are very good friends but in terms of sports they are worlds.....
A. away B. separate C. apart D. different
4. The operation was doomed to failure from the word.....
A. go B. start C. begin D. now
5. Her penknife came in very.....when they were on their picnic.
A. useful B. handy C. practical D. convenient
6. The doctor was unable to go away for the weekend because she was.....duty.
A. at B. by C. in D. on
7. She is too.....to hide what she thinks about them.
A. quiet B. outspoken C. apologetic D. broadminded
8. The little boy.....into tears when he thought that he was lost.
A. burst B. fell C. broke D. dripped
9. The film.....a lot of attention.
A. generated B. manufactured C. promoted D. brought
10. All the engineers were happy because they finally made.....
A. a breakthrough B. an outburst C. a viewpoint D. an outcome
11. Tom: Jane's daughter is very rude.
Mary: You're right; she has no manners.....
A. however B. whatsoever C. whenever D. evermore
12. Because of her recent poor form, she is only expected to come fourth.....
A. at least B. at best C. at worst D. at will
13. I'm in no.....this evening to listen to his silly jokes.
A. feeling B. tendency C. mood D. opinion
14.was the effect more powerfully felt than in the suburbs.
A. Nowhere B. Somewhere C. Anywhere D. Everywhere
15.the choice, I would definitely not go.
A. Giving B. Having given C. Given D. Being given
16. Tom: The building's nearly finished, isn't it?
Mary: Yes, but it'll be.....we can move in.
A. to much time till B. a long time before
C. hardly time when D. very soon that
17. Tom: Is your government salary good?

- Mary: Yes, but I don't make as much.....worked in private industry.
 A. as I B. if I would have C. I would if D. as I would if I
18. Tom: Betty didn't win the beauty contest of Singapore.
 Mary: She would have.....some talent.
 A. had she have B. have she had C. had she had D. have she have
19. Tom: I saw you studying at the library last night.
 Mary: You.....; I wasn't there.
 A. wouldn't have B. can't have C. might have D. have
20. Tom: What's all the noise about?
 Mary: We had a bad accident.....at the factory.
 A. happened B. happening C. happen D. has happened
21. Tom: Can you wait while I run into the library?
 Mary: OK,you hurry.
 A. even though B. as long as C. when D. unless
22. Tom: Do you know where Barb is?
 Mary: Strange.....sound, she is in South Africa.
 A. may it B. as it may C. like it may D. does it
23. Tom: Who did you invite to dinner?
 Mary: No one.....than Frank and his family.
 A. rather B. except C. besides D. other
24. Tom: A lot of money goes for AIDS research.
 Mary: Yes, because it's.....the government is spending a lot to find a cure.
 A. a so serious disease B. so serious a disease
 C. so a serious disease D. such serious that
25. Tom: Which is more important: luck or effort?
 Mary: Luck is.....effort.
 A. on the same importance B. the same importance as
 C. of the same importance as D. as the same importance as
26. This is the latest news from Timbuktu. Two-thirds of the cityin a fire.
 A. was destroyed B. have been destroyed
 C. has been destroyed D. were destroyed
27. There was no alternative.....wait until the rescue team came.
 A. but B. but to C. than to D. than
28.his invaluable work, the project would never have succeeded
 A. For all B. In view of C. But for D. provided with
29. This is the only party.....in my life.
 A. I never enjoy B. I ever enjoy
 C. I've never enjoyed D. I've ever really enjoyed
30. "So long!" is another way of saying.....
 A. Hello! B. Cheer up! C. I'm very happy. D. Goodbye!
31. Tom: Take care of yourself. Mary:
 A. I will B. Yes, I do
 C. Not bad D. You're welcome

32. Tom: Can I have your order, please? Mary:
 A. Two chickens, please. B. I'll do it right away.
 C. Yes, sir. D. Just do whatever you want to.
34. It was in the countryside.....
 A. where John was brought up B. John was grown up
 C. that John was brought up D. which John was grown up at
35. I don't know how you manage to.....on only £50 a week.
 A. get by B. take in C. cut down D. look down
36. The plumber came yesterday to the burst pipes.
 A. turn off B. look into C. get over D. see to
37. I'm afraid I haven't got time to the matter right now.
 A. go into B. look for C. turn over D. clean out
38. Our school doesn't break until the end of July.
 A. out B. in C. off D. up
39. The government is to bring..... the necessary laws to deal with the problem.
 A. down B. to C. up D. in
40. Do..... your shoe laces, or you will tumble over them.
 A. with B. up C. about D. on

II. CHOOSE THE SUITABLE WORD TO FILL IN EACH BLANK. (15 points)

Research has shown that over half the children in Britain who take their own lunches to school do not eat (1).....in the middle of the day. In Britain schools have to (2)meals at lunchtime. Children can (3)to bring their own food or have lunch at the school canteen.

One shocking (4)of this research is that school meals are much healthier than lunches prepared by parents. There are strict (5)for the preparation of school meals, which have to include one (6)of fruit and one of vegetables, as well as meat, a dairy item and starchy food like bread or pasta. Lunchboxes (7)by researchers contained sweet drinks, crisps and chocolate bars. Children (8)twice as much sugar as they should at lunchtime.

The research will provide a better (9)of why the percentage of overweight students in Britain has (10)in the last decade. Unfortunately, the government cannot (11)parents, but it can remind them of the (12)value of milk, fruit and vegetables. Small changes in their children's diet can (13)their future health. Children can easily develop bad eating (14)

at this age, and parents are the only ones who can (15) it.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. appropriately | B. properly | C. probably | D. possibly |
| 2. A. take | B. provide | C. make | D. do |
| 3. A. prefer | B. offer | C. prepare | D. choose |
| 4. A. finding | B. number | C. figure | D. outcome |
| 5. A. standards | B. procedures | C. conditions | D. regulations |
| 6. A. piece | B. portion | C. helping | D. amount |
| 7. A. examined | B. eaten | C. taken | D. investigated |
| 8. A. take | B. contain | C. consume | D. use |
| 9. A. view | B. knowledge | C. understanding | D. opinion |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 10. A. increased | B. expanded | C. raised | D. added |
| 11. A. criticize | B. instruct | C. order | D. tell |
| 12. A. nutritional | B. healthy | C. mental | D. physical |
| 13. A. kill | B. effect | C. destroy | D. affect |
| 14. A. behaviors | B. styles | C. attitudes | D. habits |
| 15. A. prevent | B. cancel | C. stop | D. delay |

III. IDENTIFY THE MISTAKE IN EACH SENTENCE. (10 points)

- They asked me (A) what did happen (B) the last night, but I was (C) unable to (D) tell them.
- The (A) test administrator ordered (B) that we (C) not to open our books until he told (D) us to do so.
- (A) Our new neighbors (B) had been living in Arizona (C) for ten years (D) before moving their present house.
- I (A) would attend (B) the meeting last week, but I had to (C) make a speech at still (D) another meeting.
- We (A) are supposed to read all of (B) chapter seventh and (C) answer the questions (D) for tomorrow's class.
- Mexican (A) jumping beans are (B) actually seeds (C) in which contain moth larvae (D) whose activity causes the seeds to jump.
- Science fiction is any (A) fiction dealing with the future or with (B) so imaginative subjects as interstellar travel, (C) life on other planets. (D) or time travel.
- Approximately fifty percent of the (A) package (B) utilized in the United States are for (C) foods and (D) beverages.
- Studies (A) of either vision and physical optics (B) began almost (C) as early as civilization (D) itself.
- (A) Because the expense of (B) traditional fuels and the (C) concern that they may run out, many countries (D) have been investigating alternative source of power.

IV. SUPPLY THE APPROPRIATE FORMS OF WORDS IN THE BRACKETS. (15 points)

- Such a kind man would never.....hurt his friend's feelings. (INTEND)
- The scenery along the coast was..... (BREATHE)
- Because of a car....., she didn't get to the airport in time for her flights. (BREAK)
- The.....need assistance from the whole society. (POVERTY)
- Her bedroom is.....decorated with her favorite souvenirs from her trips.(PLEASE)
- We are offering many special price.....on printers this month.(REDUCE)
- Students hate their classmates who get.....treatment from their teachers.(PREFER)
- Explosives are.....weapons. (DIE)
- Three of the.....tried to escape through the window . (CAPTURE)
- We were all surprised at her.....to help. (REFUSE)
- Health care was.....in ancient time. There was no hospital or doctor then. (EXIST)
- What the teacher does first is to check.....of the students. (ATTEND)
- The company went bankrupt on account of inefficient..... (MANAGE)
-are built to entertain and educate people about marine life. (AQUATIC)
- The educational program we are launching is to.....teenage girls in rural areas. (POWER)

V. READ THE FOLLOWING PASSAGE AND CHOOSE THE BEST ANSWERS TO THE QUESTIONS. (10 points)

The development of jazz can be seen as part of the larger continuum of American popular music, especially dance music. In the twenties, jazz became the hottest new thing in dance music, much as ragtime had at the turn of the century, and as would rhythm and blues in the fifties, rock in the sixties, and disco in the seventies.

But two characteristics distinguish jazz from other dance music. The first is improvisation, the changing of a musical phrase according to the player's inspiration. Like all artists, jazz musicians strive for an individual style, and the improvise or paraphrase is a jazz musician's main opportunity to display his or her individuality. In early jazz, musicians often improvised melodies collectively, thus creating a kind of polyphony. There was little soloing as such, although some New Orleans players, particularly cornet player Buddy Bolden, achieved local fame for their ability to improvise a solo. Later the idea of the chorus-long or multichorus solo took hold. Louis Armstrong's instrumental brilliance, demonstrated through extended solos, was a major influence in this development. Even in the early twenties, however, some jazz bands had featured soloists. Similarly, show orchestras and carnival bands often included one or two such "get-off" musicians. Unimproved, completely structured jazz does exist, but the ability of the best jazz musicians to create music of great cohesion and beauty during performance has been a hallmark of the music and its major source of inspiration and change.

The second distinguishing characteristic of jazz is a rhythmic drive that was initially called "hot" and later "swing". In playing hot, a musician **consciously** departs from strict meter to create a relaxed sense of phrasing that also emphasizes the underlying rhythms. ("Rough" tone and use of moderate vibrato also contributed to a hot sound.) Not all jazz is hot, however, many early bands played **unadorned** published arrangements of popular songs.

Still, the proclivity to play hot distinguished the jazz musician from other instrumentalists.

1. The passage answers which of the following questions?
 - A. Which early jazz musicians most Influenced rhythm and blues music?
 - B. What are the differences between jazz and other forms of music?
 - C. Why is dancing closely related to popular music in the United States?
 - D. What instruments comprised a typical jazz band of the 1920's?
2. Which of the following appeared before jazz as a popular music for dancing?
 - A. Disco
 - B. Rock
 - C. Rhythm and blues
 - D. Ragtime
3. According to the passage, jazz musicians are able to demonstrate their individual artistry mainly by?
 - A. creating musical variations while performing
 - B. preparing musical arrangements
 - C. reading music with great skill
 - D. being able to play all types of popular music
4. Which of the following was the function of "get-off" musicians line 12?
 - A. Assist the other band members in packing up after a performance
 - B. Teach dance routines created for new music
 - C. Lead the band
 - D. Provide solo performances in a band or orchestra
5. Which two types of music developed around the same time?
 - A. jazz / rock
 - B. dance / rhythm & blue
 - C. rock / rhythm & blue
 - D. jazz / dance
6. Louis Armstrong was mentioned as an influential musician of

- A. "hot" or "swing" jazz C. structured jazz
 B. chorus long jazz D. soloing jazz
7. The word "consciously" in line 16 is closest in meaning to
 A. carelessly B. easily C. periodically D. purposely
8. The word "unadorned" in line 18 is closest in meaning to
 A. lovely B. plain C. disorganized D. inexpensive
9. Which of the following terms is defined in the passage?
 A. "improvisation" (line 4) B. "polyphony" (line 7)
 C. "cornet player" (line 8) D. "multichorus" (line 9)
10. The topic of the passage is developed primarily by means of
 A. dividing the discussion into two major areas
 B. presenting contrasting points of views
 C. providing biographies of famous musician
 D. describing historical events in sequence

VI. SUPPLY EACH BLANK WITH ONE SUITABLE WORD. (15 points)

Illiteracy is the condition of being (1).....to read and write. Illiteracy is also (2)to describe the condition of being ignorant or unknowledgeable in a particular subject or field. Computer illiteracy is (3) inability to use a computer programming language.

Most of us (4)use computers know how to send emails, or how to create a new folder. But we know (5)about programming languages, the artificial languages used to write instructions that can be executed by a computer. Even in technologically (6)countries, a very small percentage of computer users are able to read or write this kind of computer language. Should we (7)the effort to learn a computer language, especially when these are so complicated? The answer is (8) Because of computer illiteracy, users are at the (9)of software manufacturers. Our society becomes more dependent on information (10), and in a few years' (11), reading and writing a computer language will be as essential (12)using a human language. Computer users will not be able to survive (13)they know the code - the set of detailed instructions that tell a computer what to do. In the (14), survival and professional success will presuppose knowing everything about the machines we (15)with.

VII. REWRITE THE FOLLOWING SENTENCES WITHOUT CHANGING THE MEANING. IN SOME QUESTIONS, YOU HAVE TO USE THE GIVEN WORDS WITHOUT CHANGING THEIR FORMS IN ANY WAY. (15 points)

1. Thanks to her mother's encouragement, she entered the beauty contest.
 Had it.....
2. She'll probably pass the high school entrance examination. (STANDS)

3. She was just as good as they had thought.
 She quite definitely came.....
4. The "environmentally friendly" label on this product is misleading.
 Despite what is printed.....
5. She was afraid to scream because she didn't want to wake up the neighbors. (FEAR)

6. When you arrive, you will be met by the Head of the Sales Department.

- On.....
7. People estimate that the company manufactured more than 5,000 small planes last year.
More than 5,000 small planes.....
8. There have been fewer people who consume Chinese products. (DECREASE)
.....
9. They brought me two laptops, but neither worked satisfactorily. (WHICH)
.....
10. Do phone us when you arrive at the airport, even if it's very late.
However.....
11. Jane seems to come to the performance lat.
It looks.....
12. I could hold a big party due to my Mom's help.
Had it.....
13. Success depends on hard work.
The harder.....
14. Fiona was so disappointed that she could not keep on working.
Such.....
15. Although Richard is competent in his work, he does not know how to deal with this client.
Competent.....

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: PHONETICS

Dạng bài 1. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C or D.

Exercise 1

1. B (is pronounced /id/, all the others are pronounced /d/)
2. D (is pronounced /id/, all the others are pronounced /d/)
3. B (is pronounced /t /, all the others are pronounced /d/)
4. C (is pronounced /t /, all the others are pronounced /d/)
5. D (is pronounced /t/. all the others are pronounced /d/)
6. A (is pronounced/d/, all the others are pronounced /t /)
7. D (is pronounced/t /, all the others are pronounced /d/)
8. B (is pronounced/id/, all the others are pronounced /d/)
9. A (is pronounced/d/. all the others are pronounced /id/)
10. D (is pronounced /id/, all the others are pronounced /t/)
11. C (is pronounced /d/. all the others are pronounced /t /)
12. C (is pronounced /id/, all the others are pronounced /d /)
13. B (is pronounced /id /, all the others are pronounced /d /)
14. A (is pronounced /id/, all the others are pronounced /d /)
15. D (is pronounced /d/, all the others are pronounced /id /)
16. A (is pronounced /t /, all the others are pronounced /d /)
17. D (is pronounced /t /, all the others are pronounced /d /)
18. C (is pronounced /t/, all the others are pronounced /id /)
19. B (is pronounced /id/, all the others are pronounced /d /)
20. C (is pronounced /id /, all the others are pronounced /t /)

Exercise 2

21. C (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /iz/)
22. B (is pronounced /z /. all the others are pronounced /iz /)
23. D (is pronounced /ez /. all the others are pronounced /eiz /)
24. C (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /s /)
25. C (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /s /)
26. D (is pronounced /s /, all the others are pronounced /z /)
27. A (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /iz /)
28. A (is pronounced /iz /, all the others are pronounced /s /)
29. A (is pronounced /ziz /, all the others are pronounced /siz /)
30. B (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /s /)
31. C (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /s /)
32. B (is pronounced /s /, all the others are pronounced /z /)
33. A (is pronounced /s /, all the others are pronounced /z /)
34. B (is pronounced /s /, all the others are pronounced /z /)
35. D (is pronounced /s /, all the others are pronounced / iz /)
36. C (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /s /)
37. B (is pronounced /iz /, all the others are pronounced /z /)

38. A (is pronounced /s /, all the others are pronounced / z/)
39. D (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced / z/)
40. C (is pronounced /z /, all the others are pronounced /iz /)

Exercise 3

41. D (is pronounced / ð /, all the others are pronounced / θ /)
42. A (is pronounced / θ /, all the others are pronounced / ð /)
43. A (is pronounced / ð /, all the others are pronounced / θ /)
44. C (is pronounced / 0 /, all the others are pronounced / ð /)
45. D (is pronounced / ð /, all the others are pronounced / θ /)
46. C (is pronounced / θ /, all the others are pronounced / ð /)
47. A (is pronounced / ð /, all the others are pronounced / θ /)
48. D (is pronounced / ð /, all the others are pronounced / θ /)
49. B (is pronounced / 9 /, all the others are pronounced / ð /)
50. A (is pronounced / 9 /, all the others are pronounced / ð /)

Exercise 4

51. A (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / tʃ/)
52. C (is pronounced / tʃ /, all the others are pronounced / k /)
53. B (is pronounced / k /, all the others are pronounced / tʃ/)
54. C (is pronounced / k /, all the others are pronounced / ti /)
55. D (is pronounced / tʃ /, all the others are pronounced / k /)
56. C (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / k /)
57. A (is pronounced / f /, all the others are pronounced / tʃ/)
58. B (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / tʃ/)
59. D (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / tʃ/)
60. A (is pronounced / tʃ /, all the others are pronounced / k /)

Exercise 5

61. C (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / k /)
62. B (is pronounced / k /, all the others are pronounced / s /)
63. A (is pronounced / s /, all the others are pronounced / ʃ /)
64. A (is pronounced / s /, all the others are pronounced / k /)
65. D (is pronounced / s /, all the others are pronounced / k /)
66. C (is pronounced / k /, all the others are pronounced / ʃ /)
67. A (is pronounced / dʃ /, all the others are pronounced / g /)
68. B (is pronounced / dʃ /, all the others are pronounced / g /)
69. D (is pronounced / g /, all the others are pronounced / dʃ /)
70. B (is pronounced / dʃ /, all the others are pronounced / g /)

Exercise 6

71. D (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / b/)
72. C (is pronounced / b /, all the others are silent letters)
73. A (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / b/)
74. B (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / h /)
75. D (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced /h/)
76. C (is pronounced / h /, all the others are silent letters)

77. C (is pronounced / k /, all the others are silent letters)
78. A (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / k /)
79. A (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / l /)
80. C (is pronounced / h /, all the others are silent letters)
81. B (is pronounced / n /, all the others are silent letters)
82. D (is pronounced / p /, all the others are silent letters)
83. B (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / p /)
84. A (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / s /)
85. C (is pronounced / t /, all the others are silent letters)
86. D (is pronounced / t /, all the others are silent letters)
87. C (is pronounced / w /, all the others are silent letters)
88. A (is a silent letter, all the others are pronounced / w /)
89. A (is pronounced / w /, all the others are silent letters)
90. B (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are silent letters)

Exercise 7

91. D (is pronounced / z /, all the others are pronounced / s /)
92. B (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / s /)
93. A (is pronounced / z /, all the others are pronounced / s /)
94. C (is pronounced / z /, all the others are pronounced / s /)
95. A (is pronounced / z /, all the others are pronounced / s /)
96. B (is silent letters, all the others are pronounced / f /)
97. C (is pronounced / f /, all the others are silent letters)
98. B (is pronounced / t /, all the others are pronounced / tʃ /)
99. A (is pronounced / tʃ /, all the others are pronounced / t /)
100. D (is pronounced / n /, all the others are pronounced / ŋ /)

Exercise 8

101. B (is pronounced / i:ei /, all the others are pronounced / i: /)
102. C (is pronounced / ʃ: /, all the others are pronounced / əu /)
103. B (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / ʃ /)
104. B (is pronounced / e /, all the others are pronounced / eɪ /)
105. B (is pronounced / ʃɪ /, all the others are pronounced / eɪ /)
106. D (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / u: /)
107. A (is pronounced / ʃ /, all the others are pronounced / aʃ /)
108. B (is pronounced / əʃ /, all the others are pronounced / ju: /)
109. D (is pronounced / æ /, all the others are pronounced / ʃ: /)
110. C (is pronounced / ʃ:dʃ /, all the others are pronounced / ɪdʃ /)

Exercise 9

111. D (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
112. A (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
113. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
114. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
115. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
116. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

117. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
 118. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 119. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 120. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)

Exercise 10

121. C (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 122. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 123. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 124. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 125. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
 126. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 127. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 128. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 129. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 130. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)

Exercise 11

131. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 132. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others It is put on the first)
 133. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 134. C (stress is put on first the syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 135. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the list)
 136. D (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 137. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 138. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 139. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 140. B (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 12

141. C (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 142. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
 143. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 144. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 145. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 146. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 147. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
 148. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 149. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 150. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 13

151. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 152. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 153. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 154. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 155. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

156. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others It is put on the second)
 157. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others It is put on the first)
 158. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 159. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 160. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others It is put on the second)

Exercise 14

161. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 162. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 163. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 164. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 165. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 166. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 167. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 168. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 169. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 170. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)

Exercise 15

171. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 172. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 173. C (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 174. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 175. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 176. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 177. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
 178. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 179. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 180. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 16

181. B (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 182. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 183. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 184. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 185. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 186. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 187. D (stress is put on the fourth syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 188. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 189. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 190. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 17

191. C (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 192. A (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 193. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 194. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)

195. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
196. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
197. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
198. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
199. D (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
200. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 18

201. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
202. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
203. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
204. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
205. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
206. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
207. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
208. B (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
209. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
210. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)

Exercise 19

211. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
212. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
213. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
214. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
215. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
216. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
217. D (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
218. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
219. C (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
220. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 20

221. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
222. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
223. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
224. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
225. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
226. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
227. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
228. C (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
229. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
230. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

Exercise 21

231. A (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
232. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
233. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first).

234. B (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 235. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 236. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 237. A (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 238. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 239. D (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 240. A (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)

Exercise 22. Word stress

241. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the third)
 242. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 243. C (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 244. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 245. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 246. D (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)
 247. D (stress is put on the third syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 248. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 249. B (stress is put on the second syllable, in all the others it is put on the first)
 250. C (stress is put on the first syllable, in all the others it is put on the second)

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: VOCABULARY

PHẦN 1: WORD-FORMATION

• Bài tập cơ bản

Exercise 1

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. honestly | 2. observatory | 3. Unidentified | 4. imaginary |
| 5. competitive | 6. signature | 7. impatient | 8. unsolved |
| 9. appealing | 10. recycle | | |

Exercise 2

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. surroundings | 2. scenic | 3. surgery | 4. unconvincing |
| 5. shorten | 6. industrialized | 7. unpredictable | 8. competitive |
| 9. clarity | 10. irresponsible | | |

Exercise 3

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. familiarize | 2. partially | 3. pig-headed | 4. co-author |
| 5. discouraged | 6. additives | 7. misbehaved | 8. classifying |
| 9. indefensible | 10. odourless | | |

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. failure | 2. unfriendly | 3. carelessly | 4. straighten |
| 5. plentiful | 6. once | 7. unreliable | 8. conclusion |
| 9. imprisonment | 10. championship | | |

Exercise 5

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. insufficient | 2. dishonest | 3. performance | 4. collections | 5. alive |
| 6. lives | 7. dying | 8. upbringing | 9. pregnancy | 10. unemployn |

Exercise 6

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. tightening | 2. unbelievable | 3. wooden | 4. spacious | 5. solution |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|

6. slippery 7. performance 8. shocking 9. pleasant 10.
restoration

Exercise 7

1. happiness 2. valuable 3. illness 4. freedom
5. friendship 6. inspection 7. miserable 8. application
9. impatient 10. (un)suitable

Exercise 8

1. employees 2. excitement 3. disagreement 4. life
5. reality 6. useless 7. helpless 8. enthusiasm
9. Naturally 10. solution

Exercise 9

1. imagination 2.products 3.pollution 4.deforestation5.criers
6.consumption 7.(dis)appearance 8.upbringing 9.troublesome 10.shortage

Exercise 10

1.jammed 2.permission 3.Unfortunately 4.decisive 5. unattractive
6.infrequency 7.chaotic 8.embarrasses 9.exceptionally 10.loss

Exercise 11

1.consideration 2.financial 3.publicity 4.secondary 5.Willingness
6.novelists 7.extension 8.coincidental 9.nursery 10.tolerant

Exercise 12

1. global 2. exhibitions 3. completely 4. exhausted 5. scored
6. interested 7. disappointing 8. occupation 9. interesting 10. dangerous

Exercise 13

1. satisfied 2. fisherman 3. flight 4. friendly 5. heat
6. knowledge 7. creator 8. solution 9. wisdom 10. addicted

Exercise 14

1. famous 2. pride 3. noisy 4. childhood 5. success
6. failure 7. innocent 8. increasingly9. ignorance 10. respectful

Exercise 15

1. violation 2. death 3. leadership 4. harmful 5. addiction
6. citizenship 7. gifts 8. illegal 9. sight 10. childish

Exercise 16

1. adulthood 2. friendship 3. beautiful 4. warmth 5. hopeful
6. wooden 7. mysterious 8. homeless 9. Kingdom 10. frightens

Exercise 17

1. unlucky 2. impolite 3. disagreement 4. biodiversit
5. rewrite 6. anti-war 7. misunderstand 8. prejudice
9. Under-developed 10. bilingual

Exercise 18

1 .Instability 2. outnumbered 3.disabled 4 .unable 5.surviva l
6 .undoubtedly 7. growth 8.carelessnes s 9.poorly 10.co-operate

Exercise 19

1 .helpful 2. enjoyable 3. monthl y 4. happily 5. Hopefully

6. effectively 7. friendlier 8. loveliest 9. sympathized 10. loosen

Exercise 20

1. weakened 2. classify 3. apologizing 4. criticize 5. lessened
6. horrified 7. independent 8. dishonest 9. careless 10. unable

Bài tập nâng cao

Exercise 1

1. politely 2. entertainment 3. interesting 4. happily
5. expensive 6. dangerous 7. robberies 8. surprisingly
9. protection 10. completely

Exercise 2

1. traditionally 2. valuable 3. professionals 4. information
5. illness 6. disadvantage 7. breath 8. natural
9. seriously 10. favourite

Exercise 3

1. journalist 2. famous 3. variety 4. anger
5. building 6. organization 7. neighbourhood 8. invitation
9. amusing 10. frightened

Exercise 4

1. inspector 2. teacher 3. decision 4. peaceful
5. freedom 6. friendly 7. noisy 8. marriage
9. miserable 10. frequently

Exercise 5

1. unemployment 2. energetic 3. difficulties 4. application
5. unsuitable 6. qualifications 7. impossible 8. disappointment
9. Solution 10. patience

Exercise 6

1. exciting 2. wonderful 3. admiration 4. combination
5. development 6. fifth 7. popularity 8. crowded
9. enthusiastic 10. successful

Exercise 7

1. life/ lives 2. advertisements 3. attractive 4. immediately
5. discussion 6. useful 7. truthful 8. realistic
9. agreement 10. helpful

Exercise 8

1. reduction 2. sensitive 3. motorists 4. various
5. risky 6. criminals 7. murderers 8. conclusion
9. possibility 10. death

Exercise 9

1. actor / actress 2. enjoyable 3. security 4. performances
5. reaction 6. humorous 7. laughter 8. unsuccessful
9. terrified 10. nervous

Exercise 10

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. normally | 2. ideal | 3. warmth | 4. tasty |
| 5. poisonous | 6. comfortable | 7. photography | 8. arguments |
| 9. explanation | 10. boredom | | |

Exercise 11

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. arrival | 2. invention | 3. astonishment | 4. weekly |
| 5. endless | 6. pleasure | 7. economical | 8. harmful |
| 9. violence | 10. behaviour | | |

Exercise 12

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|------------------|-----------|
| 1. courageous | 2. equipment | 3. inexperienced | 4. trait |
| 5. thought | 6. skillful | 7. competitions | 8. height |
| 9. curiosity | 10. amazement | | |

Exercise 13

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. attraction | 2. expectations | 3. original | 4. different |
| 5. description | 6. fashionably | 7. impressive | 8. religious |
| 9. addition | 10. length | | |

Exercise 14

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. discovery | 2. alarming | 3. disorder | 4. connection |
| 5. tired | 6. anxiety | 7. pressure | 8. possession |
| 9. darkness | 10. unwise | | |

Exercise 15

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. strength | 2. ability | 3. hungry | 4. threatening |
| 5. intention | 6. surroundings | 7. satisfaction | 8. truly |
| 9. caring | 10. independent | | |

Exercise 16

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. theft | 2. painful | 3. owner | 4. valuables |
| 5. accidentally | 6. advice | 7. insurance | 8. sensible |
| 9. suggestions | 10. reliable | | |

Exercise 17

- | | | | |
|------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| 1. lucky | 2. employment | 3. jealousy | 4. daily |
| 5. healthy | 6. injury/injuries | 7. logical | 8. relation/relationship |
| 9. foolish | 10. unreasonable | | |

Exercise 18

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. predictions | 2. signature | 3. personality | 4. cheerful |
| 5. creative | 6. imaginative | 7. ambitious | 8. Apparently |
| 9. consideration | 10. believable | | |

Exercise 19

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. improvements | 2. Admittance | 3. personal | 4. importance |
| 5. automatically | 6. safety | 7. Protection | 8. existence |
| 9. central | 10. practical | | |

Exercise 20.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. responsibility | 2. tendency | 3. carelessly | 4. shortage |
| 5. endanger | 6. informative | 7. education | 8. failure |

9 .loss

10.choice

PHẦN 2: CONFUSING WORDS

Exercise 1

1. let 2. rented 3. hired 4. hired 5. let 6. renting
7. Hire 8. hire 9. let 10. let

Exercise 2.

1. work 2. occupation/ profession 3. job 4. duties 5. Tasks
6. profession 7. business 8. Occupation 9. task 10. job

Exercise 3

1. solution 2. effect 3. consequences 4. results 5.
results
6. result 7. effect 8. consequences 9. effects 10.
consequences

Exercise 4

1. top 2. route 3. tour 4. flight 5. cruise
6. travel 7. journey 8. voyages 9. trips 10. journey

Exercise 5

1. fine 2. income 3. donations 4. profit 5. Tip
6. change 7. allowance 8. loan 9. charge 10. currency 11. debt

Exercise 6

1. staff 2. clients 3. team 4. crew 5. crew
6. Colleagues 7. employees/ staff 8. team 9. crew 10. employee

Exercise 7

1. visitors 2. customers 3. guests 4. host 5. customer
6. customer 7. guest 8. visitors 9. host 10. guests

Exercise 8

1. habit 2. routine 3. common 4. normal 5. usual
6. common 7. normal 8. normal 9. routine 10. usual

Exercise 9

1. see 2. look 3. watch 4. Watch 5. see
6. see 7. looks 8. see 9. look 10. see

Exercise 10

1. make 2. do 3. make 4. makes 5. do
6. making 7. made 8. made 9. doing 10. does

Exercise 11

1. lives 2. live 3. lives 4. life 5. live
6. live 7. Life 8. life 9. life 10. lives

Exercise 12

1. take 2. bring 3. takes 4. come 5. bringing
6. taking 7. Take 8. brings 9. take 10. Take
11. fetch 12. fetch

Exercise 13

1. go 2. gone, come 3. come 4. coming, come 5. go

6. come 7. Go

8. come

9. go

10. going, come

Exercise 14

1. lend 2. borrow 3. lend 4. lend 5. Borrow

6. Borrow 7. lend 8. borrow 9. lend 10. lend

Exercise 15

1. big 2. great 3. tall 4. high 5. tall

6. Big 7. Big 8. high 9. big 10. great

Exercise 16

1. raising 2. arisen 3. rose 4. risen 5. arising

6. raise 7. raised 8. rose 9. arise 10. risen

Exercise 17

1. speaks 2. told 3. talk/ speak 4. say 5. tell

6. say 7. said 8. tell 9. said 10. tell

Exercise 18

1. expect 2. looking forward to 3. wait 4. wait 5. expect

6. Waiting 7. looking forward to 8. wait 9. waiting 10. expect

Exercise 19

1. match 2. matches 3. fit 4. fit 5. suit

6. match 7. suit 8. suit 9. fit 10. match

Exercise 20

1. only 2. lonely 3. alone 4. lonely 5. Single

6. Alone 7. alone 8. lonely 9. only 10. alone

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: COMMUNICATIVE LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

MỘT SỐ MẪU CÂU TRONG GIAO TIẾP CẦN CHÚ Ý

Exercise 1: Choose the best response (A, B, C or D) to each of the following.

- | | | | | | | |
|-------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.D | 2.B | 3.D | 4.A | 5.A | 6.D | 7.A |
| 8.C | 9.D | 10.A | 11.D | 12.C | 13.D | 14.D |
| 15.C | 16.B | 17.A | 18.C | 19.D | 20.D | 21.D |
| 22.B | 23.D | 24.A | 25.A | 26.C | 27.A | 28.D |
| 29.C | 30.C | 31.C | 32.C | 33.D | 34.B | 35.B |
| 36.C | 37.A | 38.A | 39.C | 40.A | 41.D | 42.A |
| 36. B | 44.A | 45.B | 46.B | 47.D | 48.C | 49.D |
| 50.B | 51.C | 52.D | 53.A | 54.D | 55.C | 56.D |
| 57.D | 58.C | 59.A | 60.B | | | |

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: GRAMMAR (NGŨ PHÁP) CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGŨ PHÁP NÂNG CAO

PHẦN 1: CÁC THÌ TRONG TIẾNG ANH - ENGLISH TENSES

Exercise 1.

1. have been waiting
2. has been working, returns, won't have seen
3. see. will be, has been improved, went
4. didn't you tell, could, wouldn't have needed

5. left
6. is talking, will be / is
7. saw, was living, told, was thinking
8. had arrived, did we discover, had been, had wasted
9. am thinking
10. am smelling, smell
11. have you been learning
12. arrived, had been playing
13. had ever gone
14. was waiting, heard
15. had been lecturing
16. traveled, slept
17. met, was acting
18. had been broken, was finally caught
19. will have completed
20. arrive, will have studied

Exercise 2

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.C | 2.C | 3.A | 4.A | 5.B |
| 6.C | 7.C | 8.C | 9.B | 10.C |
| 11.D | 12.A | 13.D | 14.A | 15.B |
| 16.B | 17.D | 18.B | 19.D | 20.C |

Exercise 3

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------|
| 1. am | 2. came | 3. haven't met | 4. started |
| 5. have been learning | 6. didn't understand | 7. has been improved | |
| 8. have just taken | 9. pass | 10. will move | |
| 11. are coming | 12. haven't seen | 13. have never been | |

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. received | 2. have been trying | 3. have been | 4. have had |
| 5. has been staying | 6. spent | 7. have been | 8. went |
| 9. watched | 10. have had | 11. is | 12. am sitting |
| 13. have been sitting | 14. leaves | 15. have decided | 16. am writing |
| 17. am getting | 18. am going to take | 1. get | 20. are you getting |

Exercise 5

1. He has been playing football for ten years.
2. He started to investigate/investigating the case a week ago.
3. When are Peter and Sarah getting married?
4. This is the most romantic story I have ever read.
5. We have been cooking for the party for four hours.
6. Not until he got home did he remember about the gun.
7. It's ages since I last went to an Indian restaurant.
8. Nancy hasn't come here since 1986.
9. This is the first time I have visited Japan./I've been to Japan.
10. When did Helen and Robert get married?

11. We haven't had a conversation for along time.
12. Thanks, but I've already eaten.
13. I've never read such an interesting book before. / I've never read a more interesting book before.
14. I've never played water-polo before.
15. Since hearing the results, Mary has felt more confident.

Exercise 6

1. is always criticizing
2. are meeting
3. does not go
4. am thinking of visiting
5. does your plane land
6. am having dinner
7. he is becoming more
8. never eat spicy food
9. is working
10. does that green jacket cost

Exercise 7

1. By the time I decided to go on a diet, I had put on ten kilos.
2. They waxed the car after they (had) washed it.
3. Before Lisa sat on the sofa to watch TV, she (had) made a sandwich.
4. We left for the airport as soon as we had packed our suitcase.
5. When I entered the lecture hall, the lecture had started.
6. It was the first time I had tasted Chinese food.
7. He had never read a science-fiction book before.
8. After Norman took/ had taken that package, he realized it was the wrong one.
9. While Mark was parking his car, he noticed the wing-mirror was broken.
10. As Judy was walking down the street, he saw an accident.
11. I'm about to work.
12. The Council intends to close the old swimming pool.
13. They are planning to have a big wedding in the summer.
14. The economy is on the point of collapsing.
15. My grandfather is about to die.
16. You are due to arrive at the hotel at 7.30 in the evening.

PHẦN 2: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ (SUBJECT AND VERB CONCORD)

Exercise 1: Give the right form of the verb in brackets to complete the following sentences.

1. is 2. Are 3. seem 4. are 5. has 6. presents
7. are 8. have 9. appears 10. are 11. is 12. votes
13. vote 14. is 15. has 16. hopes 17. hope 18. plans
19. is 20. are

Exercise 2 : Choose the best answer (A ,B ,C or D) to complete each sentences below.

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. C 7. C 8. C

9.B 10.D 11.A 12.B 13.A 14.D 15.A 16.B
 17.C 18.A 19.C 20.D 21.B 22.B 23.C 24.C
 25.B 26.A 27.A 28.C 29.C 30.C 31.D 32.A
 33.D 34.B 35.C 36.C 37.D 38.A 39.C 40.B
 41.B 42.C 43.A 44.B 45.B 46.D 47.B 48.C
 49.A 50.B

PHẦN3 . CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG VÀ BỊ ĐỘNG TRONG TIẾNG ANH (ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE IN ENGLISH)

Exercise1

1.A 2. C 3.A 4.C 5. D
 6.D 7. C 8.D 9.C 10.B
 11.A 12.C 13.B 14.D 15.B
 16.C 17.A 18.B 19.D 20.A

Exercise 2

- 1- He is often taken for his brother
- 2-A terrible mistake seems to have been made.
- 3-He recommends that new tire sshould be fitted
- 4-He suggested that tenants should be allowed to buy their houses.
- 5-You are supposed to make tea.
- 6-He is known to be armed.
- 7-He has been seen to pickup the gun.
- 8-You are known to have been in town .
- 9-Your father is thought to have been a spy in World War II/ It is thought that your father was a spy in World War II.
- 10-He is believed to have special knowledge.
- 11-This needn't have been done.
- 12-He likes to be called "Sir".
- 13-This switch isn't to be touched/mustn't be touched
- 14-It has to be seen to be believed.
- 15-He doesn't lik e being laughed at.
- 16-This watch needn't be wound/doesn't need to be would.
- 17-He shouldn't have been told .
- 18-Don't speak until you are spoken to.
- 19-This can't be done.
- 20-He hates being made fun of
- 21-The Government was thought to have ignored their opinions./ It was thought that the Government had ignored their opinions.
- 22-He was given artificial respiration./Artificial respiration was given (to) him.
- 23-Before printing was invented, everything had to be written by hand.

Exercise 3

- 1-It is said that he is a good doctor.
- 2-I was not told about it.

- 3-I don't like being asked stupid questions.
- 4-She doesn't like being laughed at.
- 5-The boss had all these letters typed(by his secretary).
- 6-They had their house repaired (by the workers).
- 7-don't want being thought of as a burden.
- 8-It is said that elephants never forget.
- 9-People thought that his wife had been killed./It is thought that his wife had been killed.
- 10-13 is believed to be an unlucky number.
- 11-The strike is expected to begin tomorrow.
- 12-I remember having been given/being given that shirt on my birthday.
- 13-He recommend that secondhand clothes should be used.
- 14-I was made to leave soon.
- 15-You are supposed to do your homework before class-time.

Exercise 4

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1.was slowly being filled | 2.was invented | 3.was advised |
| 4.was opened with | 5.has been dealt with | 6.was announced |
| 7.was heard of | 8.was paid to | |

PHẦN 4 : CÂU TRỰC TIẾP VÀ GIÁN TIẾP TRONG TIẾNG ANH (DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH IN ENGLISH)

Exercise 1

- 1.She told me it was pouring with rain down there.
- 2.She said that she would come and see me on Friday if that was all right.
- 3.The treasurer told the meeting that the club had lost quite a lot of money the month before/ the previous month.
- 4.She promised me that she would have finished writing the report by the time I got there.
- 5.Clare said that she had enjoyed herself the night before.
- 6.A young man wanted to know what the most interesting sights were.
- 7.A German student asked if I had a town plan.
- 8.A French couple wondered where they could stay.
- 9.Carol asked how long the film lasted.
- 10.A Japanese man asked if there were guided tours .
- 11.A tourists wanted to know which way the castle was.
- 12.Peter invited Nick to stay for lunch .
- 13.Tim advised Martin to see a doctor.
- 14.Louise apologized(to me) for causing so much trouble .
- 15.Andy suggested going out for the day.
- 16.Tracy offered to do the washing up.
- 17.Pat reminded Jane to post the letter.
- 18.The travel agent admitted making/having made a mistake.
- 19.Steve warned Mike not to touch the electric wires.
- 20.My bank manager wanted to know if I was taking much money with me to France .

Exercise 2

- 1.Mrs.Stone suggested inviting Jane to dinner that night.

- 2.A student inquired where Mount Everest was.
- 3.The robber threatened to shoot the girl if she screamed.
- 4.The man complained that he had been standing in the/that queue for two hours.
- 5.The doctor advised Mrs.Bent to stay in the shade and wear a hat.
- 6.Tom's sister warned him that he would burn him self if he kept playing with matches./Tom' s sister warned him not to plany with matches.
- 7.Chris apologized to Harry for waking him up that morning.
- 8.Kerry agreed with Tracey that they ought to let the others know .
- 9.Sue promised to pay her mother back by the end of the week.
- 10.Michael refused to lend Graham his car.

Exercise 3

- 1.He boasted that he could speak six languages fluently .
- 2.He suggested going to the cinema that evening.
- 3.The teacher shouted that they should stop that noise in the classroom.
- 4.The man claimed that the car I was driving was his property.
- 5.The boy admitted breaking the window with his catapult.
- 6.The man protested that they/he couldn't take him to prison and said that he knew his rights .
- 7.His fiancée whispered that she would always love him .
- 8.He agreed that if the weather was bad,they couldn't go.

Exercise4

- 1-to tell him the time 2.to open the window 3-to get to the cinema
- 4-muchthebikecost 5-would help me 6-have the car for \$500.
- 7-was being a bit silly 8-wouldn't arrive until after eight.

PHẦN 5: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN – CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Exercise 1: Give the right form of the verb in brackets to complete the following sentences.

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. is | 2. wouldn't have lost | 3.had dropped/ would have told |
| 4. had/ would sell | 5. finishes | 6.will give |
| 7. would play/ didn't rain | 8. will arrest | 9.would believe |
| 10. has | 11. will come | 12. were having |
| 13. was falling | 14. Had | 15. knew |
| 16. will make | 17. are | 18. would be taking/ hadn't been |
| 19. would be coming/ hadn't insulted | | 20. would be/ hadn't given |
| 21. would have accepted/ didn't take | | 22. wouldn't have talked/ weren't |
| 23. wouldn't be/ hadn't had/ hadn't been | | 24. couldn't speak/ hadn't lived |
| 25. would be helping/ hadn't spent | | 26. would be going/ hadn't just had |
| 27. wouldn't be/ weren't | | 28. would be/ weren't giving |
| 29. would be going/ hadn't broken | | 30. wouldn't have won |

Exercise 2

11. I wouldn't have got wet if I had had an umbrella with me.
12. Unless you leave me alone, I'll call the police,
13. If it is snowing, we won't go to school.

14. If Jack hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.
15. If you didn't drink too much coffee / drank less coffee, you could sleep.
16. If you press this button, the machine stops.
17. If you make me some coffee, I'll give you one of my biscuits.
18. Unless you had told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed.
19. Should you see Peter, tell him he should be here at 8.00.
20. If you were to ask me to marry you, I wouldn't accept.

Exercise 3

1. (If I had known) his address in London, I would have visited (him).
2. (You have to) speak slowly, or else the audience won't (understand you).
3. (Angela), If you were older, you would be able to get (a motorbike).
4. (I wouldn't mind) being transferred to another city on condition that they offered..
5. (If he) decides to go shopping, I might go (with him).
6. (If) you don't want to go to a restaurant, we can have (dinner here).
7. (If) they had not been wearing seat belts, they could have been seriously injured.
8. (I) would travel (all over the world if I had enough money).

Exercise 4

1. Unless the weather is good, we won't go away.
2. I would have bought a new shirt if I had had money.
3. Were they to offer/ If they were to offer you the job, would you accept?
4. If you should be in London / Should you be in London, come and see me
5. If you happen to have any free time, could you give me a ring?
6. If it hadn't been for you, I would have given up years ago.
7. But for Pauline's interest, the project would have been abandoned.
8. If you were to find some buried treasure, what would you do?
9. If a detective hadn't recognized him, Dick wouldn't be in prison now.
10. If it hadn't been for the nightwatchman, the fire wouldn't have been brought under control.

Exercise 5

1. Jeremy wishes he had accepted / hadn't rejected
2. The politician spoke as though he had won the election.
3. It's about time you got a haircut.
4. I would rather Betty didn't borrow my clothes without asking me first.
5. I wish governments wouldn't spend so much money on nuclear weapons
6. You had better see the dentist today.
7. Jim wishes he could participate in the debate.
8. Susan prefers to read magazines rather than watch Tv in the evening.
9. It would have been better if you have waited for us.
10. It's time for him to study hard.
11. We wish we hadn't left the party so early. / we would rather not have left...
12. If only we had hired a car during the holiday.
13. We'd rather go shopping than stay at home.
14. I wish I knew how to play the piano.
15. Mr. Smith would sooner I had finished the reports yesterday but I couldn't.

Exercise 6

1. not to work → not work
2. ✓
3. had tidied → tidied
4. for the children → the children
5. not Tom → Tom
6. have visited → visited
7. had lived → lived
8. ✓
9. to fix → fix
10. ✓

PHẦN 6: CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH (SUBJUNCTIVE)

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the following sentences.

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. B | 3. A | 4. D | 5. A | 6. C | 7. C | 8. A | 9. A | 10. C |
| 11. C | 12. A | 13. A | 14. B | 15. A | 16. D | 17. D | 18. C | 19. A | 20. A |
| 21. C | 22. C | 23. A | 24. C | 25. C | | | | | |

Exercise 2: Give the right form of the verbs in brackets to complete the following sentences.

- | | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|--|--|
| 1. remember | 2. read | 3. be repaired | 4. focus | | |
| 5. not enter | 6. apologize | 7. attend | 8. be sitting | | |
| 9. think | 10. drive | 11. be taken | 12. reduce | | |
| 13. be allowed | 14. not regulate | 15. not swim | 16. monitor | | |
| 17. put | 18. be invited | 19. send | 20. work | | |

PHẦN 7: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSE)

Exercise 1

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. D | 6. B | 7. D | 8. B | 9. A | 10. C |
| 11. C | 12. B | 13. A | 14. A | 15. C | 16. B | 17. D | 18. D | 19. B | 20. C |
| 21. D | 22. B | 23. C | 24. B | 25. A | 26. C | 27. D | 28. C | 29. A | 30. B |
| 31. D | 32. A | 33. B | 34. D | 35. B | | | | | |
| 36. A | 37. C | 38. D | 39. C | 40. A | | | | | |

Exercise 2

1. giving → given, who his → whose
2. to whom → whom/ who/ that /O
3. students, are → students, who are
4. who we met them → who/whom/that/O we met
5. Jones that → Jones, who
6. telling → told; a man lived → who lived / living; saved → who saved
7. people since I came here who some of them are from my country → people, some of whom are from my country, since I came here.
8. was fishing → fishing
9. People can → People who can
10. whom they went → who went

11. people which → people who / whom / that / O
12. sport in which I am interested in it → sport which / that / O I am interested in.
13. Mr. Peterson, he → Mr. Peterson, who
14. who is trying → who are try ing
15. anyone who he wants → anyone who wants / anyone wanting

Exercise 3

1. The hotel, which was miles from anywhere, was full of guests w ho had gone there to admire the scenery.
2. The book I lent you w as written by a friend of mine who lives in France.
3. The woman whose jewels were stolen was interviewed by a police officer who was staying in the same hotel.
4. The goal which won the match was scored by a teenager who had come on as a substitute..
5. The boy I was sitting next to in the exam told me the answers
6. My wallet, which contained over £100. was found in the street by a schoolboy who returned it / was returned by a schoolboy who found it in the street.
7. My friend Albert, whose car was stolen last week, has decided to buy a motorbike.
8. Carol, who is a vegetarian, enjoyed the meal I cooked for her last week.
9. The train I got on didn't stop at the station I wanted to go to.
10. The book I read was the book you recommended to me.
11. The ship, which had Ignored the warning messages sent to it. hit an iceberg and sank.
12. The postman, who realized I was on holiday, left the parcel you had sent me next door.
13. The dog I used to own never barked at people who came to the door.
14. The woman I bought my car from lives in the house you can see over there.
15. The beach we went to on the first day of our holiday was covered in seaweed which smelled a lot.
16. My neighbours, whose small children make a lot of noise, never apologize.
17. The walllet I lost last week was found by a workman who was digging a hole in the street outside the house.
18. Slamming the car behind, Carol drove off in the car her father had given her as a present.
19. At the end of the street, which was crowded with shoppers, there was a building (which/ that / O) Tom had not noticed before.
20. The people who have just moved in next door have the same surname as the people who have just moved out.
21. The journalist will interview the old man whose house was broken into last night.
22. I listened to George patiently until he started insulting me, at which point I told him a few home truths which he didn't like.

Exercise 4

Murder at the station

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. who | 2. who/that | 3. whom | 4. which / that / O |
| 5. who | 6. which / that / O | 7. whose | 8. which |
| 9. who | 10. which | 11. which / that / O | 12. Which |
| 13. which / that /O | 14. whose | 15. who | |

Sherlock Homes

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|
| 1. whose | 2. who/that | 3. who/that | 4. which / that / O |
|----------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|

5. that / which/O 6. where 7. who 8. why / O 9. whose

Exercise 5

1. Brenda is the kind of person that I like.
2. The whole summer was sunny and warm, which was a change.
3. Jean was the kind of person whose advice I asked for.
4. There was not a single house in the street which had escaped undamaged.
5. That was when I realized I had left my wallet at home.
6. I don't really approve of what he's saying / he's proposing.
7. It is an event which I'd rather forget.
8. There is only one of her books which I have not read.

PHẦN 8: MODAL VERBS (ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU)

Exercise 1 : Choose the correct completion (A, B, C or D) for each sentence below.

- 1.B 2. D 3.B 4.A 5.C 6.B 7.D 8.C 9.D 10.A
11.D 12.C 13.C 14.D 15.C 16.A 17.A 18.C 19.D 20.A
21.D 22.B 23.A 24.C 25.D 26.C 27.A 28.B 29.C 30.C
31.A 32.B 33.B 34.C 35.D 36.D 37.C 38.A 39.B 40.D

Exercise 2

1. (They) might not visit us (at the weekend).
2. (Karen,) will you help me (with the washing up?)
3. (It) can't have been (Tim who called you because I saw him outside).
4. (Bruce) must have gone (to the dentist since he has a terrible toothache.)
5. (Would) you mind if I borrowed (your tape recorder this afternoon?)
6. (You) are not allowed to walk (your dog in the park.)
7. (You) could have bought (that watch from another shop.)
8. (Garry) was not able to remember (where he had put his wallet.)
9. (You) should not have driven (through the red light.)
10. (Our children) never used to tell (him.)

Exercise 3

1. may have been attending
2. shouldn't be watching
3. might have been washing
4. must be waiting
5. shouldn't have left
6. could be visiting
7. should watch
8. must have thrown
9. should be working, shouldn't be wasting / shouldn't waste
10. might be travelling
11. might have borrowed
12. must be playing
13. must not have been expecting / must not have expected
14. might have been washing, may have already left

Exercise 4

1. I think you had better give up smoking immediately.
2. We should get there by 5.00
3. Do I have to bring my passport?
4. The cat must be in the house somewhere.
5. You don't need to have / don't have to have an aerial with this radio.
6. It's very convenient if you are able to drive.
7. You can't be the thief.
8. Norman is bound to be late.
9. All students are to report to the main hall at 9.00.
10. You ought to know better.

Exercise 5

1. Helen must feel rather lonely.
2. You can't park here.
3. Harry should take a holiday.
4. Brenda can't be over thirty.
5. Do I have to have a driving hscience for a motorbike?
6. What do you think I should do/
7. Mary can stand on her head.
8. You don't have to come with me if you don't want to.
9. Anybody can break into their house.
10. The dentist will see you soon. He shouldn't be long.

PHẦN 9: INVERSION AND EMPHASIS IN ENGLISH (ĐẢO NGỮ VÀ SỰ NHẤN MẠNH TRONG TIẾNG ANH)

Exercise 1: Rewrite each of the sentences below, using the words given in the brackets, so that the meaning of each one has an emphasis.

1. Off went my brother without saying a word.
2. Off he went without saying a word.
3. Along the corridor were her toys.
4. On a hill stands the castle.
5. Now is your change to speak out
6. Seldom have we fished so much here.
7. In no way are they responsible for what occurred last night.
8. On no account should you take these pills when you drink alcohol.
9. Not once did she offer us her help.
10. Not until I saw her weeping did I become aware of what was going on
11. Little did we realize the dangers that were awaiting us.
12. So tired was he that he slept for fourteen hours.
13. Such was my delight that I bought everybody a drink.
14. To such an extent do I love him that I would even give my life for him.
15. Not only do they supply us with food, but also with drinks.
16. No sooner had we eaten it than we had a terrible stomach-ache.

17. Hardly had I gone to bed when the telephone rang.
18. Not only did she take him to the zoo, but to the cinema as well.
19. No sooner does the day break than the cock crows.
20. Only when he bought her some flowers did she agree to go out with him.
21. Should you need a good make-up remover, please let me know.
22. Were I to win the first prize in the national lottery, I would no longer work.
23. Had you not flooded the engine, it would have started at once.
24. Should my parents need me, I will/shall never let them down.
25. Were I in your place, I would try to be more assertive.

Exercise 2: Finish the second sentence so that the meaning has a similar meaning with an emphasis.

1. In no way should you consider him as your worst enemy.
2. On no account must you upset your parents.
3. Across the bridge live Mr. and Mrs. Adam.
4. So scared was I that I could not even scream.
5. In front of us was the horrific view of the massacre.
6. Behind those mountains lies the canyon.
7. Only then did he become aware of the dangers of the jungle.
8. Scarcely had she begun to study when her boyfriend rang the bell.
9. No way will I go trekking with him.
10. Such was my terror that I couldn't move.
11. No sooner had I switched the dishwasher than it broke down.
12. No sooner had he seen her than he fell in love with her.
13. Had we known that you were interested in buying the block of flats, we would have sold it to you.
14. Down the road went your mother.
15. Down the road she went.
16. Only in hot countries is this disease common.
17. Never again will you have such an opportunity.
18. Not only did we write to her many times, but telephone her twice, too.
19. No sooner had he learnt about his mother's incurable disease than he cried his eyes out.
20. Not only have we put aside some money, but also have stocked up with a lot of groceries from the shop next door.
21. Neither did I use suntan lotion.
22. Up flew the wood pigeon.
23. Should you increase our wages, we will work overtime.
24. I hardly had she taken everything out of the picnic basket when it began to rain.
25. Were you to buy a new car, which of these would you choose?
26. Under no circumstances should you press both buttons at once.
27. Not once did Jean offer her boss a word of apology.
28. Only later did I realize who he was.
29. At no time did he suspect that the money had been stolen.
30. Nothing but a full refund did he need/ insist/ would satisfy him.

PHẦN 10: CONECTIVES: CÁC TỪ NỐI

Exercise 1: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete the sentences below.

- 1.B 2.A 3.B 4.B 5.D 6.C 7.B
8.B 9.A 10.C 11.C 12.D 13.D 14.B
15.A 16.D 17.B 18.C 19.D 20.C 21.C
22.A 23.B 24.A 25.C 26.D 27.B 28.B 29.A 30.B

Exercise 2 Rewrite the sentences below with the connectors given in brackets.

1. He can't be a basketball player because he's too short.
2. Much as I approve of parties, I cannot let you give one tonight.
3. You have not performed your duties. Consequently, you will be expelled from the club.
4. 'Although I ran as fast as I could, I was always in the same place,' she dreamt.
5. He is crying his heart out owing to his father's death.
6. These are the rules. Nevertheless, there are exceptions/There are exceptions, nevertheless.
7. I don't love you; what's more, I don't want to see you again I don't love you and, what's more, I don't want to see you again/
8. Majorca is a paradise for tourists; hence its popularity.
9. His death was due to a heart attack.
10. Our business is going from bad to worse; as a result, we will have to close down/Our business is going from bad to worse, and we will have to close down as a result.
11. Many people are dying in the third world every day on account of lack of food.
12. Time is pressing on, so we'll have to work hard at it.
13. Even if you hate them, you'll have to live with them.
14. The unemployment rate has increased. Thus we will/shall have to take strict measures.
15. We will not buy you the bike we promised, since you have failed all your exams.
16. They lost the battle through lack of discipline.
17. Happy though he was, he felt lonely at times.
18. Clever as he was with his hand, he couldn't fix it.
19. I bought a padlock, but it was not big enough for the gate.
20. He consented to all her wishes, for he could not live without her.
21. We have considered your proposal thoroughly. However, we (are afraid to tell you that) we cannot assent to it.
22. The reason (why/ that) we didn't wait for them was that we were in a hurry.
23. Nobody dare to dissent from the decision of the prime minister. All the same, she did.
24. I didn't drown thanks to her.
25. In spite of her telling/having told him that she would always be true to him, she wasn't/ In spite of the fact (that) she had told him that she would always be true to him, she wasn't.
26. Despite being snowing heavily, they went on climbing/Despite the heavy snow, they went on climbing/Despite the fact (that) it was snowing heavily, they went
27. All the same, he was not fined.
28. Even though (I know) you don't love me. I'll marry you.
29. In addition to her being well-trained for the post, she is beautiful.
30. These fairy cakes are homemade. Besides, they have the best quality ingredients.

Exercise 3: Rewrite the sentences below with the connectors given in brackets.

1. You will have to carry, (let's) say, a hundred pounds.

2. Except for the people next door, everybody in the neighbourhood is lovely/ Everybody in the neighborhood is love, except for the people next door.
3. You should attend to your guests. After all, you are the hostess/You're the hostess(,) after all.
4. Summing up, something must be done to put an end to violence on the streets and drug trafficking
5. Apart from being a very good guitarist, he sings beautifully.
6. They lost all their money in a shady business, not to mention the loan they took out of the bank.
7. The way I see it, you should put your cards on the table.
8. She likes many romantic poets, like Coleridge, Wordsworth, Byron and Keats.
9. Nobody/No-one except you can make me happy.
10. They abandoned him to his fate, for they had little confidence in him.
11. They couldn't reach the peak as a result of the heavy snow.
12. The country's economy is getting better and better. A case in point is the stabilization (or 'stabilization') of inflation/the stabilization of inflation is a case in point/As a case in point, we can mention the stabilization of inflation/We can mention the stabilization of inflation, as a case in point
13. Needless to say, all applicants must identify themselves before the interview.
14. Personally, I found his remarks unnecessary.
15. We'll have to hurry, since time is short.
16. Your days are numbered, which is why we'll grant you a favour.
17. In conclusion, we made a substantial profit last year.
18. To my way of thinking, you shouldn't argue with them about politics.
19. I can't carry my belongings, let alone (carry) yours
20. Money is what makes the world go round, that is to say(,) the more money you have, the more powerful you become.
21. Hatred creates even more hatred. To Put it another way, the more you hate somebody, the more they will hate you.
22. He is the most important person in this company, that is(.) he is the boss
23. On the whole, military service is a waste of time and money.
24. I don't mind what time you arrive home. Above all (else), I want you to arrive safe and sound.
25. He had presented several television shows; but, first and foremost, he is a journalist.
26. Broadly speaking, this play may be divided into four main parts.
27. By and large, Eivissa is one of the best holiday spots in the world.
28. She told me that the grammar exercises were as easy as falling off a log; but, as a matter of fact, I found them very difficult.
29. The weather forecaster said that today would be quite hot; but, in (actual) fact, it is quite chilly.
30. I don't want to see them any more. In actual fact, I hate them.
31. They said that they had done all the work; but, in point of fact, they had done nothing.
32. She told me that she was as poor as a church mouse, but actually she was loaded
33. Regarding your application for the job as a sales representative, we are glad to inform you that it will be offered to you.
34. In regard to your brother, he is the most qualified person for the post.
35. As for air pollution, the government should take stronger measures to combat it.
36. Apropos (of) what he stated yesterday, we consider it the most appropriate alternative.
37. As far as the decline in the country's exports is concerned, the government should act at once.

38. In a nutshell, we must do something to stop burglars.
 39. We want you to write to us regularly; but, above all else, don't forget to telephone us
 40. On the one hand, it rained heavily that weekend; on the other, I felt unwell most of the time

**PHẦN 11: TÍNH TỪ (ADJECTIVE), TRẠNG TỪ (ADVERB)
 VÀ CÁC CÁCH SO SÁNH.**

Exercise 1: Put the adjectives in the brackets into the correct order to have a meaningful noun phrases.

- | | | |
|---|--|-------------------------|
| 1. a rectangular modern cream | 2. pretty long silken | 3. dreadful old pink |
| 4. tiny new central processing | 5. tired local camera | 6. beautiful vast green |
| 7. large Greek vegetable | 8. good-looking middle-aged black pop | |
| 9. two-hour traffic jam | 10. dangerous gloomy New York | |
| 11. a brand-new mustard American sports | | |
| 12. fantastic (and) delightful/delightful (and) fantastic | | |
| 13. pretty and elegant/elegant and pretty | 14. horrible lilac toilet | |
| 15. an enormous round sky-blue | 16. wonderful colourful | |
| 17. an old red and white breakdown | 18. pretty brown and turquoise leather | |
| 19. a long-distance obstacle | 20. magnificent country | |
| 21. dreadful tangerine and lime silk | 22. expensive Catalan | |
| 23. a modern peach ice | 24. an oval blue Chinese dining | |
| 25. cheap black and yellow football | | |

Exercise 2

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|----|
| 1. crying | 2. burning | 3. excited | 4. smiling | 5. |
|-----------|------------|------------|------------|----|
- Frightening
- | | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 6. frightened | 7. advancing | 8. approving | 9. approved | 10. Blowing |
| 11. boring | 12. cleaning | 13. cleaned | 14. closed | 15. crowded |
| 16. aching | 17. disappointed | 18. broken | 19. trembling | 20. interesting |

Exercise 3

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. clean | 2. safely | 3. honest | 4. thoughtfully | 5. good |
| 6. confidently | 7. well | 8. angrily | 9. angry | 10. carefully |

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. faster | 2. more beautifully | 3. the hardest | 4. earlier |
| 5. the most sensitively | 6. more peacefully | 7. the latest | 8. the most fluently |

Exercise 5

- The more ice-cream he eats, the fatter he gets, and the fatter he gets, the more ice-cream he eats.
- The more he reads, the more he forgets, and the more he forgets, the more he reads.
- The more she ignores him, the more he loves her, and the more he loves her, the more she ignores him.
- The more shoes she buys, the more shoes she wants, and the more shoes she wants, the more shoes she buys.
- The more money we spend, the more friends we have, and the more friends we have, the more money we spend.
- The more I sleep, the more tired I am, and the more tired I am, the more I sleep.

Exercise 6

- 1.C 2.B 3.A 4.D 5.D 6.C 7.B 8.A 9.C 10.B

Exercise 7

1. I've never eaten a better meal.
2. Fish costs just as much as meat in some countries.
3. I've never had such a good time.
4. The more you run, the fitter you get.
5. Wednesday is the earliest the doctor can see you. I'm afraid.
6. I must have a rest, I can't go (on) any further.
7. Home computers aren't as expensive as they used to be.
8. Sue knows more Italian than I do.
9. Learning to drive isn't as difficult as I thought It would be.
10. John isn't a better skater than Barbara.
11. Peter can't run as fast as Jill (can).
12. This journey didn't last as long as I thought It would.
13. I arrived later than I expected.
14. You'll have to work harder / faster.
15. I have an elder brother.
16. Martin didn't think the first part of the film was interesting
17. Paula has been working less carefully than before.
18. This is the earliest train.
19. This pub is the nearest.
20. Can't you offer a better price?

Exercise 8

1. Your car didn't cost as much as mine did./ Your car cost less than mine did.
2. You are better at Math than I am.
3. Keith is a littler taller than Nigel.
4. Bill was growing angrier and angrier.
5. Sally did her best.
6. This film wasn't as good as I thought it would be.
7. I've never driven along such a bumpy road (before).
8. The more you eat, the fatter you get.
9. George said it was the best he could do.
10. This year's exam was just as difficult as last year's exam.

PHẦN 12: CẤU TRÚC ĐỘNG TỪ: VERB STRUCTURES

Exercise 1

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. going / to go | 11. to give |
| 2. to leave / leaving | 12. playing |
| 3. lecturing / to lecture | 13. doing |
| 4. swimming / to swim | 14. to do |
| 5. seeing / to see | 15. to do |
| 6. moving / to move; racing / to race | 16. carrying |
| 7. driving, taking | 17. watching |
| 8. to drive, take | 18. to do |

9. to turn

10. being

19. to inform

20. not listening

Exercise 2

1. in looking

2. about leaving

3. of doing

4. for being

5. to having

6. from completing

7. about having

8. of studying

9. for helping

10. on knowing

11. by drawing

12. of living

13. for not going

14. in searching

15. for making

16. for not wanting

18. to going

19. from speaking

20. to going

21. in clarifying

22. of stealing

23. of taking, keeping

24. to wearing

25. to eating, sleeping

Exercise 3

1. not to be

2. cleaning

3. to take

4. to leave

5. to talk / talking

6. waiting, doing

7. to stay, paint

8. quitting, opening

9. to take

10. looking, to answer

11. postponing

12. watching, listening

13. to read

14. to go, camping

15. singing

16. to take, to pay

17. to stand

18. not to wail

19. to explain

20. holding, feeding, changing

Exercise 4

1. They made me study hard when I was at school.

2. Taking the job means moving to Paris.

3. I appreciate your giving me a lift.

4. Why don't you try using honey?

5. I don't mind looking after the baby for you.

6. I demand to see the manager.

7. Sally encouraged Jack to apply for the job.

8. Do you happen to know where the Hilton is?

9. You are not allowed to park here.

10. Pauline offered to carry the bag for John.

Exercise 5

1.A 2.A 3.A 4.C 5.B 6.C 7.D 8.B 9.D 10.C

Exercise 6

1. Jack denied cheating in the exam.

2. I couldn't help laughing at Wendy's letter.

3. I regret to tell you that you have not been appointed to the post.

4. I stopped running to drink some water.

5. Luckily Peter avoided paying a fine.

6. I suggest taking the train.
7. Don't forget to turn off the lights when you leave.
8. I can hear someone talking upstairs.
9. Dereck appears to have forgotten the meeting.
10. My neighbour threatened to call the police.
11. I regret not going to university.
12. Winning the football pools enabled us to buy a new car.
13. He risks missing the plane if he waits.
14. This clue led me to believe you were the murderer.
15. Do you have to pay extra to use the hotel swimming pool?
16. This appears to be the right street.
17. Jean managed to finish all her work on time.
18. They invited me to stay with them in Florida.
19. It's no use calling Jim as his phone is out of order.
20. All students are required to leave a cash deposit.

PHẦN 13: MỘT SỐ THÀNH NGỮ VÀ NGỮ ĐI VỚI GIỚI TỪ

Exercise 1

1. in stead of 2. Regardless of 3. In case of 4. in favour of
5. on behalf of 6. Apart from 7. As for 8. by means of
9. Because of 10. According to 11. in common with 12. in front of

Exercise 2

1. costs 2. words 3. impression 4. hurry 5. fail
6. strike 7. secret 8. stock 9. return 10. breath

Exercise 3

1. in bed 2. on time 3. in all 4. out of reach 5. by chance
6. out of doors 7. at present 8. in common 9. on the way 10. on business

Exercise 4

1. profit 2. himself 3. public 4. practice 5. average
6. sight 7. particular 8. whole 9. detail 10. force

Exercise 5

1. in two 2. on holiday 3. without a doubt 4. out of work
5. by sight 6. in difficulties 7. by heart 8. in turn
9. in pain 10. on sale

Exercise 6

- 1.D 2.B 3.C 4.C 5.A 6.B 7.C 8.A 9.B 10.B

Exercise 7

1. on 2. in 3. on 4. From 5. in 6. by
7. In 8. on - on 9. in, by 10. on 11. on 12. in
13. by 14. on 15. in

Exercise 8

1. in, On 2. by, in 3. out of, upto 4. on, by
5. on, on 6. for, on 7. in my, in the

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: READING (ĐỌC HIỂU)

Exercise 1: Read the paragraphs below and the summary which follows

1. pollution 2. ill 3. laws 4. smoke 5. lungs 6. lead
7. brains/ health 8. exhausts 9. climate 10. floods

Exercise 2: Read the following passage and fill in each gap with only ONE appropriate word

1. so 2. like 3. means 4. television 5. widens / broadens
6. which / that 7. to 8. every 9. watching 10. than

Exercise 3: Read the following passage and decide which option A, B, C or D best fits each space.

1. A 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. C 10. B

Exercise 4: Read the following passage and answer the questions.

1. The process of making something dirty is pollution.
2. A word or phrase with the same meaning as the air, water and land we live in is environment.
3. The air surrounding the earth is called atmosphere.
4. Resources could be best replaced with wealth, goods or products people can use.
5. A difficulty which needs attention and thought is problem.

Exercise 5: Read the following passages carefully, then choose the ONE best answer (A, B, C or D) to each question

1. B. Elements that make Winterthur an unusual museum	6. A. Winterthur
2. B. specializing in	7. D. evolving
3. B. The house was repaired	8. D. past ownership
4. C. Winterthur does not look like a typical museum	
5. C. brought together	10. D. lines 10-12

Exercise 6: Read the passage below then state whether the following sentences are TRUE or FALSE.

1. True 2. False 3. False 4. False
5. True 6. True 7. False 8. False

Exercise 7: Read the following passages carefully, then choose the ONE best answer (A, B, C or D) to each question

Q#	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Key	C	B	B	A	C	B	D

Exercise 8: Read the following passages carefully, then choose the ONE best answer (A, B, C or D) to each question

1. C 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. B
6. D 7. A 8. B 9. A 10. A

Exercise 9: Choose from sentences A-H the one which fits each gap 1-6. There is one extra sentence you do not need to use. (12 points)

Q#	1	2	3	4	5	6
Key	E	B	F	G	C	A

Exercise 10

You are going to read an article in which four people describe their best teacher. For questions 1-15, choose from the people (A - D). The people may be chosen more than once.

- 1.A 2. A 3. B 4.A 5. B 6.D 7. A 8.A 8.C 9.A
10.B 11.C 12.C 13.A 14.C 15.D

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: WRITING (VIẾT)

A. Make all the changes and additions necessary to produce from the following sets of words and phrases that together make a complete letter.

Exercise 1

Dear Madam/sir

1. I'd like to express my concern about the increasing number of karaoke bars in the city
2. There are a lot of reasons that I object to these places
3. Firstly, the owners take too much money from those people who come to sing
4. Secondly, they cause too much noise to the neighborhood
5. Thirdly, there are a number of pupils who play truant just to go to those places to sing.
6. Last but not least, these bars do harm to the appearance of the city because of their ugly flashing light.
7. I want to say that I am not an old fashioned person.
8. I hope that the authority will take this matter into careful consideration
9. I don't mean to ban them but there should be an effective way to control this kind of entertainment places
10. I am looking forward to seeing the city council doing something about this matter

Your truly,

Jon Brown

Exercise 2

Dear Hoa,

1. I am writing to introduce to you a language school where you can improve your English.
2. Instead of learning on your own. as you are doing now, you should learn to speak English with others.
3. The Academy of Language offers you a good and friendly environment to practice your English.
4. They also have well-qualified teachers.
5. There are classes at different levels in the afternoon and evening, and courses begin in the first week this November.
6. If you are interested, you can phone 38765432 for further information.

Best of luck!

Mai

Exercise 3

Dear Mom and Dad,

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 2. came/ has doubled/ have been built | 6. writing |
| 3. to lie | 7. to be done |
| 4. stolen | 8. should have done |

Question 3: (10 points)

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. off | 5. into |
| 2. up / with | 6. with |

- 3. over 7. on / off
- 4. for 8. upon

Question 4: (10 points)

- 1. popular 6. activists
- 2. income 7. nationwide
- 3. effectively 8. existen
- 4. usually 9. persuasively
- 5. appliances 10. unpredictable

Question 5: (10 points)

- 1.D 2.B 3.D 4.B 5.C 6.A 7.B 8.C 9.D 10.A

Question 6: (15 points)

Part a:

- 1 .number 6. famous
- 2.holiday 7. other
- 3.capital 8. sightseeing
- 4. most 9.trip
- 5. from 10. flights

Part b:

1. They are more important in the life of the people than in other countries.
2. They are proud of their traditions and carefully keep them up.
3. An English family prefers a house with a garden.
- 4.Sometimes the garden in front of the house is a little square covered with cement, painted green in imitation of grass and a box of Howers.
5. It is not kept (except by clerks in banks.all shops and factories are working).

Question 71.(7 points)

Part a:

1. A. Not → Don't
2. D. with a car → in a car
3. D. the → 0
4. D. doesn't he → does he
5. A. that → which

Part b:

1. It was such a cold day that we decided not to go out.
2. Please tell me if you take any books from my room.

Question 8: (10 points)

1. If a UFO was seen, what would be done?
2. I wish I could sing beautifully, so I could join them now.
1. I arrived in Hanoi at 5 o'clock yesterday morning.
2. I am staying in a nice hotel.
3. It is not far from the city center.
4. I have already seen Uncle Ho's Mausoleum and some places interesting here.
5. Tomorrow I am going on a trip to Ha Long Bay.
6. I have never been there before.

7. I am so excited about the trip that I can't sleep.
8. I will be back on Sunday, Nov 10th.
9. I will tell you more about the trip when I am in Hue.
10. I hope you are well.

Yours,
Mai

Exercise 4

Dear Mary,

1. It is a long time since I last hear from you.
2. How are you getting on?
3. Would you like to come and stay with me in my cottage in the countryside?
4. You and your family are warmly welcomed if all of you want to visit us.
5. What about coming at the end of the next month?
6. Write to me and let me know if you can come.

Love,
Yours.
Daisy.

Exercise 5

Dear Many.

1. I was very happy to get your letter yesterday.
2. I hadn't known you arrived back in Vietnam.
3. Did you have a good time in London?
4. I am looking forward to hear all about it.
5. Thank you for inviting me to have dinner with you next Saturday.
6. I am afraid I won't be able to come.
7. I am going to attend my aunt's wedding party.
8. What about next Sunday?
9. If possible I will come over your house for dinner next Sunday.
10. Write to me soon.

From love,
Tom

Exercise 6

Dear Sir or Madam.

1. I have seen your Foreign Language Center's advertisement in the Vietnam's News.
2. I am interested in improve my English speaking at your Language Center.
3. I would like to have some more information about the course of speaking English.
4. Could you please tell me about the schedule and fee of the courses?
5. Will I be tested before joining in the classes?
6. I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
Minh Hoa

Exercise 7

Dear Sir,

1. I am writing to you about the fans in my room which I asked your company to install.
2. I am not satisfied because of the poor quality of the fans provided by your company.
3. The fans do not work well because when they run at high speed, they make a lot of noise.
4. This really makes me find difficult to sleep at night.
5. Furthermore, they are not the electricity-saving fans which I need to buy.
6. I would like your company to be responsible for all the repair work.
7. If possible, I would like to have other new electricity-saving fans with high quality.
8. I look forward to hearing from you and to getting a quick resolution of these problems.

Yours faithfully.

Minh Tri.

Exercise 8

Dear Mai,

1. I am writing to tell how sorry I was to hear that you failed in that examination.
2. I know that you had tried your best and worked very hard but that examination was too difficult.
3. I think you shouldn't be too disappointed now.
4. There are many other examinations coming and many new challenges will come to you, too.
5. I hope you will succeed in the next year's examination.
6. You have 2 weeks off, don't you?
7. Why don't you visit us in the countryside?
8. We will have a lot of fun here and you will refresh after a hard examination.
9. Please write to me or phone me if you can come.
10. We are looking forward to seeing you soon.

Exercise 9

Dear Nks. Jenny,

1. On behalf of our class. I would like to express our great gratitude to you for helping us to organize our English Speaking Club.
2. You see our English Speaking Club wouldn't have been held successfully but for your great help.
3. The English Club stimulated the spirit of English learning among us.
4. All of us had a lot of fun and learned a lot from each other in the Club.
5. We hope get more assistance from you in the future to hold the activities of the Club regularly.
6. I look forward to hearing from you soon/

Yours sincerely,

Mai

Exercise 10

Dear Sir/ Madam,

1. I am writing to you to apply for a part-time job which you are advertising in Labor News.
2. You say you need a tutor to help your daughter with Math and Chemistry of Grade 9.
3. I am in grade 11 now and I am very good at Math and Chemistry.
4. I am really interested in working as a tutor in my free time in order to earn some more money for my study.
5. Because I would like to become a teacher in the future so working as a tutor can give me some experience.
6. Furthermore, I am gentle, patient and hardworking.

7. I think I can meet your demands and help your daughter to study these subjects better.
8. I go to school in the morning but I am free in other afternoons except Tuesday and Thursday afternoons.
9. I would prefer to work on Monday, Wednesday and Friday afternoons, from 2 p.m to 4 p.m.
10. I look forward to receiving your reply.

Yours faithfully,
Nguyen Minh Hieu

B- Free writing

*** Writing a letter**

Suggested writing

Question 1:

Dear Claudia,

I'm looking forward to your arrival. I've been missing you a lot since the last time we saw in France. I've been thinking a lot about our time that we are going to share. I know this is going to be your first time in Vietnam, so I'll give some useful information there are a few ways to get from the airport to my flat. One of them is by bus and it is the cheapest but I wouldn't recommend it because it will take you a long time and also it is very uncomfortable. If I were you. I would take a taxi. It doesn't cost much more than a bus and it's much safer and more comfortable. And here is a number that you can call from the airport 04 848484. Be careful! don't take taxis outside the airport because they always want to take advantage of strange people. Now we are in spring so why don't you bring soft clothes. However you must bring a raincoat because it has been raining a lot. If you want to ask me more information or need some advice you can send me an e-mail or give me a ring. See you in a few weeks.

With love.

Mai Lan

Question 2

Dear Mr Hung.

I have just read your advertisement published in "Our Hobby Today" on Saturday 23 May. I would like to apply for it.

First of all, swimming is one of my favorite activities. I used to swim in the club named '*Young Generation*' in Hanoi and I won a few competitions. Secondly, I would like to become a professional swimming trainer in the future. Thirdly, I have two nephews at the age of 8 years old. I have taught them how to swim. Now, they can swim very well. So, I am used to being with children and I enjoy being with them. Moreover, I have left my high school a few weeks ago. I haven't decided to study at any colleges or universities yet. I would like to work before attending my university. I would really want to work; consequently I think that I have enough energy and motivation to do this job well.

I feel that I have the right experience and good ability to do this job.

I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Minh Hoa

Question 3

Dear Anne.

I was very happy to receive your letter yesterday. I would like to thank you a lot for your great assistance. I am planning to take an English speaking and listening course in London but I haven't decided

which center or language institute I should attend. I would like to improve my English. You see in Vietnam I can improve my English grammar and reading but it's too difficult for me to improve my speaking and listening. I am awarded a scholarship of US \$ 2000, but I think it isn't enough for me to spend because everything is so expensive in London. I guess the best place to stay is in a house with a host family, but if you've got a better idea, let me know. I am going to stay for two months. I am easygoing and tidy and I think I can share the room with someone else. The problem is that I'm not sure if I can afford all the expenditure. That's one of the things that I am worried most.

I hope to have some more information from you and get some of your advice.

I look forward to seeing your reply.

With love,

Mai

Question 4

Dear Sir/ Madam,

I saw your job advertisement on the noticeboard of my local language school. I am interested in working as a Film Club Organizer. I think I could do the work very well.

First of all, I am interested in films. I have watched a lot of films and have quite good command of cinema. I'm also a fan of English and American films. Secondly, I used to run an English speaking club in my school. Thus I think I am capable of running a club. Furthermore, I have been studying English for 6 years and I have passed the TOEFL examination with 500 marks. In addition, I am strict, hardworking and creative. Thus, I think I can help to organize many activities for the Club.

For the above reasons, I would like to be interviewed for a job as a Club Organizer. Please contact me by 0986153453 or email me at hieutri@gmail.com.
I look forward to hearing from you.

Your faithfully,

Minh Hoa.

Question 5

Dear Sir,

I am writing with regard to your advertisement in Vietnam News in which you offer an English course that meets my own expectations.

I am interested in learning English for my job in the future. I have been learning English for 7 years at my secondary school. Despite the fact that I am quite good at grammar and use of English but I find listening and speaking extremely difficult. Although I have tried my best to speak English with my friends, my teacher and listen to English CDs quite often, my speaking and listening have not been much improved. Apart from this, I would like to practice taking English speaking and listening tests at international levels. I am also fond of reading English stories. In addition, I enjoy participating in many different activities in order to practice using English. Thus, I would like to have a twelve-month intensive English course, four classes a week, on Monday, Wednesday, Friday and Sunday, I would prefer to start on Monday this week. Please email me at minhhieu2008@gmail.com if possible.

I look forward to your reply.

Yours faithfully,

Minh Hieu

ĐÁP ÁN MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI ANH VĂN

ĐỀ THI HỌC SINH GIỎI TỈNH KHỐI 9

ĐÁP ÁN VÀ BIỂU MẪU CHẤM ĐIỂM BẢNG A HSG TỈNH NGHỆ AN 2011

Tổng điểm toàn bài 80 / 4 = 20 điểm. Trong đó mỗi câu đúng HS được 1 điểm. Bài luận 12 điểm.

SECTION A: PHONETICS

I. Pick out the word whose

- 1.A 2.C 3. B 4. D 5. A

II. Identify the word whose stress pattern

- 1.D 2.C 3. A 4. B 5. D

SECTION B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR.

I. Choose the best

- 1.D 2.B 3.C 4. D 5. A 6. B 7.C 8. B 9. D 10.C

II. Supply the correct verb forms.....

1. to be awarded 4. buying / having bought
2. did; has been destroyed 5. hasn't visited ; left
3. are always talking 6. sitting

III. Supply the correct word forms

1. refusal 6. decision
2. communication 7. politely
3. thoughtless 8. Unfortunately
4. neighborhood 9. successful
5. knowing 10. advice

IV. IDENTIFY and CORRECT mistake

Line	Mistake	Correction	Line	Mistake	Correction
1	Actual	Actually	5	Very	too
2	know	Knows	6	because of	because
3	finding	to find	7	Whether	if
4	for	To	8	Bad	badly

SECTION C: READING

I. Read the passage

1. A 2.C 3.B 4.C 5.D

II. Fill in each ..

1. used 2. for 3. money 4. his 5. was
6. who / that 7. and 8. out 9. street 10. at

SECTION D: WRITING

1. Complete the second.

1. I haven't written to him for three months.
2. It is such a dirty restaurant that no one wants to eat there.
3. The roof of his house was blown off by / in the hurricane.
4. How many competitors took part / participated / joined in the game yesterday?
5. If you don't pay the money back to me, I will call the police.
6. John advised Jane to try her best to learn English.

7. It came as no surprise to me (to hear) that you did very well in your exam.

II. COMPOSITION

Grammar & Vocabulary 30% Style 40% Content 30%

THE END.

ĐÁP ÁN VÀ BIỂU MẪU CHẤM ĐIỂM HSG TỈNH GIA LAI 2010

Part Two: Phonetics (1 điểm)

I. 1.C. 2. A. 3.D 4.B. 5. B. (mỗi từ 0,1 đ)

II. 1.C.2. D 3. D. 4.C. 5.A. (mỗi từ 0,1 đ)

Part Three: Vocabulary and Grammar (6 điểm)

I. 2 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 đ)

1.C. 2. A. 3.B. 4. B. 5. D. 6.A. 7.C. 8. B. 9. B. 10.C.

II. 1 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 đ)

1.B. 2. D. 3. D. 4. D. 5. B.

III. 2 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 đ)

1.D 2.C 3. B 4. A 5. D

6. B 7.D 8. B 9. B 10.D

IV. 1 điểm (mỗi từ đúng 0,2 đ) (chú ý đây là kiểm tra từ vựng nên nếu sai chính tả thì không có điểm)

1. surprisingly 2. independent 3. disappointment

4. unsuccessfully 5. Marriage

Part Four: Writing: (4 điểm)

I. 2 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 điểm)

1. I'm afraid that we've run out of eggs.

2. We are/feel excited about our new house.

3. Ellen couldn't afford (to buy) the ticket.

4. Why don't you look up this word /look this word up in the dictionary?

5. This film is not as frightening as the last one we saw.

6. Neither of these chairs is /are comfortable.

7. The play was so good that the audience cheered./ It was so good a play that the audience cheered

8. Ann has just had her portrait painted.

9. This cake tastes of rubber

10. Jane takes after her father.

III. 2 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 đ)

1. Thank you for your last letter. It was good to hear from you.

2. My big news is that I've decided to change jobs.

3. I (will) finish working at Vietcom Bank next month and start in my new company, HA Gia Lai, the week after.

4. Vietcom Bank didn't want me to leave but HA Gia Lai offered me more money and more opportunities.

5. I hope to be/I will be a manager in two years

6. I'm having a party on the 25th and I would love to see you.

7. Perhaps you could persuade your brother to come with you as well

8. I really enjoyed dancing with him at your party.
9. My neighbours have promised to go out for the evening, so we can play the music as loud as we want.
10. I must stop writing now and do some work.

Part Five: Reading: 6 điểm

Passage 1: 1 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 đ)

1. number 2. others / countries
5. same 3. speakers 4. differences

Passage 2: 1 điểm (mỗi câu 0,25 đ)

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. A

Passage 3: 2 điểm (mỗi câu 0,5 đ)

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A

Passage 4: 2 điểm (mỗi câu 0,2 đ)

1. C. 2. B 3. D 4. B 5. D
6. A 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. A

HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM ĐỀ HSG TỈNH THANH HÓA NĂM 2010

Question 1: (8 points)

Part a:

1. C. pretty 2. B. figures 3. B. garage 4. A. now 5. D. bargain

Part b:

1. C. priority 2. D. efficient 3. D. average

Question 2: (10 points)

1. didn't wear 5. will have been
3. As she was ill, she couldn't come to class.
4. No sooner had he returned from his walk than he got down to writing.
5. - This is the most romantic story I have ever read.
- This is the first time I have read such a romantic story.
So romantic a story.
6. Much as I admire his courage, I think he is foolish.
7. - The rough sea made it impossible for the ferry to sail.
- The rough sea prevented/kept the ferry from sailing.
8. It is not likely that they will succeed.
9. As long as you keep calm, you will pass your driving test.
10. It is a two-hour train journey from London to Bristol.

HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM ĐỀ THI CHỌN HSG TỈNH PHÚ THỌ 2010

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the rest by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (10 X 2 = 20 points)

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. A
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. D 10. B

II. Choose the one word or phrase answer by circling the corresse that best completes the sentence.

Identify your ponding letter A, B, C, or D. (20 X 2 = 40 points)

1. C 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A

6. A 7.C 8.B 9. B 10.D
 11.C 12.B 13.D 14.C 15.D
 16.B 17.B 18.A 19.D 20.B

III. There is a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence. Identify your answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (10 X 2 = 20 points)

1. A 2.C 3. A 4. D 5. D
 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. A 10. D

IV. Give the correct form of the words in brackets to complete the sentences. (10 X 2 = 20 points)

1. independence 2. disconnected 3. failure 4. carelessly 5. retirement
 6. misunderstood 7. precision 8. memorable 9. imprisoned 10. technologist

V. Read this passage carefully and then choose the best answers below by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (05 X 2 = 10 points) to the questions

- 1.C 2.D 3.A 4.B 5.D

VI. Read, then choose the best answer by circling the corresponding letter A, B, C, or D. (10 X 2 = 20 points)

- 1.B 2.C 3.A 4.B 5.C
 6. A 7.D 8.C 9.B 10.D

VII. Fill in each numbered blank with one suitable word. (10 X 2 = 20 points)

1. families 2. housework 3. worked 4. one 5. brought/bought
 6. other 7. back 8. or 9. who 10. the

VIII. Finish the second sentence in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed before it. (10 X 2 = 20 points)

1. It was such old furniture that we wouldn't/ couldn't keep it.
2. The streets haven't been cleaned this week.
3. They accidentally cut off our water supplying while mending the road.
4. He needn't have brought the umbrella along (because it didn't rain anyway)
5. Despite my strong disapproval of your behavior/ the fact that I strongly disapprove of your behavior, I will help you this time.
6. The underground is not only quick but also cheap.
7. He objected to his secretary('s) coming late to work/ the fact that his secretary came late to work.
8. Neil wishes he hadn't sold his car.
9. The strange noise made the child run out.
10. No sooner had he arrived than things went wrong.

X. Look at the following sets of words and phrases. Make all the changes and additions necessary to produce sentences which together make a complete letter of complaint from Jane to Mr. Pike Smith. (08 X 2,5 = 20 points)

Dear Mr. Smith,

1. I am writing to complain about the dirt and smoke which come from your factory chimneys / coming from your factory chimneys.
2. Two days ago, I decided to do my washing.
3. I washed the sheets and put them out to dry because it was a nice sunny day and there was a breeze.
4. When I took the washing in, I was horrified to discover that it was covered in dirty marks.
5. I assume that the breeze I mentioned carried the dirt from your chimneys.

6. Until this incident, I thought your chimneys were safe and clean.
7. I would suggest that your factory should fit new filters to its chimneys as the dirt and smoke are really dangerous..
8. I look forward to receiving your reply.

Yours sincerely,
Mrs. Jane Hunter

ĐÁP ÁN VÀ BIỂU MẪU CHẤM ĐIỂM HSG TỈNH QUẢNG NAM NĂM 2010

SECTION I: (2. 0 đ)

Question 1: 1. 0 đ. Mỗi câu đúng đạt 0. 25 đ.

1. The length of the trip ✓
2. Who he traveled with ✓ (example)
3. Things he saw ✓
5. Whether he enjoyed the trip ✓
8. Whether he would recommend the trip to other people ✓

Question 2: 1.0 đ

Part 1: 0. 5 đ. Mỗi câu chọn đúng đạt 0. 125 đ.

1. America.
2. When he was a teenager.
3. He wanted people to see his art.
4. In art galleries and/ or on his website.

Part 2: 0. 5 đ. Mỗi câu chọn đúng đạt 0. 25 đ.

1. large 2. his name 3. cars 4. America

SECTION II: (6.0đ)

Question 1: (2. 0 pts). Mỗi câu chọn đúng đạt 0.125 đ

1. A. agreed
2. C. be interviewed
3. B. have left
4. D. for
5. A. off/onto
6. C. hardly think
7. B. standing
8. A. in
9. B. to
10. C. view
11. D. along
12. A. never used
13. B. admitted
14. A. across
15. B. keep
16. D. Why not? Go ahead

Question 2: (1. 0 pt). Mỗi câu đúng đạt 0. 125 đ

Sentences 0. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.

Answers E F H B A D K J I

Question 3; (1. 0 pts). Mỗi câu đúng đạt 0. 125 đ

Sentences 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.
Answers with ✓ so of to the was her

Question 4: (2. 0 pt). Mỗi câu đúng đạt 0. 25 đ

1. intention 2. strength 3. apparently 4. effortless
5. reflection 6. significantly 7. exhaustion 8. increasingly

SECTION THREE: READING (6. Opts).

Question 1: (2. 0pts). Mỗi câu chọn đúng đạt 0. 25 đ

1. D. got 2. A. examining 3. B. couldn't 4. B. must
5. D. stealing 6. A. noticed 7. C. didn't need 8. B. case

Question 2: (1. 5pts). Mỗi câu chọn đúng đạt 0. 25 đ

0. H. I.F. 2. B. 3. E. 4. A. 5. G. 6. C.

Question 3 : (2. 5 pts). Mỗi câu điền đúng đạt 0. 25 đ

1. most 2. flight 3. been 4. out 5. to
6. room 7. for 8. went 9. word 10. airport

SECTION FOUR: WRITING (6. 0 pts).

Question 1: (2. 0pts). Mỗi câu viết đúng đạt 0. 25 đ.

1. I / tired/ able / go out / tonight.
→ I am so tired that I won't be able to go out tonight.
2. Some / our electricity / now / come / nuclear power.
→ Some of our electricity now comes from nuclear power.
3. We / lucky / catch / last bus / arrive / home / very late / last night.
→ We were lucky to catch the last bus and arrived home very late last night.
4. Football / said / be / good / games / play.
→ Football is said to be one of the best games to play.
5. Students / spend / much time / learn / English / a days' time.
→ Students (should) spend much time learning English in a day's time.
6. Paul / not / tall / reach / top / cupboard.
→ Paul is not tall enough to reach the top of this/ the cupboard.
7. We / often / have / difficulty / finish / work / weekend.
→ We often have difficulty (in) finishing the work at/on the weekend.
8. Of all / hotels / town / the Royal Hotel / expensive.
→ Of all the hotels in town, the Royal Hotel is the most expensive.

Question 2: (2. 0 pts). Mỗi câu viết đúng đạt 0. 25 đ.

1. We haven't got enough money, so we can't buy a new cooker. (SHORT)
→ We can't buy a new cooker because we are short of money.
Or We are short of money, so we can't buy a new cooker.
2. I gave back my blue shirt and got a white one. (EXCHANGED)
→ I exchanged my blue shirt for a white one.
3. The only one person who was not at the party was Tom. (APART)
→ Everyone was at the party apart from Tom.
4. If there is one thing I hate doing, it's the ironing. (STAND)

- If there is one thing I can't stand doing, it's the ironing.
5. Mr. David is employed by a big construction firm. (FOR)
 => Mr. David works for a big construction firm.
6. We haven't received confirmation of hotel booking yet. (BEEN)
 → Our hotel booking hasn't been confirmed yet.
7. "In my opinion, you shouldn't stay up so late". Lan said to Nam. (ADVISED)
 → Lan advised Nam not to stay up so late.
8. It is necessary to finish this homework tonight. (GOT)
 → I have got to finish this homework tonight.

Question 3: (2. 0pts).

Điểm thành phần của bài luận theo những điểm đề nghị sau:

- Organization: (Bố cục bài luận rõ ràng, đầy đủ 3 phần: mở bài, thân bài, kết luận) (0,25đ)
- Discourse: (Thể hiện khả năng viết mạch lạc, chặt chẽ; nối kết câu, chuyển mạch tốt) (0,5đ)
- Sentence structure (morphology, vocabulary, spelling): cấu trúc câu, ngữ pháp, từ vựng; câu linh hoạt (đơn, phức..) (0,5đ)
- Ideas: (Ý hay, phong phú, biểu đạt nội dung liên quan chặt chẽ với chủ đề của đề thi) (0,5đ)
- Length: (Đảm bảo đủ số lượng từ qui định: không quá dài hoặc quá ngắn. (0,25đ)

HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM ĐỀ HSG TỈNH BẮC NINH 2010

PART I. PRONUNCIATION - VOCABULARY - GRAMMAR (10 pts)

I. Pronunciation (1 pt): 0,1/ each

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. A 6. B 7. C 8. A 9. A 10. D

II. Choose the word or phrase..... (3. 0 pts): 0,2/each

- 1C 4A 7A 10D 13D
 2C 5B 8B 11A 14C
 3C 6A 9B 12B 15C

III. Choose the best word or phrase with the same meaning as the underlined part

Circle A, B, C or D. (1. 0 pt): 0,2/each

- 1C 2B 3D 4A 5C

IV. Correct mistakes. (1. 0 pt): 0,2/each

1. is → are 2. between → among 3. few → little
 4. have → has 5. develop → developed

V. Give correct form of the words (2. 0 pts): 0,2/each

1. encouraged 2. ability 3. thirst 4. satisfaction 5. repetition
 6. attendance 7. moutainous 8. housed 9. enlarged 10. creator

VI. Supply the verbs (2. 0 pts): 0,2 /each

1. dies 2. will have become 3. was founded 4. wanted
 5. has raised 6. has helped 7. give 8. is happening
 9. will be 10. threatens

PART II. READING (6. 0 pts)

I. Choose the word that best fits.... (2. 0 pts): 0,2 /each

- 1B 2A 3B 4C 5B 6A 7C 8D 9D 10B

II. Read the following passage and choose the best answer. (1. 0 pt): 0,2/each

1B 2C 3D 4A 5B

III. Read the passage. Choose the most suitable sentence..... (1. 0 pt): 0,2/each

1B 2F 3A 4D 5E

IV. Fill in each numbered blank with one suitable word..... (2. 0 pt): 0,2/each

1. when 3. divided 5. example/instance 7. in 9. English't
2. if 4. who 6. the 8. own 10. difficulties

PART III. WRITING (4. 0 pts)

I. Finish the second sentence..... (2. 0pt): 0,2/each

1. This is the first time he has ever been on board a ship.
2. David has no difficulty (in) making friends.
3. You can't watch TV until you finish/ have finished eating.
4. Although she was tired, she managed to finish her work.
5. There have been no messages/ not been any messages for me. have there?
6. The more he drinks, the worse he gets.
7. I wish I had bought some tickets for the concert.
8. If I were you. I would go to the doctor's.
9. He is having a doctor take his temperature/ his temperature taken by a doctor.
10. It was a kind of computer which/that I was not familiar with/ with which I was not familiar.

II. Use the word given to rewrite.(1.0 pt): 0,2/each

1. He was such a careless driver that he had an accident last month.
2. Dicken died without finishing his last novel.
3. Mark isn't old enough to see the horror film.
4. Only Jane (Jane was the only one who) succeeded in producing the correct answer.
5. John suggested going to the concert.

III. Write (1.0 pt/0.2/each)

1. The train had already left before I got to the station.
2. What would happen if there were no plants on earth?
3. We are now facing with the problem of overpopulation.
4. If you hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have met my brother last month.
5. You will never regret doing (such) a kind action.

**ĐỀ THI VÀO TRƯỜNG CHUYÊN
ĐÁP ÁN VÀ BIỂU MẪU CHẤM ĐIỂM ĐỀ THI VÀO TRƯỜNG CHUYÊN
PHAN BỘI CHÂU NĂM 2011-2012**

SECTION I: PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently. (5x1=5 pts)

1.C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D

II. Identify the word whose stressed pattern is different from ... (5x1=5 pts)

1.A 2.C 3. D 4. B 5.C

SECTION II: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1. Choose the best answer from A, B, C or D to fill in the gaps. (15x1=15 pts)

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B
6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10.D

11.A 12.C 13.D 14.B 15.A

II. There are TEN mistakes in the passage. Find them out and correct them.(10x1=10 pts)

1. because 2. from 3. percentage 4. millions 5. a
6. greatly 7. Most of 8. gradually 9. lessen 10. as

III. Fill in each gap with the correct form of the given words. (10x1=10 pts)

1. unsatisfactory 2. products 3. disagree 4. typically 5. socializing
6. mysteriously 7. significant 8. frightening 9. repeatedly 10. cancellation

SECTION III: READING COMPREHENSION

I. Choose the best answer to fill each blank in the following passage. (10x1=10 pts)

1. B 2. A 3.D 4. D 5. C
6. A 7.C 8. D 9.C 10. B

II. Read the passage and choose the answers to the questions below. (5x2=10 pts)

- 1.A 2. B 3.C 4. D 5. A

III. Fill each blank in the following passage with a suitable word. (10x1=10 pts)

1. crazier 2. raise 3. a 4. who 5. to
6. since 7. around 8. feeling 9. something 10. would

SECTION IV: WRITING

I. Finish the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. (5x1=5 pts)

1. I have difficulty (in) reading his handwriting.
2. No sooner had he returned from his work than he got down to writing a letter.
3. The harder you work, the more successful you are.
4. Nam advised Lan not to accept his marriage proposal.
5. Try as hard as I might, I could not open the window.

II. Finish the second sentence so that it has(5x1=5 pts)

1. There is nothing **left** in the fridge.
2. That old typewriter is not **worth** repairing. / It is not worth repairing that old typewriter.
3. Frank never takes any **notice** of my advice.
4. John could **hardly** understand what the teacher said. /Hardly could John understand
5. What I am really **impressed** by is her ability to run a company. / I'm really impressed by her. ...

III. Write a composition on the following topic (about 150-200 words) (15 pts)

- Layout and length.
- Grammar, structures and vocabulary.
- Content.

TOTAL MARK: 100 pts: 5 = 20 pts

THE END

**SỞ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO PHÚ THỌ
HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM BÀI THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 TRƯỜNG THPT
CHUYÊN HÙNG VƯƠNG**

Năm học: 2011 - 2012

PART I. PHONETICS (1.0 point)

**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.
(0.5 pt) 0.1/each**

1.A 2.C 3. D 4. B 5. D

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from that of the others. (0. 5 pt) 0.1/each

1.B 2. D 3.C 4. C 5. A

PART II: GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY (4. 0 points)

I. Choose the best word or phrase to complete the following sentences (2. 0 pt) 0. 1/each

1.C 2.D 3. B 4. B 5. A 6.C 7.C 8.B 9.C 10.B

11.A 12.B 13.C 14.C 15.C 16.D 17.A 18.B 19.D 20.B

II. Give the correct form of the words provided. (1.0 pt) 0. 1/each

1. employer 2. ambitious 3. encouragement 4. security 5. Imagination
6. strengthen 7. Proof 8. training 9. qualified 10. unsuccessful

III. The passage below contains 10 errors. UNDERLINE and CORRECT them.

(1,0 pt) 0,1/each 0,05 đ nếu chỉ gạch chân hoặc chữa được lỗi)

1. visiting → to visit 2. no → not 3. at → to
4. their → its 5. up → down 6. had → had been
7. risen → raised 8. extending → extended 9. previous → previously
10. untidy gravel yard → an untidy gravel yard

PART III: READING (3. 0 points)

I. Read the passage below and fill each blank with ONE suitable word. Write your answers in the numbered blanks provided in the passage. (1. 0 p) 0. 1/each

1. ways/ means 2. understood 3. sounds 4. Learning 5. vocabulary
6. speak 7. express 8. main 9. way 10. show

II. Read the text and decide which answer best fits each space. (1.0 p) 0. 1/each

1. A 2.C 3. B 4. D 5.C
6. B 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. A

III. Read the folowing passage and choose the best answer. (1.0p 1 0. 1/each

1.C 2. B 3.C 4. A 5. A
6. B 7. B 8. D 9.C 10. C

PART IV: WRITING (2. 0 points)

I. For each of the sentences below, write a new sentence as similar as possible in meaning to the original sentence, using the words provided. These words MUST not be altered in any way. (1. 0 p) 0. 1/each

1. She reminded me of her grandmother.
2. Sarah wore dark glasses to avoid being recognized.
3. She had every intention of finding out who is responsible for the accident.
4. I haven't made up my mind whether to move or not yet.
5. I am not used to going into town by car.
-I don't get/ become used to going into town by car.
6. She has been (working as) a secretary for five years.
7. Be careful or you'll fall.
8. George told Mary (that) he had seen the film three times.
9. This is the first time I've eaten this kind of food.
10. I am going to have a shower as soon as I get home.

II. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it. (1. 0 p) 0. 1/each

1. What an excellent meal (that /it was)!
2. I'd rather not go to/ visit the museum.
Or I'd rather stay at home than go to/ visit the museum.
3. Customers are requested not to smoke in this area of the restaurant.
4. In spite of taking/ having taken / the fact that Peter had taken a taxi, he/ Peter arrived late for the concert.
5. Rather than disturb the meeting, I left without saying goodbye.
6. There has been a considerable fall in the cost of living in the past week.
7. Only by training hard every day can you become a good athlete.
8. Could you keep an eye on my handbag while I go to the toilet?
9. He wished he hadn't invited her to the party.
10. Robert confessed to forgetting/ having forgotten to turn on the alarm system.

THE END

HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM

**ĐÁP ÁN VÀ BIỂU MẪU CHẤM ĐIỂM KÌ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10
CHUYÊN QUỐC HỌC
NĂM 2011-2012**

I. PRONUNCIATION: (10 points)

Part 1: 1p for 1 correct answer x 5 = 5 points

- 1.A 2. D 3. B 4.A 5.B

Part 2: 1p for 1 correct answer x 5 = 5 points

- 1.C 2.C 3. D 4.A 5.C

II. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: (40 points)

Part 1: (1p for 1 correct answer x 10 = 10 points)

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A
6. D 7. B 8. A 9. B 10. B

Part 2: (1p for 1 correct answer x 10 = 10 points)

1. unexpected 2. variety 3. disappointed 4. championship 5.
congratulations
6. personal 7. annoyance 8. really 9. embarrassing
10. apologise/apologize

Part 3: (1p for 1 correct answer x 10 = 10 points)

1. will turn 2. got/gotten 3. give 4. let 5.gone
6. broke 7. came 8. set 9. go 10.takes

Part 4: (1p for 1 correct answer x 10 = 10 points)

1. will have been 2. were addressing/addressed 3. is sent
4. has already been broadcast
5. is always picking 6. had done 7. training 8. had already started
9. didn't tell 10. has been sleeping/ has slept

III. READING COMPREHENSION: (25 points)

Part 1: (lp for 1 correct answer x 10 = 10 points)

1. make 2. for 3. enough/ any/ much/ physical 4. it 5. into
6. any 7. what 8. whenever/when 9. as 10. do

Part 2: (lp for 1 correct answer x 5 = 5 points)

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B

Part 3: (lp for 1 correct answer x 10 = 10 points)

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A
6. C 7. A 8. B 9. B 10. D

IV. WRITING: (25 points)

Part 1: (lp for 1 correct answer x 5 = 5 points)

1. He hates people laughing at his face/ He hates being laughed at his face
2. Everything in the house is said to have been stolen (by the thief).
3. Although she had an injured ankle, Esther still won the tennis match. / Although her ankle was injured, Esther still won the tennis match.
4. Most students are capable of working very hard when they feel like it.
5. A lot of effort has been made by scientists to find a cure for this disease.

Part 2: (lp for 1 correct answer X 10 = 10 points)

1. have 2. much 3. an 4. away 5. ✓
6. that 7. been 8. so 9. out 10. ✓

Part 3: 10 points

Total: 100 points

HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 CHUYÊN TỈNH HÀ TĨNH 2009-2010

Part 1: Pronunciation

1. B. stop 2. D. talent 3. B. enter 4. C. centre 5. D. pursue
6. D. large 7. A. guidance 8. D. thread 9. D. wonder 10. D. palace

Part 2: Multiple choice

1. is 2. are 3. coming 4. would have met 5. whose 6. boils
7. when 8. cut 9. was 10. didn't 11. win 12. will feel
13. There are few 14. robbed 15. expect 16. few 17. audience
18. rent 19. architect 20. change 21. C. a good 22. B. eats 23. A. them all
24. C. will you 25. D. have been waiting 26. D. neither is he
27. B. looking 28. C. How long 29. A. have it cut 30. C. would rather
31. B. were 32. D. so bad a singer 33. C. wouldn't do 34. C. It's OK
35. D. was the first bridge built 36. B. Would you mind 37. C. about
38. D. with 39. B. Even though 40. B. rejected 41. A. would work
42. B. having 43. C. were 44. B. decision 45. C. get
46. B. enjoys spending 47. B. like 48. C. such as 49. C. revised
50. C. which

Part 3: Multiple choice (0.1 X 10 = 1,0 i m)

1. A. fuels 2. D. exhaust 3. D. sources 4. A. reserves 5. C. renewed
6. B. alternative 7. C. power 8. C. renewable 9. B. supplies 10. D. consumption

Part 4: Word formation (0.1 x 10 = 1.0 i m)

1. deafness 2. Scientists 3. Applicants 4. Carefully 5. succeeded
6. alive 7. Bleeding 8. Heal 9. Attentively 10. shortages

Part 5: Error shooting (0.1 x 20 = 2.0 i m)

1. to translate 6. They 11. Interested 16. walking
2. a countryside 7. Fertilize 12. bad 17. brought
3. the peoples 8. Those 13. of 18. sickly
4. come 9. Of 14. see 19. attitudes
5. possibly course 10. that his 15. am 20. for driving

Part 6: Gap filling (0.1 x 10 = 1.0 i m)

1. parents 2. grew 3. known 4. school 5. favorite/ best
6. joined 7. President 8. called 9. celebrate 10. picture/photo

Part 7: Rewriting (0.1 X 10 = 1.0 i m)

1. It took (me) more than twelve (/12) hours to fly from Bangkok to London.
2. Nothing (on the issue) has been decided yet.
3. The film was so boring that she felt asleep.
4. Going to the theatre is *one of my favourite pastimes/ something I really enjoy doing*.
5. Provided (that) you fill the car up with petrol, you can borrow it.
6. There is no *point/sense/good (in) complaining about the situation*.
7. If *I were her. I wouldn't spend too much/I would spend less money on clothing*.
(/ If *only she wouldn't spend too much/she would spend less money on clothing*).
8. No one (*else*) in the world plays football as/so badly as you (*do*).
9. Susan has no *difficulty/difficulties in making friends at her new school*.
10. There is *a lot of/ heavy traffic in the road today*.

Part 8: Sentence completing (0.1 x 10 = 1.0 i m)

1. A man was/went on holiday in London for the first time.
2. After *arriving/ he (had) arrived* at the hotel, he sent his wife a telegram.
3. In the telegram he informed his wife of *his/the* safe arrival.
4. He also gave her the name and the address of *his/the* hotel.
5. The next day he went sightseeing round London.
6. He was satisfied and enjoyed his visit very much as it was one of the most beautiful cities *in/ of* the world.
7. He went to a restaurant *to have/ and had* dinner after *his/the* tour.
8. He was tired and wanted to go back to the hotel *to/ and* get some sleep.
9. Unfortunately, he couldn't remember the name and (the) address of *the/his* hotel.
10. Late that night his wife received a strange telegram which said "*Please send me filename and (the) address of my hotel at once*".

**HƯỚNG DẪN CHẤM ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH LỚP 10 CHUYÊN
TP HỒ CHÍ MINH NĂM 2009-2010**

Phần I: (20 points) - 0,5/ each

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 11. B | 21. B | 31. A |
| 2. C | 12. B | 22. B | 32. A |
| 3. C | 13. C | 23. D | 33. B |
| 4. A | 14. A | 24. B | 34. C |
| 5. B | 15. C | 25. C | 35. A |
| 6. D | 16. B | 26. C | 36. D |
| 7. B | 17. D | 27. B | 37. A |
| 8. A | 18. C | 28. C | 38. D |
| 9. A | 19. B | 29. D | 39. D |
| 10. A | 20. C | 30. D | 40. B |

Phần II: (15 points) - 1/ each

- | | | |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. B | 11. A |
| 2. B | 7. A | 12. A |
| 3. D | 8. C | 13. D |
| 4. A | 9. C | 14. D |
| 5. A | 10. A | 15. A |

Phần III (10 points) - 1/ each

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. C |
| 2. C | 7. B |
| 3. D | 8. A |
| 4. A | 9. A |
| 5. B | 10. A |

Phần IV (15 points) - 1/ each

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. INTENTIONALLY | 6. REDUCTIONS | 11. NON-EXISTENT |
| 2. BREATH-TAKING | 7. PREFERENTIAL | 12. ATTENDANCE |
| 3. BREAKDOWN | 8. DEADLY | 13. MANAGEMENT |
| 4. POOR | 9. CAPTIVES | 14. AQUARIUMS |
| 5. PLEASANTLY | 10. REFUSAL | 15. EMPOWER |

Phần V (10 points) - 1/ each

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. B |
| 2. D | 7. D |
| 3. A | 8. B |
| 4. D | 9. A |
| 5. C | 10. A |

Phần VI (15 points) - 1/ each

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. UNABLE | 6. ADVANCED/ | 11. TIME |
| 2. USED | DEVELOPED | 12. AS |
| 3. THE / ONE'S | 7. MAKE | 13. UNLESS |
| 4. WHO | 8. YES | 14. FUTURE |
| 5. NOTHING / LITTLE / NONE | | 15. WORK |

9.MERCY

10.TECHNOLOGY

Phần VII (15 points) - 1/ each

1. Had it not been for her mother's encouragement, she wouldn't have enter beauty contest
2. She stands a very good chance of passing the high school entrance examination.
3. She quite definitely came up to their expectation
4. Despite what is printed in the label, this product is not "environmentally friendly".
5. She was afraid to scream for fear of waking up the neighbors.
6. On arrival, you will be met by the head of the sales department.
7. More than 5,000 small planes are estimated to have been turned out last year.
8. There has been a decrease in the number of people who consume Chinese products.
9. They brought me two laptops, neither of which worked properly.
10. However late it is when you arrive at the airport, do phone me
11. It looks as if she will come to the performance late.
12. Had it not been for Mom's help, I could not have held a big party.
13. The harder you work, the more successful you are.
14. Such was Fiona's disappointment that she could not keep on working.
15. Competent as/ though Richard is / may be in his work, he does not-know how to deal with this client.